

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA  
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION  
HIGHWAY DIVISION 14

## PROPOSAL

**DATE AND TIME OF BID OPENING: NOVEMBER 13, 2018 AT 2:00 PM**

**CONTRACT ID:** DN00659  
**WBS ELEMENT NO.:** 15RE.11.3, 46305.3.53  
**FEDERAL AID NO.:** STBG-0040(083)  
**COUNTY:** HAYWOOD  
**TIP NO.:** ER-5600NA  
**MILES:** 0  
**ROUTE NO.:** I-40  
**LOCATION:** I-40 EASTBOUND REST AREA AT MILE MARKER 10  
**TYPE OF WORK:** REST AREA BUILDING RENOVATION/ LANDSCAPE  
ENHANCEMENT

**NOTICE:**

ALL BIDDERS SHALL COMPLY WITH ALL APPLICABLE LAWS REGULATING THE PRACTICE OF GENERAL CONTRACTING AS CONTAINED IN CHAPTER 87 OF THE GENERAL STATUTES OF NORTH CAROLINA WHICH REQUIRES THE BIDDER TO BE LICENSED BY THE N.C. LICENSING BOARD FOR CONTRACTORS WHEN BIDDING ON ANY NON-FEDERAL AID PROJECT WHERE THE BID IS \$30,000 OR MORE, EXCEPT FOR CERTAIN SPECIALTY WORK AS DETERMINED BY THE LICENSING BOARD. BIDDERS SHALL ALSO COMPLY WITH ALL OTHER APPLICABLE LAWS REGULATING THE PRACTICES OF ELECTRICAL, PLUMBING, HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING AND REFRIGERATION CONTRACTING AS CONTAINED IN CHAPTER 87 OF THE GENERAL STATUTES OF NORTH CAROLINA. NOTWITHSTANDING THESE LIMITATIONS ON BIDDING, THE BIDDER WHO IS AWARDED ANY FEDERAL - AID FUNDED PROJECT SHALL COMPLY WITH CHAPTER 87 OF THE GENERAL STATUTES OF NORTH CAROLINA FOR LICENSING REQUIREMENTS WITHIN 60 CALENDAR DAYS OF BID OPENING.

THIS IS A REST AREA PROJECT.

BID BOND IS REQUIRED.

---

NAME OF BIDDER

---

ADDRESS OF BIDDER

**PROPOSAL FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF  
CONTRACT No. DN00659 IN HAYWOOD COUNTY, NORTH CAROLINA**

Date 10/12/2018 20    

**DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION,  
RALEIGH, NORTH CAROLINA**

The Bidder has carefully examined the location of the proposed work to be known as Contract No. **DN00659**; has carefully examined the plans and specifications, which are acknowledged to be part of the proposal, the special provisions, the proposal, the form of contract, and the forms of contract payment bond and contract performance bond; and thoroughly understands the stipulations, requirements and provisions. The undersigned bidder agrees to bound upon his execution of the bid and subsequent award to him by the Department of Transportation in accordance with this proposal to provide the necessary contract payment bond and contract performance bond within fourteen days after the written notice of award is received by him. The undersigned Bidder further agrees to provide all necessary machinery, tools, labor, and other means of construction; and to do all the work and to furnish all materials, except as otherwise noted, necessary to perform and complete the said contract in accordance with *the 2018 Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures* by the dates(s) specified in the Project Special Provisions and in accordance with the requirements of the Engineer, and at the unit or lump sum prices, as the case may be, for the various items given on the sheets contained herein.

The Bidder shall provide and furnish all the materials, machinery, implements, appliances and tools, and perform the work and required labor to construct and complete State Highway Contract No. **DN00659** in **Haywood County**, for the unit or lump sum prices, as the case may be, bid by the Bidder in his bid and according to the proposal, plans, and specifications prepared by said Department, which proposal, plans, and specifications show the details covering this project, and hereby become a part of this contract.

The published volume entitled *North Carolina Department of Transportation, Raleigh, Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures, January 2018* with all amendments and supplements thereto, is by reference incorporated into and made a part of this contract; that, except as herein modified, all the construction and work included in this contract is to be done in accordance with the specifications contained in said volume, and amendments and supplements thereto, under the direction of the Engineer.

If the proposal is accepted and the award is made, the contract is valid only when signed either by the Contract Officer or such other person as may be designated by the Secretary to sign for the Department of Transportation. The conditions and provisions herein cannot be changed except over the signature of the said Contract Officer or Division Engineer.

The quantities shown in the itemized proposal for the project are considered to be approximate only and are given as the basis for comparison of bids. The Department of Transportation may increase or decrease the quantity of any item or portion of the work as may be deemed necessary or expedient.

An increase or decrease in the quantity of an item will not be regarded as sufficient ground for an increase or decrease in the unit prices, nor in the time allowed for the completion of the work, except as provided for the contract.

Accompanying this bid is a bid bond secured by a corporate surety, or certified check payable to the order of the Department of Transportation, for five percent of the total bid price, which deposit is to be forfeited as liquidated damages in case this bid is accepted and the Bidder shall fail to provide the required payment and performance bonds with the Department of Transportation, under the condition of this proposal, within 14 calendar days after the written notice of award is received by him, as provided in the Standard Specifications; otherwise said deposit will be returned to the Bidder.



*Division 14 Project Manager*

DocuSigned by:

*Wes Jamison*

02EE828795674A5...

**TABLE OF CONTENTS****COVER SHEET  
PROPOSAL SHEET**

THIS CONTRACT IS FOR TIP **ER-5600NA** CONTRACT ID **DN00659** FOR **REST AREA BUILDING RENOVATION/ LANDSCAPE ENHANCEMENT** TYPE OF WORK IN **HAYWOOD COUNTY**.

**SPECIAL PROVISIONS**

BOND REQUIREMENTS: .....	4
CONTRACT TIME AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: .....	5
NO MAJOR CONTRACT ITEMS: .....	5
NO SPECIALTY ITEMS: .....	5
FUEL PRICE ADJUSTMENT: .....	5
SCHEDULE OF ESTIMATED COMPLETION PROGRESS: .....	6
DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DIVISIONS): .....	6
CERTIFICATION FOR FEDERAL-AID CONTRACTS: .....	18
CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE REQUIREMENTS: .....	18
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION HOTLINE: .....	18
CARGO PREFERENCE ACT: .....	19
SUBSURFACE INFORMATION: .....	19
TWELVE MONTH GUARANTEE: .....	19
EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL/STORMWATER CERTIFICATION: .....	20
PROCEDURE FOR MONITORING BORROW PIT DISCHARGE: .....	25
DIVISION LET CONTRACT PREQUALIFICATION: .....	26
AVAILABILITY OF FUNDS – TERMINATION OF CONTRACTS .....	27
NCDOT GENERAL SEED SPECIFICATION FOR SEED QUALITY .....	28
ERRATA .....	31
PLANT AND PEST QUARANTINES .....	32
TITLE VI AND NONDISCRIMINATION: .....	33
MINORITY AND FEMALE EMPLOYMENT REQUIREMENTS .....	40
REQUIRED CONTRACT PROVISIONS FEDERAL - AID CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS .....	43
ON-THE-JOB TRAINING .....	52
MINIMUM WAGES .....	55
REST AREA .....	RA

**PROPOSAL ITEM SHEET AND SIGNATURE SHEET**

ITEM SHEET(S) .....	T-1
SIGNATURE SHEETS... ..	S-1
EXECUTION SHEET .....	U-1

**INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS**

**PLEASE READ ALL INSTRUCTIONS CAREFULLY  
BEFORE PREPARING AND SUBMITTING YOUR BID.**

**All bids shall be prepared and submitted in accordance with the following requirements. Failure to comply with any requirement may cause the bid to be considered irregular and may be grounds for rejection of the bid.**

For preparing and submitting the bid electronically using the on-line system Bid Express®, refer to Article 102-8(B) of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.

Bidders that bid electronically on Raleigh Central-Let projects will need a separate Digital Signature form Bid Express® for Division Contracts.

**ELECTRONIC ON-LINE BID THRU BID EXPRESS:**

1. Download entire proposal from Connect NCDOT website. Download EBS file from Bid Express website.
2. Prepare and submit EBS file using Expedite software.
3. Expedite software necessary for electronic bid preparation may be downloaded from the Connect NCDOT website at: <https://connect.ncdot.gov/letting/Pages/EBS-Information.aspx> or from Bid Express.



**PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS****GENERAL****MANDATORY PRE-BID CONFERENCE (Prequalifying To Bid):**

(06-26-18)

SPD 1-310

In order for all prospective bidders to have an extensive knowledge of the project, all prospective bidders shall attend a mandatory pre-bid conference at **1:00 PM, on Tuesday, November 6, 2018.**

**Division 14 Office  
253 Webster Road  
Sylva, NC 28779**

**Point of Contact: Tad Davis  
(919)707-2930**

The pre-bid conference will include a thorough discussion of the contract pay items, special provisions, etc.

Only bidders who have attended and properly registered at the above scheduled pre-bid conference and who have met all other prequalification requirements will be considered prequalified to bid on this project. A bid received from a bidder who has not attended and properly registered at the above scheduled pre-bid conference will not be accepted and considered for award.

Attendance at the pre-bid conference will not meet the requirements of proper registration unless the individual attending has registered at the pre-bid conference in accordance with the following:

- A. The individual has signed his name on the official roster prior to the above noted time for the beginning of the conference.
- B. The individual has written in the name and address of the company he or she represents.
- C. Only one company has been shown as being represented by the individual attending.
- D. The individual attending is an officer or permanent employee of the company they are representing.

Any individual arriving after the official roster has been received by the Engineer will not be eligible to bid. Attendance at any prior pre-bid conference will not meet the requirement of this provision.

**BOND REQUIREMENTS:**

(06-01-16)

102-8, 102-10

SPD 01-420A

A Bid Bond is required in accordance with Article 102-10 of the *2018 Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures*.

Contract Payment and Performance Bonds are required in accordance with Article 103-7 of the *2018 Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures*.

**CONTRACT TIME AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:**

(7-1-95) (Rev. 12-18-07)

108

SP1 G10 A

The date of availability for this contract is **December 3, 2018**.

The completion date for this contract is **July 31, 2019**.

Except where otherwise provided by the contract, observation periods required by the contract will not be a part of the work to be completed by the completion date and/or intermediate contract times stated in the contract. The acceptable completion of the observation periods that extend beyond the final completion date shall be a part of the work covered by the performance and payment bonds.

The liquidated damages for this contract are **One Thousand Dollars (\$ 1,000.00)** per calendar day.

**NO MAJOR CONTRACT ITEMS:**

(2-19-02) (Rev. 8-21-07)

104

SP1 G31

None of the items included in this contract will be major items.

**NO SPECIALTY ITEMS:**

(7-1-95)

108-6

SP1 G34

None of the items included in this contract will be specialty items (see Article 108-6 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*).

**FUEL PRICE ADJUSTMENT:**

(11-15-05) (Rev. 2-18-14)

109-8

SP1 G43

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

**Page 1-87, Article 109-8, Fuel Price Adjustments**, add the following:

The base index price for DIESEL #2 FUEL is **\$ 2.2450** per gallon. Where any of the following are included as pay items in the contract, they will be eligible for fuel price adjustment.

The pay items and the fuel factor used in calculating adjustments to be made will be as follows:

Description	Units	Fuel Usage Factor Diesel
Unclassified Excavation	Gal/CY	0.29
Borrow Excavation	Gal/CY	0.29
Class IV Subgrade Stabilization	Gal/Ton	0.55
Aggregate Base Course	Gal/Ton	0.55
Sub-Ballast	Gal/Ton	0.55
Asphalt Concrete Base Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Asphalt Concrete Intermediate Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Asphalt Concrete Surface Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Open-Graded Asphalt Friction Course	Gal/Ton	2.90
Permeable Asphalt Drainage Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Sand Asphalt Surface Course, Type _____	Gal/Ton	2.90
Aggregate for Cement Treated Base Course	Gal/Ton	0.55
Portland Cement for Cement Treated Base Course	Gal/Ton	0.55

___" Portland Cement Concrete Pavement	Gal/SY	0.245
Concrete Shoulders Adjacent to ___" Pavement	Gal/SY	0.245

**SCHEDULE OF ESTIMATED COMPLETION PROGRESS:**

(7-15-08) (Rev. 6-19-18)

108-2

SP1 G58

The Contractor's attention is directed to the Standard Special Provision entitled *Availability of Funds Termination of Contracts* included elsewhere in this proposal. The Department of Transportation's schedule of estimated completion progress for this project as required by that Standard Special Provision is as follows:

	<b><u>Fiscal Year</u></b>	<b><u>Progress (% of Dollar Value)</u></b>
2019	(7/01/18 - 6/30/19)	<b>87% of Total Amount Bid</b>
2020	(7/01/19 - 6/30/20)	<b>13% of Total Amount Bid</b>

The Contractor shall also furnish his own progress schedule in accordance with Article 108-2 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*. Any acceleration of the progress as shown by the Contractor's progress schedule over the progress as shown above shall be subject to the approval of the Engineer.

**DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (DIVISIONS):**

(10-16-07)(Rev.1-16-18)

102-15(J)

SP1 G62

**Description**

The purpose of this Special Provision is to carry out the U.S. Department of Transportation's policy of ensuring nondiscrimination in the award and administration of contracts financed in whole or in part with Federal funds. This provision is guided by 49 CFR Part 26.

**Definitions**

*Additional DBE Subcontractors* - Any DBE submitted at the time of bid that will not be used to meet the DBE goal. No submittal of a Letter of Intent is required.

*Committed DBE Subcontractor* - Any DBE submitted at the time of bid that is being used to meet the DBE goal by submission of a Letter of Intent. Or any DBE used as a replacement for a previously committed DBE firm.

*Contract Goal Requirement* - The approved DBE participation at time of award, but not greater than the advertised contract goal.

*DBE Goal* - A portion of the total contract, expressed as a percentage, that is to be performed by committed DBE subcontractor(s).

*Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE)* - A firm certified as a Disadvantaged Business Enterprise through the North Carolina Unified Certification Program.

*Goal Confirmation Letter* - Written documentation from the Department to the bidder confirming the Contractor's approved, committed DBE participation along with a listing of the committed DBE firms.

*Manufacturer* - A firm that operates or maintains a factory or establishment that produces on the premises, the materials or supplies obtained by the Contractor.

*Regular Dealer* - A firm that owns, operates, or maintains a store, warehouse, or other establishment in which the materials or supplies required for the performance of the contract are bought, kept in stock, and regularly sold to the public in the usual course of business. A regular dealer engages in, as its principal business and in its own name, the purchase and sale or lease of the products in question. A regular dealer in such bulk items as steel, cement, gravel, stone, and petroleum products need not keep such products in stock, if it owns and operates distribution equipment for the products. Brokers and packagers are not regarded as manufacturers or regular dealers within the meaning of this section.

*North Carolina Unified Certification Program (NCUCP)* - A program that provides comprehensive services and information to applicants for DBE certification, such that an applicant is required to apply only once for a DBE certification that will be honored by all recipients of USDOT funds in the state and not limited to the Department of Transportation only. The Certification Program is in accordance with 49 CFR Part 26.

*United States Department of Transportation (USDOT)* - Federal agency responsible for issuing regulations (49 CFR Part 26) and official guidance for the DBE program.

### **Forms and Websites Referenced in this Provision**

*DBE Payment Tracking System* - On-line system in which the Contractor enters the payments made to DBE subcontractors who have performed work on the project.  
<https://apps.dot.state.nc.us/Vendor/PaymentTracking/>

*DBE-IS Subcontractor Payment Information* - Form for reporting the payments made to all DBE firms working on the project. This form is for paper bid projects only.  
<https://connect.ncdot.gov/business/Turnpike/Documents/Form%20DBE-IS%20Subcontractor%20Payment%20Information.pdf>

*RF-1 DBE Replacement Request Form* - Form for replacing a committed DBE.  
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Construction%20Forms/DBE%20MBE%20WBE%20Replacement%20Request%20Form.pdf>

*SAF Subcontract Approval Form* - Form required for approval to sublet the contract.  
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Construction%20Forms/Subcontract%20Approval%20Form%20Rev.%202012.zip>

*JC-1 Joint Check Notification Form* - Form and procedures for joint check notification. The form acts as a written joint check agreement among the parties providing full and prompt disclosure of the expected use of joint checks.  
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Construction%20Forms/Joint%20Check%20Notification%20Form.pdf>

*Letter of Intent* - Form signed by the Contractor and the DBE subcontractor, manufacturer or regular dealer that affirms that a portion of said contract is going to be performed by the signed DBE for the amount listed at the time of bid.  
<http://connect.ncdot.gov/letting/LetCentral/Letter%20of%20Intent%20to%20Perform%20as%20a%20Subcontractor.pdf>

*Listing of DBE Subcontractors Form* - Form for entering DBE subcontractors on a project that will meet this DBE goal. This form is for paper bids only.

[http://connect.ncdot.gov/municipalities/Bid% 20Proposals% 20for% 20LGA% 20Content/08% 20DBE% 20Subcontractors% 20\(Federal\).docx](http://connect.ncdot.gov/municipalities/Bid%20Proposals%20for%20LGA%20Content/08%20DBE%20Subcontractors%20(Federal).docx)

*Subcontractor Quote Comparison Sheet* - Spreadsheet for showing all subcontractor quotes in the work areas where DBEs quoted on the project. This sheet is submitted with good faith effort packages.

[http://connect.ncdot.gov/business/SmallBusiness/Documents/DBE% 20Subcontractor% 20Quote% 20Comparison% 20Example.xls](http://connect.ncdot.gov/business/SmallBusiness/Documents/DBE%20Subcontractor%20Quote%20Comparison%20Example.xls)

## **DBE Goal**

The following DBE goal for participation by Disadvantaged Business Enterprises is established for this contract:

Disadvantaged Business Enterprises **2.0 %**

- (A) *If the DBE goal is more than zero*, the Contractor shall exercise all necessary and reasonable steps to ensure that DBEs participate in at least the percent of the contract as set forth above as the DBE goal.
- (B) *If the DBE goal is zero*, the Contractor shall make an effort to recruit and use DBEs during the performance of the contract. Any DBE participation obtained shall be reported to the Department.

## **Directory of Transportation Firms (Directory)**

Real-time information is available about firms doing business with the Department and firms that are certified through NCUCP in the Directory of Transportation Firms. Only firms identified in the Directory as DBE certified shall be used to meet the DBE goal. The Directory can be found at the following link. [https:// www.ebs.nc.gov/VendorDirectory/default.html](https://www.ebs.nc.gov/VendorDirectory/default.html)

The listing of an individual firm in the directory shall not be construed as an endorsement of the firm's capability to perform certain work.

## **Listing of DBE Subcontractors**

At the time of bid, bidders shall submit all DBE participation that they anticipate to use during the life of the contract. Only those identified to meet the DBE goal will be considered committed, even though the listing shall include both committed DBE subcontractors and additional DBE subcontractors. Additional DBE subcontractor participation submitted at the time of bid will be used toward the Department's overall race-neutral goal. Only those firms with current DBE certification at the time of bid opening will be acceptable for listing in the bidder's submittal of DBE participation. The Contractor shall indicate the following required information:

- (A) Electronic Bids

Bidders shall submit a listing of DBE participation in the appropriate section of Expedite, the bidding software of Bid Express®.

- (1) Submit the names and addresses of DBE firms identified to participate in the contract. If the bidder uses the updated listing of DBE firms shown in Expedite, the bidder may use the dropdown menu to access the name and address of the DBE firm.
- (2) Submit the contract line numbers of work to be performed by each DBE firm. When no figures or firms are entered, the bidder will be considered to have no DBE participation.
- (3) The bidder shall be responsible for ensuring that the DBE is certified at the time of bid by checking the Directory of Transportation Firms. If the firm is not certified at the time of the bid-letting, that DBE's participation will not count towards achieving the DBE goal.

(B) Paper Bids

- (1) *If the DBE goal is more than zero,*
  - (a) Bidders, at the time the bid proposal is submitted, shall submit a listing of DBE participation, including the names and addresses on *Listing of DBE Subcontractors* contained elsewhere in the contract documents in order for the bid to be considered responsive. Bidders shall indicate the total dollar value of the DBE participation for the contract.
  - (b) If bidders have no DBE participation, they shall indicate this on the *Listing of DBE Subcontractors* by entering the word "None" or the number "0." This form shall be completed in its entirety. **Blank forms will not be deemed to represent zero participation.** Bids submitted that do not have DBE participation indicated on the appropriate form will not be read publicly during the opening of bids. The Department will not consider these bids for award and the proposal will be rejected.
  - (c) The bidder shall be responsible for ensuring that the DBE is certified at the time of bid by checking the Directory of Transportation Firms. If the firm is not certified at the time of the bid-letting, that DBE's participation will not count towards achieving the DBE goal.
- (2) *If the DBE goal is zero, entries on the Listing of DBE Subcontractors are not required, however any DBE participation that is achieved during the project shall be reported in accordance with requirements contained elsewhere in the special provision.*

**DBE Prime Contractor**

When a certified DBE firm bids on a contract that contains a DBE goal, the DBE firm is responsible for meeting the goal or making good faith efforts to meet the goal, just like any other bidder. In most cases, a DBE bidder on a contract will meet the DBE goal by virtue of the work it performs on the contract with its own forces. However, all the work that is performed by the DBE bidder and any other DBE subcontractors will count toward the DBE goal. The DBE bidder shall list itself along with any DBE subcontractors, if any, in order to receive credit toward the DBE goal.

For example, if the DBE goal is 45% and the DBE bidder will only perform 40% of the contract work, the prime will list itself at 40%, and the additional 5% shall be obtained through additional DBE participation with DBE subcontractors or documented through a good faith effort.

DBE prime contractors shall also follow Sections A or B listed under *Listing of DBE Subcontractor* just as a non-DBE bidder would.

### **Written Documentation – Letter of Intent**

The bidder shall submit written documentation for each DBE that will be used to meet the DBE goal of the contract, indicating the bidder's commitment to use the DBE in the contract. This documentation shall be submitted on the Department's form titled *Letter of Intent*.

The documentation shall be received in the office of the Engineer no later than 2:00 p.m. of the fifth calendar day following opening of bids, unless the fifth day falls on Saturday, Sunday or an official state holiday. In that situation, it is due in the office of the Engineer no later than 10:00 a.m. on the next official state business day.

If the bidder fails to submit the Letter of Intent from each committed DBE to be used toward the DBE goal, or if the form is incomplete (i.e. both signatures are not present), the DBE participation will not count toward meeting the DBE goal. If the lack of this participation drops the commitment below the DBE goal, the Contractor shall submit evidence of good faith efforts, completed in its entirety, to the Engineer no later than 2:00 p.m. on the eighth calendar day following opening of bids, unless the eighth day falls on Saturday, Sunday or an official state holiday. In that situation, it is due in the office of the Engineer no later than 10:00 a.m. on the next official state business day.

### **Submission of Good Faith Effort**

If the bidder fails to meet or exceed the DBE goal the apparent lowest responsive bidder shall submit to the Department documentation of adequate good faith efforts made to reach the DBE goal.

One complete set and 2 copies of this information shall be received in the office of the Engineer no later than 2:00 p.m. of the fifth calendar day following opening of bids, unless the fifth day falls on Saturday, Sunday or an official state holiday. In that situation, it is due in the office of the Engineer no later than 10:00 a.m. on the next official state business day.

Note: Where the information submitted includes repetitious solicitation letters, it will be acceptable to submit a representative letter along with a distribution list of the firms that were solicited. Documentation of DBE quotations shall be a part of the good faith effort submittal. This documentation may include written subcontractor quotations, telephone log notations of verbal quotations, or other types of quotation documentation.

### **Consideration of Good Faith Effort for Projects with DBE Goals More Than Zero**

Adequate good faith efforts mean that the bidder took all necessary and reasonable steps to achieve the goal which, by their scope, intensity, and appropriateness, could reasonably be expected to obtain sufficient DBE participation. Adequate good faith efforts also mean that the bidder actively and aggressively sought DBE participation. Mere *pro forma* efforts are not considered good faith efforts.

The Department will consider the quality, quantity, and intensity of the different kinds of efforts a bidder has made. Listed below are examples of the types of actions a bidder will take in making a good faith effort to meet the goal and are not intended to be exclusive or exhaustive, nor is it intended to be a mandatory checklist.

- (A) Soliciting through all reasonable and available means (e.g. attendance at pre-bid meetings, advertising, written notices, use of verifiable electronic means through the use of the NCDOT Directory of Transportation Firms) the interest of all certified DBEs who have the capability to perform the work of the contract. The bidder must solicit this interest within at least 10 days prior to bid opening to allow the DBEs to respond to the solicitation. Solicitation shall provide the opportunity to DBEs within the Division and surrounding Divisions where the project is located. The bidder must determine with certainty if the DBEs are interested by taking appropriate steps to follow up initial solicitations.
- (B) Selecting portions of the work to be performed by DBEs in order to increase the likelihood that the DBE goals will be achieved.
  - (1) Where appropriate, break out contract work items into economically feasible units to facilitate DBE participation, even when the prime contractor might otherwise prefer to perform these work items with its own forces.
  - (2) Negotiate with subcontractors to assume part of the responsibility to meet the contract DBE goal when the work to be sublet includes potential for DBE participation (2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> tier subcontractors).
- (C) Providing interested DBEs with adequate information about the plans, specifications, and requirements of the contract in a timely manner to assist them in responding to a solicitation.
- (D)
  - (1) Negotiating in good faith with interested DBEs. It is the bidder's responsibility to make a portion of the work available to DBE subcontractors and suppliers and to select those portions of the work or material needs consistent with the available DBE subcontractors and suppliers, so as to facilitate DBE participation. Evidence of such negotiation includes the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of DBEs that were considered; a description of the information provided regarding the plans and specifications for the work selected for subcontracting; and evidence as to why additional agreements could not be reached for DBEs to perform the work.
  - (2) A bidder using good business judgment would consider a number of factors in negotiating with subcontractors, including DBE subcontractors, and would take a firm's price and capabilities as well as contract goals into consideration. However, the fact that there may be some additional costs involved in finding and using DBEs is not in itself sufficient reason for a bidder's failure to meet the contract DBE goal, as long as such costs are reasonable. Also, the ability or desire of a prime contractor to perform the work of a contract with its own organization does not relieve the bidder of the responsibility to make good faith efforts. Bidding contractors are not, however, required to accept higher quotes from DBEs if the price difference is excessive or unreasonable.
- (E) Not rejecting DBEs as being unqualified without sound reasons based on a thorough investigation of their capabilities. The bidder's standing within its industry, membership in specific groups, organizations, or associates and political or social affiliations (for example, union vs. non-union



employee status) are not legitimate causes for the rejection or non-solicitation of bids in the bidder's efforts to meet the project goal.

- (F) Making efforts to assist interested DBEs in obtaining bonding, lines of credit, or insurance as required by the recipient or bidder.
- (G) Making efforts to assist interested DBEs in obtaining necessary equipment, supplies, materials, or related assistance or services.
- (H) Effectively using the services of available minority/women community organizations; minority/women contractors' groups; Federal, State, and local minority/women business assistance offices; and other organizations as allowed on a case-by-case basis to provide assistance in the recruitment and placement of DBEs. Contact within 7 days from the bid opening the Business Opportunity and Work Force Development Unit at BOWD@ncdot.gov to give notification of the bidder's inability to get DBE quotes.
- (I) Any other evidence that the bidder submits which shows that the bidder has made reasonable good faith efforts to meet the DBE goal.

In addition, the Department may take into account the following:

- (1) Whether the bidder's documentation reflects a clear and realistic plan for achieving the DBE goal.
- (2) The bidders' past performance in meeting the DBE goals.
- (3) The performance of other bidders in meeting the DBE goal. For example, when the apparent successful bidder fails to meet the DBE goal, but others meet it, you may reasonably raise the question of whether, with additional reasonable efforts the apparent successful bidder could have met the goal. If the apparent successful bidder fails to meet the DBE goal, but meets or exceeds the average DBE participation obtained by other bidders, the Department may view this, in conjunction with other factors, as evidence of the apparent successful bidder having made a good faith effort.

If the Department does not award the contract to the apparent lowest responsive bidder, the Department reserves the right to award the contract to the next lowest responsive bidder that can satisfy to the Department that the DBE goal can be met or that an adequate good faith effort has been made to meet the DBE goal.

### **Non-Good Faith Appeal**

The Engineer will notify the contractor verbally and in writing of non-good faith. A contractor may appeal a determination of non-good faith made by the Goal Compliance Committee. If a contractor wishes to appeal the determination made by the Committee, they shall provide written notification to the Engineer. The appeal shall be made within 2 business days of notification of the determination of non-good faith.

**Counting DBE Participation Toward Meeting DBE Goal****(A) Participation**

The total dollar value of the participation by a committed DBE will be counted toward the contract goal requirement. The total dollar value of participation by a committed DBE will be based upon the value of work actually performed by the DBE and the actual payments to DBE firms by the Contractor.

**(B) Joint Checks**

Prior notification of joint check use shall be required when counting DBE participation for services or purchases that involves the use of a joint check. Notification shall be through submission of Form JC-1 (*Joint Check Notification Form*) and the use of joint checks shall be in accordance with the Department's Joint Check Procedures.

**(C) Subcontracts (Non-Trucking)**

A DBE may enter into subcontracts. Work that a DBE subcontracts to another DBE firm may be counted toward the contract goal requirement. Work that a DBE subcontracts to a non-DBE firm does not count toward the contract goal requirement. If a DBE contractor or subcontractor subcontracts a significantly greater portion of the work of the contract than would be expected on the basis of standard industry practices, it shall be presumed that the DBE is not performing a commercially useful function. The DBE may present evidence to rebut this presumption to the Department. The Department's decision on the rebuttal of this presumption is subject to review by the Federal Highway Administration but is not administratively appealable to USDOT.

**(D) Joint Venture**

When a DBE performs as a participant in a joint venture, the Contractor may count toward its contract goal requirement a portion of the total value of participation with the DBE in the joint venture, that portion of the total dollar value being a distinct clearly defined portion of work that the DBE performs with its forces.

**(E) Suppliers**

A contractor may count toward its DBE requirement 60 percent of its expenditures for materials and supplies required to complete the contract and obtained from a DBE regular dealer and 100 percent of such expenditures from a DBE manufacturer.

**(F) Manufacturers and Regular Dealers**

A contractor may count toward its DBE requirement the following expenditures to DBE firms that are not manufacturers or regular dealers:

- (1) The fees or commissions charged by a DBE firm for providing a *bona fide* service, such as professional, technical, consultant, or managerial services, or for providing bonds or insurance specifically required for the performance of a DOT-assisted contract, provided the fees or commissions are determined to be reasonable and not excessive as compared with fees and commissions customarily allowed for similar services.

- (2) With respect to materials or supplies purchased from a DBE, which is neither a manufacturer nor a regular dealer, count the entire amount of fees or commissions charged for assistance in the procurement of the materials and supplies, or fees or transportation charges for the delivery of materials or supplies required on a job site (but not the cost of the materials and supplies themselves), provided the fees are determined to be reasonable and not excessive as compared with fees customarily allowed for similar services.

### **Commercially Useful Function**

#### **(A) DBE Utilization**

The Contractor may count toward its contract goal requirement only expenditures to DBEs that perform a commercially useful function in the work of a contract. A DBE performs a commercially useful function when it is responsible for execution of the work of the contract and is carrying out its responsibilities by actually performing, managing, and supervising the work involved. To perform a commercially useful function, the DBE shall also be responsible with respect to materials and supplies used on the contract, for negotiating price, determining quality and quantity, ordering the material and installing (where applicable) and paying for the material itself. To determine whether a DBE is performing a commercially useful function, the Department will evaluate the amount of work subcontracted, industry practices, whether the amount the firm is to be paid under the contract is commensurate with the work it is actually performing and the DBE credit claimed for its performance of the work, and any other relevant factors.

#### **(B) DBE Utilization in Trucking**

The following factors will be used to determine if a DBE trucking firm is performing a commercially useful function:

- (1) The DBE shall be responsible for the management and supervision of the entire trucking operation for which it is responsible on a particular contract, and there shall not be a contrived arrangement for the purpose of meeting DBE goals.
- (2) The DBE shall itself own and operate at least one fully licensed, insured, and operational truck used on the contract.
- (3) The DBE receives credit for the total value of the transportation services it provides on the contract using trucks it owns, insures, and operates using drivers it employs.
- (4) The DBE may subcontract the work to another DBE firm, including an owner-operator who is certified as a DBE. The DBE who subcontracts work to another DBE receives credit for the total value of the transportation services the subcontracted DBE provides on the contract.
- (5) The DBE may also subcontract the work to a non-DBE firm, including from an owner-operator. The DBE who subcontracts the work to a non-DBE is entitled to credit for the total value of transportation services provided by the non-DBE subcontractor not to exceed the value of transportation services provided by DBE-owned trucks on the contract. Additional participation by non-DBE subcontractors receives credit only for the fee or commission it receives as

a result of the subcontract arrangement. The value of services performed under subcontract agreements between the DBE and the Contractor will not count towards the DBE contract requirement.

- (6) A DBE may lease truck(s) from an established equipment leasing business open to the general public. The lease must indicate that the DBE has exclusive use of and control over the truck. This requirement does not preclude the leased truck from working for others during the term of the lease with the consent of the DBE, so long as the lease gives the DBE absolute priority for use of the leased truck. This type of lease may count toward the DBE's credit as long as the driver is under the DBE's payroll.
- (7) Subcontracted/leased trucks shall display clearly on the dashboard the name of the DBE that they are subcontracted/leased to and their own company name if it is not identified on the truck itself. Magnetic door signs are not permitted.

### **DBE Replacement**

When a Contractor has relied on a commitment to a DBE firm (or an approved substitute DBE firm) to meet all or part of a contract goal requirement, the contractor shall not terminate the DBE for convenience. This includes, but is not limited to, instances in which the Contractor seeks to perform the work of the terminated subcontractor with another DBE subcontractor, a non-DBE subcontractor, or with the Contractor's own forces or those of an affiliate. A DBE may only be terminated after receiving the Engineer's written approval based upon a finding of good cause for the termination. The prime contractor must give the DBE firm 5 days to respond to the prime contractor's notice of termination and advise the prime contractor and the Department of the reasons, if any, why the firm objects to the proposed termination of its subcontract and why the Department should not approve the action.

All requests for replacement of a committed DBE firm shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval on Form RF-1 (*DBE Replacement Request*). If the Contractor fails to follow this procedure, the Contractor may be disqualified from further bidding for a period of up to 6 months.

The Contractor shall comply with the following for replacement of a committed DBE:

#### **(A) Performance Related Replacement**

When a committed DBE is terminated for good cause as stated above, an additional DBE that was submitted at the time of bid may be used to fulfill the DBE commitment. A good faith effort will only be required for removing a committed DBE if there were no additional DBEs submitted at the time of bid to cover the same amount of work as the DBE that was terminated.

If a replacement DBE is not found that can perform at least the same amount of work as the terminated DBE, the Contractor shall submit a good faith effort documenting the steps taken. Such documentation shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- (1) Copies of written notification to DBEs that their interest is solicited in contracting the work defaulted by the previous DBE or in subcontracting other items of work in the contract.
- (2) Efforts to negotiate with DBEs for specific subbids including, at a minimum:
  - (a) The names, addresses, and telephone numbers of DBEs who were contacted.

- (b) A description of the information provided to DBEs regarding the plans and specifications for portions of the work to be performed.
  - (3) A list of reasons why DBE quotes were not accepted.
  - (4) Efforts made to assist the DBEs contacted, if needed, in obtaining bonding or insurance required by the Contractor.
- (B) Decertification Replacement
  - (1) When a committed DBE is decertified by the Department after the SAF (*Subcontract Approval Form*) has been received by the Department, the Department will not require the Contractor to solicit replacement DBE participation equal to the remaining work to be performed by the decertified firm. The participation equal to the remaining work performed by the decertified firm will count toward the contract goal requirement.
  - (2) When a committed DBE is decertified prior to the Department receiving the SAF (*Subcontract Approval Form*) for the named DBE firm, the Contractor shall take all necessary and reasonable steps to replace the DBE subcontractor with another DBE subcontractor to perform at least the same amount of work to meet the DBE goal requirement. If a DBE firm is not found to do the same amount of work, a good faith effort must be submitted to NCDOT (see A herein for required documentation).

### Changes in the Work

When the Engineer makes changes that result in the reduction or elimination of work to be performed by a committed DBE, the Contractor will not be required to seek additional participation. When the Engineer makes changes that result in additional work to be performed by a DBE based upon the Contractor's commitment, the DBE shall participate in additional work to the same extent as the DBE participated in the original contract work.

When the Engineer makes changes that result in extra work, which has more than a minimal impact on the contract amount, the Contractor shall seek additional participation by DBEs unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

When the Engineer makes changes that result in an alteration of plans or details of construction, and a portion or all of the work had been expected to be performed by a committed DBE, the Contractor shall seek participation by DBEs unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

When the Contractor requests changes in the work that result in the reduction or elimination of work that the Contractor committed to be performed by a DBE, the Contractor shall seek additional participation by DBEs equal to the reduced DBE participation caused by the changes.

### Reports and Documentation

A SAF (*Subcontract Approval Form*) shall be submitted for all work which is to be performed by a DBE subcontractor. The Department reserves the right to require copies of actual subcontract agreements involving DBE subcontractors.

When using transportation services to meet the contract commitment, the Contractor shall submit a proposed trucking plan in addition to the SAF. The plan shall be submitted prior to beginning construction on the project. The plan shall include the names of all trucking firms proposed for use, their certification

type(s), the number of trucks owned by the firm, as well as the individual truck identification numbers, and the line item(s) being performed.

Within 30 calendar days of entering into an agreement with a DBE for materials, supplies or services, not otherwise documented by the SAF as specified above, the Contractor shall furnish the Engineer a copy of the agreement. The documentation shall also indicate the percentage (60% or 100%) of expenditures claimed for DBE credit.

### **Reporting Disadvantaged Business Enterprise Participation**

The Contractor shall provide the Engineer with an accounting of payments made to all DBE firms, including material suppliers and contractors at all levels (prime, subcontractor, or second tier subcontractor). This accounting shall be furnished to the Engineer for any given month by the end of the following month. Failure to submit this information accordingly may result in the following action:

- (A) Withholding of money due in the next partial pay estimate; or
- (B) Removal of an approved contractor from the prequalified bidders' list or the removal of other entities from the approved subcontractors list.

While each contractor (prime, subcontractor, 2nd tier subcontractor) is responsible for accurate accounting of payments to DBEs, it shall be the prime contractor's responsibility to report all monthly and final payment information in the correct reporting manner.

Failure on the part of the Contractor to submit the required information in the time frame specified may result in the disqualification of that contractor and any affiliate companies from further bidding until the required information is submitted.

Failure on the part of any subcontractor to submit the required information in the time frame specified may result in the disqualification of that contractor and any affiliate companies from being approved for work on future projects until the required information is submitted.

Contractors reporting transportation services provided by non-DBE lessees shall evaluate the value of services provided during the month of the reporting period only.

At any time, the Engineer can request written verification of subcontractor payments.

The Contractor shall report the accounting of payments through the Department's DBE Payment Tracking System.

### **Failure to Meet Contract Requirements**

Failure to meet contract requirements in accordance with Subarticle 102-15(J) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* may be cause to disqualify the Contractor.

**CERTIFICATION FOR FEDERAL-AID CONTRACTS:**

(3-21-90)

SP1 G85

The prospective participant certifies, by signing and submitting this bid or proposal, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:

- (A) No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any Federal agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.
- (B) If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any Federal agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form-LLL, *Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying*, in accordance with its instructions.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by *Section 1352, Title 31, U.S. Code*. Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than \$10,000 and not more than \$100,000 for each such failure.

The prospective participant also agrees by submitting his or her bid or proposal that he or she shall require that the language of this certification be included in all lower tier subcontracts, which exceed \$100,000 and that all such subrecipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

**CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE REQUIREMENTS:**

(7-1-95)

102-14

SP1 G88

If the successful bidder does not hold the proper license to perform any plumbing, heating, air conditioning, or electrical work in this contract, he will be required to sublet such work to a contractor properly licensed in accordance with *Article 2 of Chapter 87 of the General Statutes* (licensing of heating, plumbing, and air conditioning contractors) and *Article 4 of Chapter 87 of the General Statutes* (licensing of electrical contractors).

**U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION HOTLINE:**

(11-22-94)

108-5

SP1 G100

To report bid rigging activities call: **1-800-424-9071**

The U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) operates the above toll-free hotline Monday through Friday, 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. eastern time. Anyone with knowledge of possible bid rigging, bidder collusion, or other fraudulent activities should use the hotline to report such activities.

The hotline is part of the DOT's continuing effort to identify and investigate highway construction contract fraud and abuse is operated under the direction of the DOT Inspector General. All information will be treated confidentially and caller anonymity will be respected.

**CARGO PREFERENCE ACT:**

(2-16-16)

Privately owned United States-flag commercial vessels transporting cargoes are subject to the Cargo Preference Act (CPA) of 1954 requirements and regulations found in 46 CFR 381.7. Contractors are directed to clause (b) of 46 CFR 381.7 as follows:

- (b) Contractor and Subcontractor Clauses. "Use of United States-flag vessels: The contractor agrees-

" (1) To utilize privately owned United States-flag commercial vessels to ship at least 50 percent of the gross tonnage (computed separately for dry bulk carriers, dry cargo liners, and tankers) involved, whenever shipping any equipment, material, or commodities pursuant to this contract, to the extent such vessels are available at fair and reasonable rates for United States-flag commercial vessels.

(2) To furnish within 20 days following the date of loading for shipments originating within the United States or within 30 working days following the date of loading for shipments originating outside the United States a legible copy of a rated, 'on-board' commercial ocean bill-of-lading in English for each shipment of cargo described in paragraph (b) (1) of this section to both the Contracting Officer (through the prime contractor in the case of subcontractor bills-of-lading) and to the Division of National Cargo, Office of Market Development, Maritime Administration, Washington, DC 20590.

(3) To insert the substance of the provisions of this clause in all subcontracts issued pursuant to this contract."

**SUBSURFACE INFORMATION:**

(7-1-95)

450

SP1 G112 A

There is **no** subsurface information available on this project. The Contractor shall make his own investigation of subsurface conditions.

**TWELVE MONTH GUARANTEE:**

(7-15-03)

108

SP1 G145

- (A) The Contractor shall guarantee materials and workmanship against latent and patent defects arising from faulty materials, faulty workmanship or negligence for a period of twelve months following the date of final acceptance of the work for maintenance and shall replace such defective materials and workmanship without cost to the Department. The Contractor will not be responsible for damage due to faulty design, normal wear and tear, for negligence on the part of the Department, and/or for use in excess of the design.
- (B) Where items of equipment or material carry a manufacturer's guarantee for any period in excess of twelve months, then the manufacturer's guarantee shall apply for that particular piece of equipment or material. The Department's first remedy shall be through the manufacturer although the Contractor is responsible for invoking the warranted repair work with the manufacturer. The Contractor's responsibility shall be limited to the term of the manufacturer's guarantee. NCDOT would be afforded the same warranty as provided by the Manufacturer.



This guarantee provision shall be invoked only for major components of work in which the Contractor would be wholly responsible for under the terms of the contract. Examples would include pavement structures, bridge components, and sign structures. This provision will not be used as a mechanism to force the Contractor to return to the project to make repairs or perform additional work that the Department would normally compensate the Contractor for. In addition, routine maintenance activities (i.e. mowing grass, debris removal, ruts in earth shoulders,) are not parts of this guarantee.

Appropriate provisions of the payment and/or performance bonds shall cover this guarantee for the project.

To ensure uniform application statewide the Division Engineer will forward details regarding the circumstances surrounding any proposed guarantee repairs to the Chief Engineer for review and approval prior to the work being performed.

### **EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL/STORMWATER CERTIFICATION:**

(1-16-07) (Rev 11-22-16)

105-16, 225-2, 16

SP1 GI 80

#### **General**

Schedule and conduct construction activities in a manner that will minimize soil erosion and the resulting sedimentation and turbidity of surface waters. Comply with the requirements herein regardless of whether or not a National Pollution discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit for the work is required.

Establish a chain of responsibility for operations and subcontractors' operations to ensure that the *Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan* is implemented and maintained over the life of the contract.

- (A) *Certified Supervisor* - Provide a certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor to manage the Contractor and subcontractor operations, insure compliance with Federal, State and Local ordinances and regulations, and manage the Quality Control Program.
- (B) *Certified Foreman* - Provide a certified, trained foreman for each construction operation that increases the potential for soil erosion or the possible sedimentation and turbidity of surface waters.
- (C) *Certified Installer* - Provide a certified installer to install or direct the installation for erosion or sediment/stormwater control practices.
- (D) *Certified Designer* - Provide a certified designer for the design of the erosion and sediment control/stormwater component of reclamation plans and, if applicable, for the design of the project erosion and sediment control/stormwater plan.

#### **Roles and Responsibilities**

- (A) *Certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor* - The Certified Supervisor shall be Level II and responsible for ensuring the erosion and sediment control/stormwater plan is adequately implemented and maintained on the project and for conducting the quality control program. The Certified Supervisor shall be on the project within 24 hours notice from initial exposure of an erodible surface to the project's final acceptance. Perform the following duties:
  - (1) *Manage Operations* - Coordinate and schedule the work of subcontractors so that erosion and sediment control/stormwater measures are fully executed for each operation and in a timely manner over the duration of the contract.

- (a) Oversee the work of subcontractors so that appropriate erosion and sediment control/stormwater preventive measures are conformed to at each stage of the work.
  - (b) Prepare the required National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Inspection Record and submit to the Engineer.
  - (c) Attend all weekly or monthly construction meetings to discuss the findings of the NPDES inspection and other related issues.
  - (d) Implement the erosion and sediment control/stormwater site plans requested.
  - (e) Provide any needed erosion and sediment control/stormwater practices for the Contractor's temporary work not shown on the plans, such as, but not limited to work platforms, temporary construction, pumping operations, plant and storage yards, and cofferdams.
  - (f) Acquire applicable permits and comply with requirements for borrow pits, dewatering, and any temporary work conducted by the Contractor in jurisdictional areas.
  - (g) Conduct all erosion and sediment control/stormwater work in a timely and workmanlike manner.
  - (h) Fully perform and install erosion and sediment control/stormwater work prior to any suspension of the work.
  - (i) Coordinate with Department, Federal, State and Local Regulatory agencies on resolution of erosion and sediment control/stormwater issues due to the Contractor's operations.
  - (j) Ensure that proper cleanup occurs from vehicle tracking on paved surfaces or any location where sediment leaves the Right-of-Way.
  - (k) Have available a set of erosion and sediment control/stormwater plans that are initialed and include the installation date of Best Management Practices. These practices shall include temporary and permanent groundcover and be properly updated to reflect necessary plan and field changes for use and review by Department personnel as well as regulatory agencies.
- (2) Requirements set forth under the NPDES Permit - The Department's NPDES Stormwater permit (NCS000250) outlines certain objectives and management measures pertaining to construction activities. The permit references *NCG010000, General Permit to Discharge Stormwater* under the NPDES, and states that the Department shall incorporate the applicable requirements into its delegated Erosion and Sediment Control Program for construction activities disturbing one or more acres of land. The Department further incorporates these requirements on all contracted bridge and culvert work at jurisdictional waters, regardless of size. Some of the requirements are, but are not limited to:
- (a) Control project site waste to prevent contamination of surface or ground waters of the state, i.e. from equipment operation/maintenance, construction materials, concrete washout, chemicals, litter, fuels, lubricants, coolants, hydraulic fluids, any other petroleum products, and sanitary waste.
  - (b) Inspect erosion and sediment control/stormwater devices and stormwater discharge outfalls at least once every 7 calendar days and within 24 hours after a rainfall event of 0.5 inch that occurs within a 24 hour period. Additional monitoring may be required at the discretion of Division of Water Resources personnel if the receiving stream is 303(d) listed for turbidity and the project has had documented problems managing turbidity.

- (c) Maintain an onsite rain gauge or use the Department's Multi-Sensor Precipitation Estimate website to maintain a daily record of rainfall amounts and dates.
  - (d) Maintain erosion and sediment control/stormwater inspection records for review by Department and Regulatory personnel upon request.
  - (e) Implement approved reclamation plans on all borrow pits, waste sites and staging areas.
  - (f) Maintain a log of turbidity test results as outlined in the Department's Procedure for Monitoring Borrow Pit Discharge.
  - (g) Provide secondary containment for bulk storage of liquid materials.
  - (h) Provide training for employees concerning general erosion and sediment control/stormwater awareness, the Department's NPDES Stormwater Permit NCS000250 requirements, and the applicable requirements of the *General Permit, NCG010000*.
  - (i) Report violations of the NPDES permit to the Engineer immediately who will notify the Division of Water Quality Regional Office within 24 hours of becoming aware of the violation.
- (3) Quality Control Program - Maintain a quality control program to control erosion, prevent sedimentation and follow provisions/conditions of permits. The quality control program shall:
  - (a) Follow permit requirements related to the Contractor and subcontractors' construction activities.
  - (b) Ensure that all operators and subcontractors on site have the proper erosion and sediment control/stormwater certification.
  - (c) Notify the Engineer when the required certified erosion and sediment control/stormwater personnel are not available on the job site when needed.
  - (d) Conduct the inspections required by the NPDES permit.
  - (e) Take corrective actions in the proper timeframe as required by the NPDES permit for problem areas identified during the NPDES inspections.
  - (f) Incorporate erosion control into the work in a timely manner and stabilize disturbed areas with mulch/seed or vegetative cover on a section-by-section basis.
  - (g) Use flocculants approved by state regulatory authorities where appropriate and where required for turbidity and sedimentation reduction.
  - (h) Ensure proper installation and maintenance of temporary erosion and sediment control devices.
  - (i) Remove temporary erosion or sediment control devices when they are no longer necessary as agreed upon by the Engineer.
  - (j) The Contractor's quality control and inspection procedures shall be subject to review by the Engineer. Maintain NPDES inspection records and make records available at all times for verification by the Engineer.
- (B) *Certified Foreman* - At least one Certified Foreman shall be onsite for each type of work listed herein during the respective construction activities to control erosion, prevent sedimentation and follow permit provisions:
  - (1) Foreman in charge of grading activities
  - (2) Foreman in charge of bridge or culvert construction over jurisdictional areas
  - (3) Foreman in charge of utility activities

The Contractor may request to use the same person as the Level II Supervisor and Level II Foreman. This person shall be onsite whenever construction activities as described above are taking place. This request shall be approved by the Engineer prior to work beginning.

The Contractor may request to name a single Level II Foreman to oversee multiple construction activities on small bridge or culvert replacement projects. This request shall be approved by the Engineer prior to work beginning.

(C) *Certified Installers* - Provide at least one onsite, Level I Certified Installer for each of the following erosion and sediment control/stormwater crew:

- (1) Seeding and Mulching
- (2) Temporary Seeding
- (3) Temporary Mulching
- (4) Sodding
- (5) Silt fence or other perimeter erosion/sediment control device installations
- (6) Erosion control blanket installation
- (7) Hydraulic tackifier installation
- (8) Turbidity curtain installation
- (9) Rock ditch check/sediment dam installation
- (10) Ditch liner/matting installation
- (11) Inlet protection
- (12) Riprap placement
- (13) Stormwater BMP installations (such as but not limited to level spreaders, retention/detention devices)
- (14) Pipe installations within jurisdictional areas

If a Level I *Certified Installer* is not onsite, the Contractor may substitute a Level II Foreman for a Level I Installer, provided the Level II Foreman is not tasked to another crew requiring Level II Foreman oversight.

(D) *Certified Designer* - Include the certification number of the Level III-B Certified Designer on the erosion and sediment control/stormwater component of all reclamation plans and if applicable, the certification number of the Level III-A Certified Designer on the design of the project erosion and sediment control/stormwater plan.

### **Preconstruction Meeting**

Furnish the names of the *Certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor*, *Certified Foremen*, *Certified Installers* and *Certified Designer* and notify the Engineer of changes in certified personnel over the life of the contract within 2 days of change.

### **Ethical Responsibility**

Any company performing work for the North Carolina Department of Transportation has the ethical responsibility to fully disclose any reprimand or dismissal of an employee resulting from improper testing or falsification of records.

**Revocation or Suspension of Certification**

Upon recommendation of the Chief Engineer to the certification entity, certification for *Supervisor, Certified Foremen, Certified Installers* and *Certified Designer* may be revoked or suspended with the issuance of an *Immediate Corrective Action (ICA)*, *Notice of Violation (NOV)*, or *Cease and Desist Order* for erosion and sediment control/stormwater related issues.

The Chief Engineer may recommend suspension or permanent revocation of certification due to the following:

- (A) Failure to adequately perform the duties as defined within this certification provision.
- (B) Issuance of an ICA, NOV, or Cease and Desist Order.
- (C) Failure to fully perform environmental commitments as detailed within the permit conditions and specifications.
- (D) Demonstration of erroneous documentation or reporting techniques.
- (E) Cheating or copying another candidate's work on an examination.
- (F) Intentional falsification of records.
- (G) Directing a subordinate under direct or indirect supervision to perform any of the above actions.
- (H) Dismissal from a company for any of the above reasons.
- (I) Suspension or revocation of one's certification by another entity.

Suspension or revocation of a certification will be sent by certified mail to the certificant and the Corporate Head of the company that employs the certificant.

A certificant has the right to appeal any adverse action which results in suspension or permanent revocation of certification by responding, in writing, to the Chief Engineer within 10 calendar days after receiving notice of the proposed adverse action.

Chief Engineer  
1536 Mail Service Center  
Raleigh, NC 27699-1536

Failure to appeal within 10 calendar days will result in the proposed adverse action becoming effective on the date specified on the certified notice. Failure to appeal within the time specified will result in a waiver of all future appeal rights regarding the adverse action taken. The certificant will not be allowed to perform duties associated with the certification during the appeal process.

The Chief Engineer will hear the appeal and make a decision within 7 days of hearing the appeal. Decision of the Chief Engineer will be final and will be made in writing to the certificant.

If a certification is temporarily suspended, the certificant shall pass any applicable written examination and any proficiency examination, at the conclusion of the specified suspension period, prior to having the certification reinstated.

**Measurement and Payment**

*Certified Erosion and Sediment Control/Stormwater Supervisor, Certified Foremen, Certified Installers* and *Certified Designer* will be incidental to the project for which no direct compensation will be made.

**PROCEDURE FOR MONITORING BORROW PIT DISCHARGE:**

(2-20-07) (Rev. 3-19-13)

105-16, 230, 801

SP1 G181

Water discharge from borrow pit sites shall not cause surface waters to exceed 50 NTUs (nephelometric turbidity unit) in streams not designated as trout waters and 10 NTUs in streams, lakes or reservoirs designated as trout waters. For lakes and reservoirs not designated as trout waters, the turbidity shall not exceed 25 NTUs. If the turbidity exceeds these levels due to natural background conditions, the existing turbidity level shall not be increased.

If during any operating day, the downstream water quality exceeds the standard, the Contractor shall do all of the following:

- (A) Either cease discharge or modify the discharge volume or turbidity levels to bring the downstream turbidity levels into compliance, or
- (B) Evaluate the upstream conditions to determine if the exceedance of the standard is due to natural background conditions. If the background turbidity measurements exceed the standard, operation of the pit and discharge can continue as long as the stream turbidity levels are not increased due to the discharge.
- (C) Measure and record the turbidity test results (time, date and sampler) at all defined sampling locations 30 minutes after startup and at a minimum, one additional sampling of all sampling locations during that 24-hour period in which the borrow pit is discharging.
- (D) Notify DWQ within 24 hours of any stream turbidity standard exceedances that are not brought into compliance.

During the Environmental Assessment required by Article 230-4 of the *2018 Standard Specifications*, the Contractor shall define the point at which the discharge enters into the State's surface waters and the appropriate sampling locations. Sampling locations shall include points upstream and downstream from the point at which the discharge enters these waters. Upstream sampling location shall be located so that it is not influenced by backwater conditions and represents natural background conditions. Downstream sampling location shall be located at the point where complete mixing of the discharge and receiving water has occurred.

The discharge shall be closely monitored when water from the dewatering activities is introduced into jurisdictional wetlands. Any time visible sedimentation (deposition of sediment) on the wetland surface is observed, the dewatering activity will be suspended until turbidity levels in the stilling basin can be reduced to a level where sediment deposition does not occur. Staining of wetland surfaces from suspended clay particles, occurring after evaporation or infiltration, does not constitute sedimentation. No activities shall occur in wetlands that adversely affect the functioning of a wetland. Visible sedimentation will be considered an indication of possible adverse impacts on wetland use.

The Engineer will perform independent turbidity tests on a random basis. These results will be maintained in a log within the project records. Records will include, at a minimum, turbidity test results, time, date and name of sampler. Should the Department's test results exceed those of the Contractor's test results, an immediate test shall be performed jointly with the results superseding the previous test results of both the Department and the Contractor.

The Contractor shall use the *NCDOT Turbidity Reduction Options for Borrow Pits Matrix*, available at [http://www.ncdot.gov/doh/operations/dp\\_chief\\_eng/roadside/fieldops/downloads/](http://www.ncdot.gov/doh/operations/dp_chief_eng/roadside/fieldops/downloads/)

[Files/TurbidityReductionOptionSheet.pdf](#) to plan, design, construct, and maintain BMPs to address water quality standards. Tier I Methods include stilling basins which are standard compensatory BMPs. Other Tier I methods are noncompensatory and shall be used when needed to meet the stream turbidity standards. Tier II Methods are also noncompensatory and are options that may be needed for protection of rare or unique resources or where special environmental conditions exist at the site which have led to additional requirements being placed in the DWQ's 401 Certifications and approval letters, Isolated Wetland Permits, Riparian Buffer Authorization or a DOT Reclamation Plan's Environmental Assessment for the specific site. Should the Contractor exhaust all Tier I Methods on a site exclusive of rare or unique resources or special environmental conditions, Tier II Methods may be required by regulators on a case by case basis per supplemental agreement.

The Contractor may use cation exchange capacity (CEC) values from proposed site borings to plan and develop the bid for the project. CEC values exceeding 15 milliequivalents per 100 grams of soil may indicate a high potential for turbidity and should be avoided when dewatering into surface water is proposed.

No additional compensation for monitoring borrow pit discharge will be paid.

**DIVISION LET CONTRACT PREQUALIFICATION:**

(07-01-14)(12-1-16)

SPD 01-410

Any firm that wishes to bid as a prime contractor shall be prequalified as a Bidder or PO Prime Contractor prior to submitting a bid. Information regarding prequalification can be found at: <https://connect.ncdot.gov/business/Prequal/Pages/default.aspx>.

Prior to performing the work, the prime contractor and/or subcontractor(s) shall be prequalified in the work code(s) which are identified as work items in the prime contractor's construction progress schedule that they will complete themselves. Any contractor identified as working outside their expertise may be considered in default of contract.

**STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**  
**AVAILABILITY OF FUNDS – TERMINATION OF CONTRACTS**

(5-20-08)

Z-2

*General Statute 143C-6-11. (h) Highway Appropriation* is hereby incorporated verbatim in this contract as follows:

(h) Amounts Encumbered. – Transportation project appropriations may be encumbered in the amount of allotments made to the Department of Transportation by the Director for the estimated payments for transportation project contract work to be performed in the appropriation fiscal year. The allotments shall be multiyear allotments and shall be based on estimated revenues and shall be subject to the maximum contract authority contained in *General Statute 143C-6-11(c)*. Payment for transportation project work performed pursuant to contract in any fiscal year other than the current fiscal year is subject to appropriations by the General Assembly. Transportation project contracts shall contain a schedule of estimated completion progress, and any acceleration of this progress shall be subject to the approval of the Department of Transportation provided funds are available. The State reserves the right to terminate or suspend any transportation project contract, and any transportation project contract shall be so terminated or suspended if funds will not be available for payment of the work to be performed during that fiscal year pursuant to the contract. In the event of termination of any contract, the contractor shall be given a written notice of termination at least 60 days before completion of scheduled work for which funds are available. In the event of termination, the contractor shall be paid for the work already performed in accordance with the contract specifications.

Payment will be made on any contract terminated pursuant to the special provision in accordance with Subarticle 108-13(D) of the *2018 Standard Specifications*.



**STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**  
**NCDOT GENERAL SEED SPECIFICATION FOR SEED QUALITY**

(5-17-11)

Z-3

Seed shall be sampled and tested by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services, Seed Testing Laboratory. When said samples are collected, the vendor shall supply an independent laboratory report for each lot to be tested. Results from seed so sampled shall be final. Seed not meeting the specifications shall be rejected by the Department of Transportation and shall not be delivered to North Carolina Department of Transportation warehouses. If seed has been delivered it shall be available for pickup and replacement at the supplier's expense.

Any re-labeling required by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services, Seed Testing Laboratory, that would cause the label to reflect as otherwise specified herein shall be rejected by the North Carolina Department of Transportation.

Seed shall be free from seeds of the noxious weeds Johnsongrass, Balloonvine, Jimsonweed, Witchweed, Itchgrass, Serrated Tussock, Showy Crotalaria, Smooth Crotalaria, Sicklepod, Sandbur, Wild Onion, and Wild Garlic. Seed shall not be labeled with the above weed species on the seed analysis label. Tolerances as applied by the Association of Official Seed Analysts will NOT be allowed for the above noxious weeds except for Wild Onion and Wild Garlic.

Tolerances established by the Association of Official Seed Analysts will generally be recognized. However, for the purpose of figuring pure live seed, the found pure seed and found germination percentages as reported by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services, Seed Testing Laboratory will be used. Allowances, as established by the NCDOT, will be recognized for minimum pure live seed as listed on the following pages.

The specifications for restricted noxious weed seed refers to the number per pound as follows:

<b><u>Restricted Noxious Weed</u></b>	<b><u>Limitations per Lb. Of Seed</u></b>	<b><u>Restricted Noxious Weed</u></b>	<b><u>Limitations per Lb. of Seed</u></b>
Blessed Thistle	4 seeds	Cornflower (Ragged Robin)	27 seeds
Cocklebur	4 seeds	Texas Panicum	27 seeds
Spurred Anoda	4 seeds	Bracted Plantain	54 seeds
Velvetleaf	4 seeds	Buckhorn Plantain	54 seeds
Morning-glory	8 seeds	Broadleaf Dock	54 seeds
Corn Cockle	10 seeds	Curly Dock	54 seeds
Wild Radish	12 seeds	Dodder	54 seeds
Purple Nutsedge	27 seeds	Giant Foxtail	54 seeds
Yellow Nutsedge	27 seeds	Horsenettle	54 seeds
Canada Thistle	27 seeds	Quackgrass	54 seeds
Field Bindweed	27 seeds	Wild Mustard	54 seeds
Hedge Bindweed	27 seeds		

Seed of Pensacola Bahiagrass shall not contain more than 7% inert matter, Kentucky Bluegrass, Centipede and Fine or Hard Fescue shall not contain more than 5% inert matter whereas a maximum of 2% inert matter will be allowed on all other kinds of seed. In addition, all seed shall not contain more than 2% other crop seed nor more than 1% total weed seed. The germination rate as tested by the North Carolina Department of Agriculture shall not fall below 70%, which includes both dormant and hard seed. Seed shall be labeled

with not more than 7%, 5% or 2% inert matter (according to above specifications), 2% other crop seed and 1% total weed seed.

Exceptions may be made for minimum pure live seed allowances when cases of seed variety shortages are verified. Pure live seed percentages will be applied in a verified shortage situation. Those purchase orders of deficient seed lots will be credited with the percentage that the seed is deficient.

**FURTHER SPECIFICATIONS FOR EACH SEED GROUP ARE GIVEN BELOW:**

Minimum 85% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 83% pure live seed will not be approved.

Sericea Lespedeza  
Oats (seeds)

Minimum 80% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 78% pure live seed will not be approved.

Tall Fescue (all approved varieties)	Bermudagrass
Kobe Lespedeza	Browntop Millet
Korean Lespedeza	German Millet – Strain R
Weeping Lovegrass	Clover – Red/White/Crimson
Carpetgrass	

Minimum 78% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 76% pure live seed will not be approved.

Common or Sweet Sundangrass

Minimum 76% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 74% pure live seed will not be approved.

Rye (grain; all varieties)  
Kentucky Bluegrass (all approved varieties)  
Hard Fescue (all approved varieties)  
Shrub (bicolor) Lespedeza

Minimum 70% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 144 noxious weed seed per pound. Seed less than 70% pure live seed will not be approved.

Centipedegrass	Japanese Millet
Crownvetch	Reed Canary Grass
Pensacola Bahiagrass	Zoysia
Creeping Red Fescue	

Minimum 70% pure live seed; maximum 1% total weed seed; maximum 2% total other crop seed; maximum 5% inert matter; maximum 144 restricted noxious weed seed per pound.

Barnyard Grass  
Big Bluestem  
Little Bluestem

Bristly Locust  
Birdsfoot Trefoil  
Indiangrass  
Orchardgrass  
Switchgrass  
Yellow Blossom Sweet Clover

**STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION****ERRATA**

(10-16-18)

Z-4

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

**Division 7**

**Page 7-27, Article 725-1 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, line 4,** replace article number “725-1” with “724-4”.

**Page 7-28, Article 725-1 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, line 10,** replace article number “725-1” with “725-3”.

**Division 10**

**Page 10-162, Article 1080-50 PAINT FOR VERTICAL MARKERS, line 1,** replace article number “1080-50” with “1080-10”.

**Page 10-162, Article 1080-61 EPOXY RESIN FOR REINFORCING STEEL, line 5,** replace article number “1080-61” with “1080-11”.

**Page 10-162, Article 1080-72 ABRASIVE MATERIALS FOR BLAST CLEANING STEEL, line 22,** replace article number “1080-72” with “1080-12”.

**Page 10-163, Article 1080-83 FIELD PERFORMANCE AND SERVICES, line 25,** replace article number “1080-83” with “1080-13”.

**Division 17**

**Page 17-15, Article 1715-4 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT, lines 42-44,** replace the second sentence with the following:

An example is an installation of a single 1.25 inch HDPE conduit would be paid as:

Directional Drill (1)(1.25”) Linear Foot

**STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION****PLANT AND PEST QUARANTINES****(Imported Fire Ant, Gypsy Moth, Witchweed, Emerald Ash Borer, And Other Noxious Weeds)**

(3-18-03) (Rev. 12-20-16)

Z-04a

**Within Quarantined Area**

This project may be within a county regulated for plant and/or pests. If the project or any part of the Contractor's operations is located within a quarantined area, thoroughly clean all equipment prior to moving out of the quarantined area. Comply with federal/state regulations by obtaining a certificate or limited permit for any regulated article moving from the quarantined area.

**Originating in a Quarantined County**

Obtain a certificate or limited permit issued by the N.C. Department of Agriculture/United States Department of Agriculture. Have the certificate or limited permit accompany the article when it arrives at the project site.

**Contact**

Contact the N.C. Department of Agriculture/United States Department of Agriculture at 1-800-206-9333, 919-707-3730, or <http://www.ncagr.gov/plantindustry/> to determine those specific project sites located in the quarantined area or for any regulated article used on this project originating in a quarantined county.

**Regulated Articles Include**

1. Soil, sand, gravel, compost, peat, humus, muck, and decomposed manure, separately or with other articles. This includes movement of articles listed above that may be associated with cut/waste, ditch pulling, and shoulder cutting.
2. Plants with roots including grass sod.
3. Plant crowns and roots.
4. Bulbs, corms, rhizomes, and tubers of ornamental plants.
5. Hay, straw, fodder, and plant litter of any kind.
6. Clearing and grubbing debris.
7. Used agricultural cultivating and harvesting equipment.
8. Used earth-moving equipment.
9. Any other products, articles, or means of conveyance, of any character, if determined by an inspector to present a hazard of spreading imported fire ant, gypsy moth, witchweed, emerald ash borer, or other noxious weeds.

**STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION****TITLE VI AND NONDISCRIMINATION:**

(6-28-77)(Rev 6/19/2018)

Z-6

Revise the *2018 Standard Specifications* as follows:

Replace Article 103-4(B) with the following:

The North Carolina Department of Transportation is committed to carrying out the U.S. Department of Transportation's policy of ensuring nondiscrimination in the award and administration of contracts.

The provisions of this section related to United States Department of Transportation (US DOT) Order 1050.2A, Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) part 21, 23 United States Code (U.S.C.) 140 and 23 CFR part 200 (or 49 CFR 303, 49 U.S.C. 5332 or 49 U.S.C. 47123) are applicable to all North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) contracts and to all related subcontracts, material supply, engineering, architectural and other service contracts, regardless of dollar amount. Any Federal provision that is specifically required not specifically set forth is hereby incorporated by reference.

**(1) Title VI Assurances (USDOT Order 1050.2A, Appendix A)**

During the performance of this contract, the contractor, for itself, its assignees, and successors in interest (hereinafter referred to as the "contractor") agrees as follows:

**(a) Compliance with Regulations**

The contractor (hereinafter includes consultants) shall comply with the Acts and the Regulations relative to Nondiscrimination in Federally-assisted programs of the U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration (FHWA), as they may be amended from time to time, which are herein incorporated by reference and made a part of this contract.

**(b) Nondiscrimination**

The contractor, with regard to the work performed by it during the contract, shall not discriminate on the grounds of race, color, or national origin in the selection and retention of subcontractors, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment. The contractor shall not participate directly or indirectly in the discrimination prohibited by the Acts and the Regulations, including employment practices when the contract covers any activity, project, or program set forth in Appendix B of 49 CFR Part 21.

**(c) Solicitations for Subcontractors, Including Procurements of Materials and Equipment**

In all solicitations, either by competitive bidding, or negotiation made by the contractor for work to be performed under a subcontract, including procurements of materials, or leases of equipment, each potential subcontractor or supplier shall be notified by the contractor of the contractor's obligations under this contract and the Acts and the Regulations relative to Nondiscrimination on the grounds of race, color, or national origin.

**(d) Information and Reports**

The contractor shall provide all information and reports required by the Acts, the Regulations, and directives issued pursuant thereto and shall permit access to its books, records, accounts, other sources of information, and its facilities as may be determined by the Recipient or the FHWA to be pertinent to ascertain compliance with such Acts, Regulations, and instructions. Where any information required of a contractor is in the exclusive possession of another who fails or refuses to furnish the information, the contractor shall so certify to the Recipient or the FHWA, as appropriate, and shall set forth what efforts it has made to obtain the information.

**(e) Sanctions for Noncompliance:**

In the event of a contractor's noncompliance with the Non-discrimination provisions of this contract, the Recipient will impose such contract sanctions as it and/or the FHWA may determine to be appropriate, including, but not limited to:

- (i) Withholding payments to the contractor under the contract until the contractor complies; and/or
- (ii) Cancelling, terminating, or suspending a contract, in whole or in part.

(f) Incorporation of Provisions

The contractor shall include the provisions of paragraphs (a) through (f) in every subcontract, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment, unless exempt by the Acts, the Regulations and directives issued pursuant thereto. The contractor shall take action with respect to any subcontract or procurement as the Recipient or the FHWA may direct as a means of enforcing such provisions including sanctions for noncompliance. Provided, that if the contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with litigation by a subcontractor, or supplier because of such direction, the contractor may request the Recipient to enter into any litigation to protect the interests of the Recipient. In addition, the contractor may request the United States to enter into the litigation to protect the interests of the United States.

(2) **Title VI Nondiscrimination Program (23 CFR 200.5(p))**

The North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) has assured the USDOT that, as a condition to receiving federal financial assistance, NCDOT will comply with Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 and all requirements imposed by Title 49 CFR part 21 and related nondiscrimination authorities to ensure that no person shall, on the ground of race, color, national origin, limited English proficiency, sex, age, or disability (including religion/creed or income-level, where applicable), be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subjected to discrimination under any programs, activities, or services conducted or funded by NCDOT. Contractors and other organizations under contract or agreement with NCDOT must also comply with Title VI and related authorities, therefore:

- (a) During the performance of this contract or agreement, contractors (e.g., subcontractors, consultants, vendors, prime contractors) are responsible for complying with NCDOT's Title VI Program. Contractors are not required to prepare or submit Title VI Programs. To comply with this section, the prime contractor shall:
  - 1. Post NCDOT's Notice of Nondiscrimination and the Contractor's own Equal Employment Opportunity (EEO) Policy in conspicuous locations accessible to all employees, applicants and subcontractors on the jobsite.
  - 2. Physically incorporate the required Title VI clauses into all subcontracts on federally-assisted and state-funded NCDOT projects, and ensure inclusion by subcontractors into all lower-tier subcontracts.
  - 3. Required Solicitation Language. The Contractor shall include the following notification in all solicitations for bids and requests for work or material, regardless of funding source:  
"The North Carolina Department of Transportation, in accordance with the provisions of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (78 Stat. 252, 42 U.S.C. §§ 2000d to 2000d-4) and the Regulations, hereby notifies all bidders that it will affirmatively ensure that any contract entered into pursuant to this advertisement, disadvantaged business enterprises will be afforded full and fair opportunity to submit bids in response to this invitation and will not be discriminated against on the grounds of race, color, or national origin in consideration for an award. In accordance with other related nondiscrimination authorities, bidders and contractors will also not be discriminated against on the grounds of sex, age, disability, low-income level, creed/religion, or limited English proficiency in consideration for an award."

4. Physically incorporate the FHWA-1273, in its entirety, into all subcontracts and subsequent lower tier subcontracts on Federal-aid highway construction contracts only.
  5. Provide language assistance services (i.e., written translation and oral interpretation), free of charge, to LEP employees and applicants. Contact NCDOT OCR for further assistance, if needed.
  6. For assistance with these Title VI requirements, contact the NCDOT Title VI Nondiscrimination Program at 1-800-522-0453.
- (b) Subrecipients (e.g. cities, counties, LGAs, planning organizations) may be required to prepare and submit a Title VI Plan to NCDOT, including Title VI Assurances and/or agreements. Subrecipients must also ensure compliance by their contractors and subrecipients with Title VI. (23 CFR 200.9(b)(7))
- (c) If reviewed or investigated by NCDOT, the contractor or subrecipient agrees to take affirmative action to correct any deficiencies found within a reasonable time period, not to exceed 90 calendar days, unless additional time is granted by NCDOT. (23 CFR 200.9(b)(15))
- (d) The Contractor is responsible for notifying subcontractors of NCDOT's External Discrimination Complaints Process.
1. **Applicability**  
Title VI and related laws protect participants and beneficiaries (e.g., members of the public and contractors) from discrimination by NCDOT employees, subrecipients and contractors, regardless of funding source.
  2. **Eligibility**  
Any person—or class of persons—who believes he/she has been subjected to discrimination based on race, color, national origin, Limited English Proficiency (LEP), sex, age, or disability (and religion in the context of employment, aviation, or transit) may file a written complaint. The law also prohibits intimidation or retaliation of any sort.
  3. **Time Limits and Filing Options**  
Complaints may be filed by the affected individual(s) or a representative and must be filed no later than 180 calendar days after the following:
    - (i) The date of the alleged act of discrimination; or
    - (ii) The date when the person(s) became aware of the alleged discrimination; or
    - (iii) Where there has been a continuing course of conduct, the date on which that conduct was discontinued or the latest instance of the conduct.Title VI and related discrimination complaints may be submitted to the following entities:
    - North Carolina Department of Transportation, Office of Civil Rights, Title VI Program, 1511 Mail Service Center, Raleigh, NC 27699-1511; toll free 1-800-522-0453
    - Federal Highway Administration, North Carolina Division Office, 310 New Bern Avenue, Suite 410, Raleigh, NC 27601, 919-747-7010
    - US Department of Transportation, Departmental Office of Civil Rights, External Civil Rights Programs Division, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20590; 202-366-4070
  4. **Format for Complaints**  
Complaints must be in writing and signed by the complainant(s) or a representative, and include the complainant's name, address, and telephone number. Complaints received by fax or e-mail will be acknowledged and processed. Allegations received by telephone will be reduced to writing and provided to the complainant for confirmation or revision before processing. Complaints will be accepted in other languages, including Braille.
  5. **Discrimination Complaint Form**  
Contact NCDOT Civil Rights to receive a full copy of the Discrimination Complaint Form and procedures.



## 6. Complaint Basis

Allegations must be based on issues involving race, color, national origin (LEP), sex, age, disability, or religion (in the context of employment, aviation or transit). “Basis” refers to the complainant’s membership in a protected group category.

**TABLE 103-1  
COMPLAINT BASIS**

Protected Categories	Definition	Examples	Applicable Nondiscrimination Authorities
Race and Ethnicity	An individual belonging to one of the accepted racial groups; or the perception, based usually on physical characteristics that a person is a member of a racial group	Black/African American, Hispanic/Latino, Asian, American Indian/Alaska Native, Native Hawaiian/Pacific Islander, White	Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964; 49 CFR Part 21; 23 CFR 200; 49 U.S.C. 5332(b); 49 U.S.C. 47123. ( <i>Executive Order 13166</i> )
Color	Color of skin, including shade of skin within a racial group	Black, White, brown, yellow, etc.	
National Origin ( <i>Limited English Proficiency</i> )	Place of birth. Citizenship is not a factor. ( <i>Discrimination based on language or a person’s accent is also covered</i> )	Mexican, Cuban, Japanese, Vietnamese, Chinese	
Sex	Gender. The sex of an individual. <i>Note:</i> Sex under this program does not include sexual orientation.	Women and Men	1973 Federal-Aid Highway Act; 49 U.S.C. 5332(b); 49 U.S.C. 47123.
Age	Persons of any age	21-year-old person	Age Discrimination Act of 1975 49 U.S.C. 5332(b); 49 U.S.C. 47123.
Disability	Physical or mental impairment, permanent or temporary, or perceived.	Blind, alcoholic, para-amputee, epileptic, diabetic, arthritic	Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973; Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990
Religion (in the context of employment) ( <i>Religion/ Creed in all aspects of any aviation or transit-related construction</i> )	An individual belonging to a religious group; or the perception, based on distinguishable characteristics that a person is a member of a religious group. In practice, actions taken as a result of the moral and ethical beliefs as to what is right and wrong, which are sincerely held with the strength of traditional religious views. <i>Note:</i> Does not have to be associated with a recognized religious group or church; if an individual sincerely holds to the belief, it is a protected religious practice.	Muslim, Christian, Sikh, Hindu, etc.	Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964; 23 CFR 230; FHWA-1273 Required Contract Provisions. ( <i>49 U.S.C. 5332(b); 49 U.S.C. 47123</i> )

## (3) Pertinent Nondiscrimination Authorities

During the performance of this contract, the contractor, for itself, its assignees, and successors in interest agrees to comply with the following non-discrimination statutes and authorities, including, but not limited to:

- (a) Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. § 2000d et seq., 78 stat. 252), (prohibits discrimination on the basis of race, color, national origin); and 49 CFR Part 21.
  - (b) The Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act of 1970, (42 U.S.C. § 4601), (prohibits unfair treatment of persons displaced or whose property has been acquired because of Federal or Federal-aid programs and projects);
  - (c) Federal-Aid Highway Act of 1973, (23 U.S.C. § 324 et seq.), (prohibits discrimination on the basis of sex);
  - (d) Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, (29 U.S.C. § 794 et seq.), as amended, (prohibits discrimination on the basis of disability) and 49 CFR Part 27;
  - (e) The Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended, (42 U.S.C. § 6101 et seq.), (prohibits discrimination on the basis of age);
  - (f) Airport and Airway Improvement Act of 1982, (49 USC § 471, Section 47123), as amended, (prohibits discrimination based on race, creed, color, national origin, or sex);
  - (g) The Civil Rights Restoration Act of 1987, (PL 100-209), (Broadened the scope, coverage and applicability of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, The Age Discrimination Act of 1975 and Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, by expanding the definition of the terms "programs or activities" to include all of the programs or activities of the Federal-aid recipients, sub-recipients and contractors, whether such programs or activities are Federally funded or not);
  - (h) Titles II and III of the Americans with Disabilities Act, which prohibit discrimination on the basis of disability in the operation of public entities, public and private transportation systems, places of public accommodation, and certain testing entities (42 U.S.C. §§ 12131-12189) as implemented by Department of Transportation regulations at 49 C.F.R. parts 37 and 38;
  - (i) The Federal Aviation Administration's Nondiscrimination statute (49 U.S.C. § 47123) (prohibits discrimination on the basis of race, color, national origin, and sex);
  - (j) Executive Order 12898, Federal Actions to Address Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low-Income Populations, which ensures Nondiscrimination against minority populations by discouraging programs, policies, and activities with disproportionately high and adverse human health or environmental effects on minority and low-income populations;
  - (k) Executive Order 13166, Improving Access to Services for Persons with Limited English Proficiency, and resulting agency guidance, national origin discrimination includes discrimination because of Limited English proficiency (LEP). To ensure compliance with Title VI, you must take reasonable steps to ensure that LEP persons have meaningful access to your programs (70 Fed. Reg. at 74087 to 74100);
  - (l) Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972, as amended, which prohibits you from discriminating because of sex in education programs or activities (20 U.S.C. 1681 et seq).
  - (m) Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 U.S.C. § 2000e et seq., Pub. L. 88-352), (prohibits employment discrimination on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin).
- (4) Additional Title VI Assurances**

*\*\*The following Title VI Assurances (Appendices B, C and D) shall apply, as applicable*

- (a) Clauses for Deeds Transferring United States Property (1050.2A, Appendix B)  
The following clauses will be included in deeds effecting or recording the transfer of real property, structures, or improvements thereon, or granting interest therein from the United States pursuant to the provisions of Assurance 4.

NOW, THEREFORE, the U.S. Department of Transportation as authorized by law and upon the condition that the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) will accept title to the lands and maintain the project constructed thereon in accordance with the North Carolina General Assembly, the Regulations for the Administration of the Federal-Aid Highway Program, and the policies and procedures prescribed by the Federal Highway Administration of the U.S. Department of Transportation in accordance and in compliance with all requirements imposed by Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, U.S. Department of Transportation, Subtitle A, Office of the Secretary, Part 21, Nondiscrimination in Federally-assisted programs of the U.S. Department of Transportation pertaining to and effectuating the provisions of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (78 Stat. 252; 42 U.S.C. § 2000d to 2000d-4), does hereby remise, release, quitclaim and convey unto the NCDOT all the right, title and interest of the U.S. Department of Transportation in and to said lands described in Exhibit A attached hereto and made a part hereof.

(HABENDUM CLAUSE)

TO HAVE AND TO HOLD said lands and interests therein unto the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) and its successors forever, subject, however, to the covenants, conditions, restrictions and reservations herein contained as follows, which will remain in effect for the period during which the real property or structures are used for a purpose for which Federal financial assistance is extended or for another purpose involving the provision of similar services or benefits and will be binding on the NCDOT, its successors and assigns.

The NCDOT, in consideration of the conveyance of said lands and interests in lands, does hereby covenant and agree as a covenant running with the land for itself, its successors and assigns, that (1) no person will on the grounds of race, color, or national origin, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be otherwise subjected to discrimination with regard to any facility located wholly or in part on, over, or under such lands hereby conveyed [,] [and]\* (2) that the NCDOT will use the lands and interests in lands and interests in lands so conveyed, in compliance with all requirements imposed by or pursuant to Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, U.S. Department of Transportation, Subtitle A, Office of the Secretary, Part 21, Non-discrimination in Federally-assisted programs of the U.S. Department of Transportation, Effectuation of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, and as said Regulations and Acts may be amended [, and (3) that in the event of breach of any of the above-mentioned nondiscrimination conditions, the Department will have a right to enter or re-enter said lands and facilities on said land, and that above described land and facilities will thereon revert to and vest in and become the absolute property of the U.S. Department of Transportation and its assigns as such interest existed prior to this instruction].\*

(\*Reverter clause and related language to be used only when it is determined that such a clause is necessary in order to make clear the purpose of Title VI.)

(b) Clauses for Transfer of Real Property Acquired or Improved Under the Activity, Facility, or Program (1050.2A, Appendix C)

The following clauses will be included in deeds, licenses, leases, permits, or similar instruments entered into by the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) pursuant to the provisions of Assurance 7(a):

1. The (grantee, lessee, permittee, etc. as appropriate) for himself/herself, his/her heirs, personal representatives, successors in interest, and assigns, as a part of the consideration hereof, does hereby covenant and agree [in the case of deeds and leases add "as a covenant running with the land"] that:

- (i.) In the event facilities are constructed, maintained, or otherwise operated on the property described in this (deed, license, lease, permit, etc.) for a purpose for which a U.S. Department of Transportation activity, facility, or program is extended or for another purpose involving the provision of similar services or benefits, the (grantee, licensee, lessee, permittee, etc.) will maintain and operate such facilities and services in compliance with all requirements imposed by the Acts and Regulations (as may be amended) such that no person on the grounds of race, color, or national origin, will be excluded from participation in, denied the benefits of, or be otherwise subjected to discrimination in the use of said facilities.
  2. With respect to licenses, leases, permits, etc., in the event of breach of any of the above Nondiscrimination covenants, the NCDOT will have the right to terminate the (lease, license, permit, etc.) and to enter, re-enter, and repossess said lands and facilities thereon, and hold the same as if the (lease, license, permit, etc.) had never been made or issued. \*
  3. With respect to a deed, in the event of breach of any of the above Nondiscrimination covenants, the NCDOT will have the right to enter or re-enter the lands and facilities thereon, and the above described lands and facilities will there upon revert to and vest in and become the absolute property of the NCDOT and its assigns. \*
- (\*Reverter clause and related language to be used only when it is determined that such a clause is necessary to make clear the purpose of Title VI.)
- (c) Clauses for Construction/Use/Access to Real Property Acquired Under the Activity, Facility or Program (1050.2A, Appendix D)
- The following clauses will be included in deeds, licenses, permits, or similar instruments/agreements entered into by the North Carolina Department of Transportation (NCDOT) pursuant to the provisions of Assurance 7(b):
1. The (grantee, licensee, permittee, etc., as appropriate) for himself/herself, his/her heirs, personal representatives, successors in interest, and assigns, as a part of the consideration hereof, does hereby covenant and agree (in the case of deeds and leases add, "as a covenant running with the land") that (1) no person on the ground of race, color, or national origin, will be excluded from participation in, denied the benefits of, or be otherwise subjected to discrimination in the use of said facilities, (2) that in the construction of any improvements on, over, or under such land, and the furnishing of services thereon, no person on the ground of race, color, or national origin, will be excluded from participation in, denied the benefits of, or otherwise be subjected to discrimination, (3) that the (grantee, licensee, lessee, permittee, etc.) will use the premises in compliance with all other requirements imposed by or pursuant to the Acts and Regulations, as amended, set forth in this Assurance.
  2. With respect to (licenses, leases, permits, etc.), in the event of breach of any of the above Non- discrimination covenants, the NCDOT will have the right to terminate the (license, permit, etc., as appropriate) and to enter or re-enter and repossess said land and the facilities thereon, and hold the same as if said (license, permit, etc., as appropriate) had never been made or issued. \*
  3. With respect to deeds, in the event of breach of any of the above Nondiscrimination covenants, the NCDOT will there upon revert to and vest in and become the absolute property of the NCDOT and its assigns. \*
- (\*Reverter clause and related language to be used only when it is determined that such a clause is necessary to make clear the purpose of Title VI.)

**STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION****MINORITY AND FEMALE EMPLOYMENT REQUIREMENTS**

Z-7

**NOTICE OF REQUIREMENTS FOR AFFIRMATIVE ACTION TO ENSURE EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY (*EXECUTIVE NUMBER 11246*)**

1. The goals and timetables for minority and female participation, expressed in percentage terms for the Contractor's aggregate workforce in each trade on all construction work in the covered area, see as shown on the attached sheet entitled "Employment Goals for Minority and Female participation".

These goals are applicable to all the Contractor's construction work (whether or not it is Federal or federally assisted) performed in the covered area. If the Contractor performs construction work in a geographical area located outside of the covered area, it shall apply the goals established for such geographical area where the work is actually performed. With regard to this second area, the Contractor also is subject to the goals for both its federally involved and nonfederally involved construction.

The Contractor's compliance with the Executive Order and the regulations in *41 CFR Part 60-4* shall be based on its implementation of the Equal Opportunity Clause, specific affirmative action obligations required by the specifications set forth in *41 CFR 60-4.3(a)*, and its effort to meet the goals. The hours of minority and female employment and training must be substantially uniform throughout the length of the contract, and in each trade and the Contractor shall make a good faith effort to employ minorities and women evenly on each of its projects. The transfer of minority or female employees or trainees from Contractor to Contractor or from project to project for the sole purpose of meeting the Contractor's goals shall be a violation of the contract, the executive Order and the regulations in *41 CFR Part 60-4*. Compliance with the goals will be measured against the total work hours performed.

2. As used in this Notice and in the contract resulting from this solicitation, the "covered area" is the county or counties shown on the cover sheet of the proposal form and contract.

**EMPLOYMENT GOALS FOR MINORITY  
AND FEMALE PARTICIPATION**

Economic Areas

**Area 023 29.7%**

Bertie County  
Camden County  
Chowan County  
Gates County  
Hertford County  
Pasquotank County  
Perquimans County

**Area 024 31.7%**

Beaufort County  
Carteret County  
Craven County  
Dare County  
Edgecombe County  
Green County  
Halifax County  
Hyde County  
Jones County  
Lenoir County  
Martin County  
Nash County  
Northampton County  
Pamlico County  
Pitt County  
Tyrrell County  
Washington County  
Wayne County  
Wilson County

**Area 025 23.5%**

Columbus County  
Duplin County  
Onslow County  
Pender County

**Area 026 33.5%**

Bladen County  
Hoke County  
Richmond County  
Robeson County  
Sampson County  
Scotland County

**Area 027 24.7%**

Chatham County  
Franklin County  
Granville County  
Harnett County  
Johnston County  
Lee County  
Person County  
Vance County  
Warren County

**Area 028 15.5%**

Alleghany County  
Ashe County  
Caswell County  
Davie County  
Montgomery County  
Moore County  
Rockingham County  
Surry County  
Watauga County  
Wilkes County

**Area 029 15.7%**

Alexander County  
Anson County  
Burke County  
Cabarrus County  
Caldwell County  
Catawba County  
Cleveland County  
Iredell County  
Lincoln County  
Polk County  
Rowan County  
Rutherford County  
Stanly County

**Area 0480 8.5%**

Buncombe County  
Madison County

**Area 030 6.3%**

Avery County  
Cherokee County  
Clay County  
Graham County  
Haywood County  
Henderson County  
Jackson County  
McDowell County  
Macon County  
Mitchell County  
Swain County  
Transylvania County  
Yancey County

---

SMSA AreasArea 5720 26.6%

Currituck County

Area 9200 20.7%

Brunswick County

New Hanover County

Area 2560 24.2%

Cumberland County

Area 6640 22.8%

Durham County

Orange County

Wake County

Area 1300 16.2%

Alamance County

Area 3120 16.4%

Davidson County

Forsyth County

Guilford County

Randolph County

Stokes County

Yadkin County

Area 1520 18.3%

Gaston County

Mecklenburg County

Union County

---

Goals for FemaleParticipation in Each Trade

(Statewide) 6.9%

**STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION****REQUIRED CONTRACT PROVISIONS FEDERAL - AID CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS**

FHWA - 1273 Electronic Version - May 1, 2012

Z-8

- I. General
- II. Nondiscrimination
- III. Nonsegregated Facilities
- IV. Davis-Bacon and Related Act Provisions
- V. Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act Provisions
- VI. Subletting or Assigning the Contract
- VII. Safety: Accident Prevention
- VIII. False Statements Concerning Highway Projects
- IX. Implementation of Clean Air Act and Federal Water Pollution Control Act
- X. Compliance with Governmentwide Suspension and Debarment Requirements
- XI. Certification Regarding Use of Contract Funds for Lobbying

**ATTACHMENTS**

- A. Employment and Materials Preference for Appalachian Development Highway System or Appalachian Local Access Road Contracts (included in Appalachian contracts only)

**I. GENERAL**

1. Form FHWA-1273 must be physically incorporated in each construction contract funded under Title 23 (excluding emergency contracts solely intended for debris removal). The contractor (or subcontractor) must insert this form in each subcontract and further require its inclusion in all lower tier subcontracts (excluding purchase orders, rental agreements and other agreements for supplies or services).  
The applicable requirements of Form FHWA-1273 are incorporated by reference for work done under any purchase order, rental agreement or agreement for other services. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor, lower-tier subcontractor or service provider.  
Form FHWA-1273 must be included in all Federal-aid design-build contracts, in all subcontracts and in lower tier subcontracts (excluding subcontracts for design services, purchase orders, rental agreements and other agreements for supplies or services). The design-builder shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor, lower-tier subcontractor or service provider.  
Contracting agencies may reference Form FHWA-1273 in bid proposal or request for proposal documents, however, the Form FHWA-1273 must be physically incorporated (not referenced) in all contracts, subcontracts and lower-tier subcontracts (excluding purchase orders, rental agreements and other agreements for supplies or services related to a construction contract).
2. Subject to the applicability criteria noted in the following sections, these contract provisions shall apply to all work performed on the contract by the contractor's own organization and with the assistance of workers under the contractor's immediate superintendence and to all work performed on the contract by piecework, station work, or by subcontract.
3. A breach of any of the stipulations contained in these Required Contract Provisions may be sufficient grounds for withholding of progress payments, withholding of final payment, termination of the contract, suspension / debarment or any other action determined to be appropriate by the contracting agency and FHWA.
4. Selection of Labor: During the performance of this contract, the contractor shall not use convict labor for any purpose within the limits of a construction project on a Federal-aid highway unless it is labor performed by convicts who are on parole, supervised release, or probation. The term Federal-aid highway does not include roadways functionally classified as local roads or rural minor collectors.

**II. NONDISCRIMINATION**

The provisions of this section related to 23 CFR Part 230 are applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related construction subcontracts of \$10,000 or more. The provisions of 23 CFR Part 230 are not applicable to material supply, engineering, or architectural service contracts.

In addition, the contractor and all subcontractors must comply with the following policies: Executive Order 11246, 41 CFR 60, 29 CFR 1625-1627, Title 23 USC Section 140, the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (29 USC 794), Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, as amended, and related regulations including 49 CFR Parts 21, 26 and 27; and 23 CFR Parts 200, 230, and 633.

The contractor and all subcontractors must comply with: the requirements of the Equal Opportunity Clause in 41 CFR 60-1.4(b) and, for all construction contracts exceeding \$10,000, the Standard Federal Equal Employment Opportunity Construction Contract Specifications in 41 CFR 60-4.3.

Note: The U.S. Department of Labor has exclusive authority to determine compliance with Executive Order 11246 and the policies of the Secretary of Labor including 41 CFR 60, and 29 CFR 1625-1627. The contracting agency and the FHWA have the authority and the responsibility to ensure compliance with Title 23 USC Section 140, the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended (29 USC 794), and Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, as amended, and related regulations including 49 CFR Parts 21, 26 and 27; and 23 CFR Parts 200, 230, and 633.

The following provision is adopted from 23 CFR 230, Appendix A, with appropriate revisions to conform to the U.S. Department of Labor (USDOL) and FHWA requirements.

1. **Equal Employment Opportunity:** Equal employment opportunity (EEO) requirements not to discriminate and to take affirmative action to assure equal opportunity as set forth under laws, executive orders, rules, regulations (28 CFR 35, 29 CFR 1630, 29 CFR 1625-1627, 41 CFR 60 and 49 CFR 27) and orders of the Secretary of Labor as modified by the provisions prescribed herein, and imposed pursuant to 23 U.S.C. 140 shall constitute the EEO and specific affirmative action standards for the contractor's project activities under this contract. The provisions of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12101 et seq.) set forth under 28 CFR 35 and 29 CFR 1630 are incorporated by reference in this contract. In the execution of this contract, the contractor agrees to comply with the following minimum specific requirement activities of EEO:



- a. The contractor will work with the contracting agency and the Federal Government to ensure that it has made every good faith effort to provide equal opportunity with respect to all of its terms and conditions of employment and in their review of activities under the contract.
  - b. The contractor will accept as its operating policy the following statement:  
"It is the policy of this Company to assure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment, without regard to their race, religion, sex, color, national origin, age or disability. Such action shall include: employment, upgrading, demotion, or transfer; recruitment or recruitment advertising; layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship, pre-apprenticeship, and/or on-the-job training."
2. **EEO Officer:** The contractor will designate and make known to the contracting officers an EEO Officer who will have the responsibility for and must be capable of effectively administering and promoting an active EEO program and who must be assigned adequate authority and responsibility to do so.
3. **Dissemination of Policy:** All members of the contractor's staff who are authorized to hire, supervise, promote, and discharge employees, or who recommend such action, or who are substantially involved in such action, will be made fully cognizant of, and will implement, the contractor's EEO policy and contractual responsibilities to provide EEO in each grade and classification of employment. To ensure that the above agreement will be met, the following actions will be taken as a minimum:
  - a. Periodic meetings of supervisory and personnel office employees will be conducted before the start of work and then not less often than once every six months, at which time the contractor's EEO policy and its implementation will be reviewed and explained. The meetings will be conducted by the EEO Officer.
  - b. All new supervisory or personnel office employees will be given a thorough indoctrination by the EEO Officer, covering all major aspects of the contractor's EEO obligations within thirty days following their reporting for duty with the contractor.
  - c. All personnel who are engaged in direct recruitment for the project will be instructed by the EEO Officer in the contractor's procedures for locating and hiring minorities and women.
  - d. Notices and posters setting forth the contractor's EEO policy will be placed in areas readily accessible to employees, applicants for employment and potential employees.
  - e. The contractor's EEO policy and the procedures to implement such policy will be brought to the attention of employees by means of meetings, employee handbooks, or other appropriate means.
4. **Recruitment:** When advertising for employees, the contractor will include in all advertisements for employees the notation: "An Equal Opportunity Employer." All such advertisements will be placed in publications having a large circulation among minorities and women in the area from which the project work force would normally be derived.
  - a. The contractor will, unless precluded by a valid bargaining agreement, conduct systematic and direct recruitment through public and private employee referral sources likely to yield qualified minorities and women. To meet this requirement, the contractor will identify sources of potential minority group employees, and establish with such identified sources procedures whereby minority and women applicants may be referred to the contractor for employment consideration.
  - b. In the event the contractor has a valid bargaining agreement providing for exclusive hiring hall referrals, the contractor is expected to observe the provisions of that agreement to the extent that the system meets the contractor's compliance with EEO contract provisions. Where implementation of such an agreement has the effect of discriminating against minorities or women, or obligates the contractor to do the same, such implementation violates Federal nondiscrimination provisions.
  - c. The contractor will encourage its present employees to refer minorities and women as applicants for employment. Information and procedures with regard to referring such applicants will be discussed with employees.
5. **Personnel Actions:** Wages, working conditions, and employee benefits shall be established and administered, and personnel actions of every type, including hiring, upgrading, promotion, transfer, demotion, layoff, and termination, shall be taken without regard to race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age or disability. The following procedures shall be followed:
  - a. The contractor will conduct periodic inspections of project sites to insure that working conditions and employee facilities do not indicate discriminatory treatment of project site personnel.
  - b. The contractor will periodically evaluate the spread of wages paid within each classification to determine any evidence of discriminatory wage practices.
  - c. The contractor will periodically review selected personnel actions in depth to determine whether there is evidence of discrimination. Where evidence is found, the contractor will promptly take corrective action. If the review indicates that the discrimination may extend beyond the actions reviewed, such corrective action shall include all affected persons.
  - d. The contractor will promptly investigate all complaints of alleged discrimination made to the contractor in connection with its obligations under this contract, will attempt to resolve such complaints, and will take appropriate corrective action within a reasonable time. If the investigation indicates that the discrimination may affect persons other than the complainant, such corrective action shall include such other persons. Upon completion of each investigation, the contractor will inform every complainant of all of their avenues of appeal.
6. **Training and Promotion:**
  - a. The contractor will assist in locating, qualifying, and increasing the skills of minorities and women who are applicants for employment or current employees. Such efforts should be aimed at developing full journey level status employees in the type of trade or job classification involved.
  - b. Consistent with the contractor's work force requirements and as permissible under Federal and State regulations, the contractor shall make full use of training programs, i.e., apprenticeship, and on-the-job training programs for the geographical area of contract performance. In the event a special provision for training is provided under this contract, this subparagraph will be superseded as indicated in the special provision. The contracting agency may reserve training positions for persons who receive welfare assistance in accordance with 23 U.S.C. 140(a).
  - c. The contractor will advise employees and applicants for employment of available training programs and entrance requirements for each.
  - d. The contractor will periodically review the training and promotion potential of employees who are minorities and women and will encourage eligible employees to apply for such training and promotion.

7. **Unions:** If the contractor relies in whole or in part upon unions as a source of employees, the contractor will use good faith efforts to obtain the cooperation of such unions to increase opportunities for minorities and women. Actions by the contractor, either directly or through a contractor's association acting as agent, will include the procedures set forth below:
  - a. The contractor will use good faith efforts to develop, in cooperation with the unions, joint training programs aimed toward qualifying more minorities and women for membership in the unions and increasing the skills of minorities and women so that they may qualify for higher paying employment.
  - b. The contractor will use good faith efforts to incorporate an EEO clause into each union agreement to the end that such union will be contractually bound to refer applicants without regard to their race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age or disability.
  - c. The contractor is to obtain information as to the referral practices and policies of the labor union except that to the extent such information is within the exclusive possession of the labor union and such labor union refuses to furnish such information to the contractor, the contractor shall so certify to the contracting agency and shall set forth what efforts have been made to obtain such information.
  - d. In the event the union is unable to provide the contractor with a reasonable flow of referrals within the time limit set forth in the collective bargaining agreement, the contractor will, through independent recruitment efforts, fill the employment vacancies without regard to race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age or disability; making full efforts to obtain qualified and/or qualifiable minorities and women. The failure of a union to provide sufficient referrals (even though it is obligated to provide exclusive referrals under the terms of a collective bargaining agreement) does not relieve the contractor from the requirements of this paragraph. In the event the union referral practice prevents the contractor from meeting the obligations pursuant to Executive Order 11246, as amended, and these special provisions, such contractor shall immediately notify the contracting agency.
8. **Reasonable Accommodation for Applicants / Employees with Disabilities:** The contractor must be familiar with the requirements for and comply with the Americans with Disabilities Act and all rules and regulations established there under. Employers must provide reasonable accommodation in all employment activities unless to do so would cause an undue hardship.
9. **Selection of Subcontractors, Procurement of Materials and Leasing of Equipment:** The contractor shall not discriminate on the grounds of race, color, religion, sex, national origin, age or disability in the selection and retention of subcontractors, including procurement of materials and leases of equipment. The contractor shall take all necessary and reasonable steps to ensure nondiscrimination in the administration of this contract.
  - a. The contractor shall notify all potential subcontractors and suppliers and lessors of their EEO obligations under this contract.
  - b. The contractor will use good faith efforts to ensure subcontractor compliance with their EEO obligations.
10. **Assurance Required by 49 CFR 26.13(b):**
  - a. The requirements of 49 CFR Part 26 and the State DOT's U.S. DOT-approved DBE program are incorporated by reference.
  - b. The contractor or subcontractor shall not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, or sex in the performance of this contract. The contractor shall carry out applicable requirements of 49 CFR Part 26 in the award and administration of DOT-assisted contracts. Failure by the contractor to carry out these requirements is a material breach of this contract, which may result in the termination of this contract or such other remedy as the contracting agency deems appropriate.
11. **Records and Reports:** The contractor shall keep such records as necessary to document compliance with the EEO requirements. Such records shall be retained for a period of three years following the date of the final payment to the contractor for all contract work and shall be available at reasonable times and places for inspection by authorized representatives of the contracting agency and the FHWA.
  - a. The records kept by the contractor shall document the following:
    - (1) The number and work hours of minority and non-minority group members and women employed in each work classification on the project;
    - (2) The progress and efforts being made in cooperation with unions, when applicable, to increase employment opportunities for minorities and women; and
    - (3) The progress and efforts being made in locating, hiring, training, qualifying, and upgrading minorities and women;
  - b. The contractors and subcontractors will submit an annual report to the contracting agency each July for the duration of the project, indicating the number of minority, women, and non-minority group employees currently engaged in each work classification required by the contract work. This information is to be reported on Form FHWA-1391. The staffing data should represent the project work force on board in all or any part of the last payroll period preceding the end of July. If on-the-job training is being required by special provision, the contractor will be required to collect and report training data. The employment data should reflect the work force on board during all or any part of the last payroll period preceding the end of July.

### III. NONSEGREGATED FACILITIES

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related construction subcontracts of \$10,000 or more.

The contractor must ensure that facilities provided for employees are provided in such a manner that segregation on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin cannot result. The contractor may neither require such segregated use by written or oral policies nor tolerate such use by employee custom. The contractor's obligation extends further to ensure that its employees are not assigned to perform their services at any location, under the contractor's control, where the facilities are segregated. The term "facilities" includes waiting rooms, work areas, restaurants and other eating areas, time clocks, restrooms, washrooms, locker rooms, and other storage or dressing areas, parking lots, drinking fountains, recreation or entertainment areas, transportation, and housing provided for employees. The contractor shall provide separate or single-user restrooms and necessary dressing or sleeping areas to assure privacy between sexes.

### IV. DAVIS-BACON AND RELATED ACT PROVISIONS

This section is applicable to all Federal-aid construction projects exceeding \$2,000 and to all related subcontracts and lower-tier subcontracts (regardless of subcontract size). The requirements apply to all projects located within the right-of-way of a roadway that is functionally classified as Federal-aid highway. This excludes roadways functionally classified as local roads or rural minor collectors, which are exempt. Contracting agencies may elect to apply these requirements to other projects.

The following provisions are from the U.S. Department of Labor regulations in 29 CFR 5.5 "Contract provisions and related matters" with minor revisions to conform to the FHWA-1273 format and FHWA program requirements.

#### 1. Minimum wages

- a. All laborers and mechanics employed or working upon the site of the work, will be paid unconditionally and not less often than once a week, and without subsequent deduction or rebate on any account (except such payroll deductions as are permitted by regulations issued by the Secretary of Labor under the Copeland Act (29 CFR part 3)), the full amount of wages and bona fide fringe benefits (or cash equivalents

thereof) due at time of payment computed at rates not less than those contained in the wage determination of the Secretary of Labor which is attached hereto and made a part hereof, regardless of any contractual relationship which may be alleged to exist between the contractor and such laborers and mechanics.

Contributions made or costs reasonably anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits under section 1(b)(2) of the Davis-Bacon Act on behalf of laborers or mechanics are considered wages paid to such laborers or mechanics, subject to the provisions of paragraph 1.d. of this section; also, regular contributions made or costs incurred for more than a weekly period (but not less often than quarterly) under plans, funds, or programs which cover the particular weekly period, are deemed to be constructively made or incurred during such weekly period. Such laborers and mechanics shall be paid the appropriate wage rate and fringe benefits on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed, without regard to skill, except as provided in 29 CFR 5.5(a)(4). Laborers or mechanics performing work in more than one classification may be compensated at the rate specified for each classification for the time actually worked therein: Provided, That the employer's payroll records accurately set forth the time spent in each classification in which work is performed. The wage determination (including any additional classification and wage rates conformed under paragraph 1.b. of this section) and the Davis-Bacon poster (WH-1321) shall be posted at all times by the contractor and its subcontractors at the site of the work in a prominent and accessible place where it can be easily seen by the workers.

- b. (1) The contracting officer shall require that any class of laborers or mechanics, including helpers, which is not listed in the wage determination and which is to be employed under the contract shall be classified in conformance with the wage determination. The contracting officer shall approve an additional classification and wage rate and fringe benefits therefore only when the following criteria have been met:
  - (i) The work to be performed by the classification requested is not performed by a classification in the wage determination; and
  - (ii) The classification is utilized in the area by the construction industry; and
  - (iii) The proposed wage rate, including any bona fide fringe benefits, bears a reasonable relationship to the wage rates contained in the wage determination.
- (2) If the contractor and the laborers and mechanics to be employed in the classification (if known), or their representatives, and the contracting officer agree on the classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits where appropriate), a report of the action taken shall be sent by the contracting officer to the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division, Employment Standards Administration, U.S. Department of Labor, Washington, DC 20210. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will approve, modify, or disapprove every additional classification action within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.
- (3) In the event the contractor, the laborers or mechanics to be employed in the classification or their representatives, and the contracting officer do not agree on the proposed classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits, where appropriate), the contracting officer shall refer the questions, including the views of all interested parties and the recommendation of the contracting officer, to the Wage and Hour Administrator for determination. The Wage and Hour Administrator, or an authorized representative, will issue a determination within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.
- (4) The wage rate (including fringe benefits where appropriate) determined pursuant to paragraphs 1.b.(2) or 1.b.(3) of this section, shall be paid to all workers performing work in the classification under this contract from the first day on which work is performed in the classification.
- c. Whenever the minimum wage rate prescribed in the contract for a class of laborers or mechanics includes a fringe benefit which is not expressed as an hourly rate, the contractor shall either pay the benefit as stated in the wage determination or shall pay another bona fide fringe benefit or an hourly cash equivalent thereof.
- d. If the contractor does not make payments to a trustee or other third person, the contractor may consider as part of the wages of any laborer or mechanic the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing bona fide fringe benefits under a plan or program. Provided, That the Secretary of Labor has found, upon the written request of the contractor, that the applicable standards of the Davis-Bacon Act have been met. The Secretary of Labor may require the contractor to set aside in a separate account assets for the meeting of obligations under the plan or program.
2. **Withholding.** The contracting agency shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor, withhold or cause to be withheld from the contractor under this contract, or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to Davis-Bacon prevailing wage requirements, which is held by the same prime contractor, so much of the accrued payments or advances as may be considered necessary to pay laborers and mechanics, including apprentices, trainees, and helpers, employed by the contractor or any subcontractor the full amount of wages required by the contract. In the event of failure to pay any laborer or mechanic, including any apprentice, trainee, or helper, employed or working on the site of the work, all or part of the wages required by the contract, the contracting agency may, after written notice to the contractor, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds until such violations have ceased.
3. **Payrolls and basic records**
  - a. Payrolls and basic records relating thereto shall be maintained by the contractor during the course of the work and preserved for a period of three years thereafter for all laborers and mechanics working at the site of the work. Such records shall contain the name, address, and social security number of each such worker, his or her correct classification, hourly rates of wages paid (including rates of contributions or costs anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits or cash equivalents thereof of the types described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act), daily and weekly number of hours worked, deductions made and actual wages paid. Whenever the Secretary of Labor has found under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(iv) that the wages of any laborer or mechanic include the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing benefits under a plan or program described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act, the contractor shall maintain records which show that the commitment to provide such benefits is enforceable, that the plan or program is financially responsible, and that the plan or program has been communicated in writing to the laborers or mechanics affected, and records which show the costs anticipated or the actual cost incurred in providing such benefits. Contractors employing apprentices or trainees under approved programs shall maintain written evidence of the registration of apprenticeship programs and certification of trainee programs, the registration of the apprentices and trainees, and the ratios and wage rates prescribed in the applicable programs.
  - b. (1) The contractor shall submit weekly for each week in which any contract work is performed a copy of all payrolls to the contracting agency. The payrolls submitted shall set out accurately and completely all of the information required to be maintained under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(3)(i), except that full social security numbers and home addresses shall not be included on weekly transmittals. Instead the payrolls shall only need to include an individually identifying number for each employee (e.g., the last four digits of the employee's social security number). The required weekly payroll information may be submitted in any form desired. Optional Form WH-347 is available for

this purpose from the Wage and Hour Division Web site at <http://www.dol.gov/esa/whd/forms/wh347instr.htm> or its successor site. The prime contractor is responsible for the submission of copies of payrolls by all subcontractors. Contractors and subcontractors shall maintain the full social security number and current address of each covered worker, and shall provide them upon request to the contracting agency for transmission to the State DOT, the FHWA or the Wage and Hour Division of the Department of Labor for purposes of an investigation or audit of compliance with prevailing wage requirements. It is not a violation of this section for a prime contractor to require a subcontractor to provide addresses and social security numbers to the prime contractor for its own records, without weekly submission to the contracting agency.

- (2) Each payroll submitted shall be accompanied by a "Statement of Compliance," signed by the contractor or subcontractor or his or her agent who pays or supervises the payment of the persons employed under the contract and shall certify the following:
    - (i) That the payroll for the payroll period contains the information required to be provided under §5.5 (a)(3)(ii) of Regulations, 29 CFR part 5, the appropriate information is being maintained under §5.5 (a)(3)(i) of Regulations, 29 CFR part 5, and that such information is correct and complete;
    - (ii) That each laborer or mechanic (including each helper, apprentice, and trainee) employed on the contract during the payroll period has been paid the full weekly wages earned, without rebate, either directly or indirectly, and that no deductions have been made either directly or indirectly from the full wages earned, other than permissible deductions as set forth in Regulations, 29 CFR part 3;
    - (iii) That each laborer or mechanic has been paid not less than the applicable wage rates and fringe benefits or cash equivalents for the classification of work performed, as specified in the applicable wage determination incorporated into the contract.
  - (3) The weekly submission of a properly executed certification set forth on the reverse side of Optional Form WH-347 shall satisfy the requirement for submission of the "Statement of Compliance" required by paragraph 3.b.(2) of this section.
  - (4) The falsification of any of the above certifications may subject the contractor or subcontractor to civil or criminal prosecution under section 1001 of title 18 and section 231 of title 31 of the United States Code.
- c. The contractor or subcontractor shall make the records required under paragraph 3.a. of this section available for inspection, copying or transcription by authorized representatives of the contracting agency, the State DOT, the FHWA, or the Department of Labor, and shall permit such representatives to interview employees during working hours on the job. If the contractor or subcontractor fails to submit the required records or to make them available, the FHWA may, after written notice to the contractor, the contracting agency or the State DOT, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds. Furthermore, failure to submit the required records upon request or to make such records available may be grounds for debarment action pursuant to 29 CFR 5.12.
4. **Apprentices and trainees**
- a. Apprentices (programs of the USDOL). Apprentices will be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work they performed when they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a bona fide apprenticeship program registered with the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration, Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services, or with a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Office, or if a person is employed in his or her first 90 days of probationary employment as an apprentice in such an apprenticeship program, who is not individually registered in the program, but who has been certified by the Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services or a State Apprenticeship Agency (where appropriate) to be eligible for probationary employment as an apprentice.
 

The allowable ratio of apprentices to journeymen on the job site in any craft classification shall not be greater than the ratio permitted to the contractor as to the entire work force under the registered program. Any worker listed on a payroll at an apprentice wage rate, who is not registered or otherwise employed as stated above, shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any apprentice performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. Where a contractor is performing construction on a project in a locality other than that in which its program is registered, the ratios and wage rates (expressed in percentages of the journeyman's hourly rate) specified in the contractor's or subcontractor's registered program shall be observed.

Every apprentice must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the registered program for the apprentice's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeymen hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Apprentices shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the apprenticeship program. If the apprenticeship program does not specify fringe benefits, apprentices must be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination for the applicable classification. If the Administrator determines that a different practice prevails for the applicable apprentice classification, fringes shall be paid in accordance with that determination.

In the event the Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services, or a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Office, withdraws approval of an apprenticeship program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize apprentices at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.
  - b. Trainees (programs of the USDOL). Except as provided in 29 CFR 5.16, trainees will not be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work performed unless they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a program which has received prior approval, evidenced by formal certification by the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration.
 

The ratio of trainees to journeymen on the job site shall not be greater than permitted under the plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration.

Every trainee must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the approved program for the trainee's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeyman hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Trainees shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the trainee program. If the trainee program does not mention fringe benefits, trainees shall be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination unless the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division determines that there is an apprenticeship program associated with the corresponding journeyman wage rate on the wage determination which provides for less than full fringe benefits for apprentices. Any employee listed on the payroll at a trainee rate who is not registered and participating in a training plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any trainee performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed.

In the event the Employment and Training Administration withdraws approval of a training program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize trainees at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.
  - c. Equal employment opportunity. The utilization of apprentices, trainees and journeymen under this part shall be in conformity with the equal employment opportunity requirements of Executive Order 11246, as amended, and 29 CFR part 30.
  - d. Apprentices and Trainees (programs of the U.S. DOT). Apprentices and trainees working under apprenticeship and skill training programs which have been certified by the Secretary of Transportation as promoting EEO in connection with Federal-aid highway construction programs

are not subject to the requirements of paragraph 4 of this Section IV. The straight time hourly wage rates for apprentices and trainees under such programs will be established by the particular programs. The ratio of apprentices and trainees to journeymen shall not be greater than permitted by the terms of the particular program.

5. **Compliance with Copeland Act requirements.** The contractor shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR part 3, which are incorporated by reference in this contract.
6. **Subcontracts.** The contractor or subcontractor shall insert Form FHWA-1273 in any subcontracts and also require the subcontractors to include Form FHWA-1273 in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for the compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with all the contract clauses in 29 CFR 5.5.
7. **Contract termination:** debarment. A breach of the contract clauses in 29 CFR 5.5 may be grounds for termination of the contract, and for debarment as a contractor and a subcontractor as provided in 29 CFR 5.12.
8. **Compliance with Davis-Bacon and Related Act requirements.** All rulings and interpretations of the Davis-Bacon and Related Acts contained in 29 CFR parts 1, 3, and 5 are herein incorporated by reference in this contract.
9. **Disputes concerning labor standards.** Disputes arising out of the labor standards provisions of this contract shall not be subject to the general disputes clause of this contract. Such disputes shall be resolved in accordance with the procedures of the Department of Labor set forth in 29 CFR parts 5, 6, and 7. Disputes within the meaning of this clause include disputes between the contractor (or any of its subcontractors) and the contracting agency, the U.S. Department of Labor, or the employees or their representatives.
10. **Certification of eligibility.**
  - a. By entering into this contract, the contractor certifies that neither it (nor he or she) nor any person or firm who has an interest in the contractor's firm is a person or firm ineligible to be awarded Government contracts by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).
  - b. No part of this contract shall be subcontracted to any person or firm ineligible for award of a Government contract by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1).
  - c. The penalty for making false statements is prescribed in the U.S. Criminal Code, 18 U.S.C. 1001.

#### V. CONTRACT WORK HOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT

The following clauses apply to any Federal-aid construction contract in an amount in excess of \$100,000 and subject to the overtime provisions of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act. These clauses shall be inserted in addition to the clauses required by 29 CFR 5.5(a) or 29 CFR 4.6. As used in this paragraph, the terms laborers and mechanics include watchmen and guards.

1. **Overtime requirements.** No contractor or subcontractor contracting for any part of the contract work which may require or involve the employment of laborers or mechanics shall require or permit any such laborer or mechanic in any workweek in which he or she is employed on such work to work in excess of forty hours in such workweek unless such laborer or mechanic receives compensation at a rate not less than one and one-half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of forty hours in such workweek.
2. **Violation; liability for unpaid wages; liquidated damages.** In the event of any violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1.) of this section, the contractor and any subcontractor responsible therefor shall be liable for the unpaid wages. In addition, such contractor and subcontractor shall be liable to the United States (in the case of work done under contract for the District of Columbia or a territory, to such District or to such territory), for liquidated damages. Such liquidated damages shall be computed with respect to each individual laborer or mechanic, including watchmen and guards, employed in violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1.) of this section, in the sum of \$10 for each calendar day on which such individual was required or permitted to work in excess of the standard work week of forty hours without payment of the overtime wages required by the clause set forth in paragraph (1.) of this section.
3. **Withholding for unpaid wages and liquidated damages.** The FHWA or the contracting agency shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld, from any moneys payable on account of work performed by the contractor or subcontractor under any such contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, which is held by the same prime contractor, such sums as may be determined to be necessary to satisfy any liabilities of such contractor or subcontractor for unpaid wages and liquidated damages as provided in the clause set forth in paragraph (2.) of this section.
4. **Subcontracts.** The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses set forth in paragraph (1.) through (4.) of this section and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with the clauses set forth in paragraphs (1.) through (4.) of this section.

#### VI. SUBLETTING OR ASSIGNING THE CONTRACT

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts on the National Highway System.

1. The contractor shall perform with its own organization contract work amounting to not less than 30 percent (or a greater percentage if specified elsewhere in the contract) of the total original contract price, excluding any specialty items designated by the contracting agency. Specialty items may be performed by subcontract and the amount of any such specialty items performed may be deducted from the total original contract price before computing the amount of work required to be performed by the contractor's own organization (23 CFR 635.116).
  - a. The term "perform work with its own organization" refers to workers employed or leased by the prime contractor, and equipment owned or rented by the prime contractor, with or without operators. Such term does not include employees or equipment of a subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor, agents of the prime contractor, or any other assignees. The term may include payments for the costs of hiring leased employees

from an employee leasing firm meeting all relevant Federal and State regulatory requirements. Leased employees may only be included in this term if the prime contractor meets all of the following conditions:

- (1) the prime contractor maintains control over the supervision of the day-to-day activities of the leased employees;
  - (2) the prime contractor remains responsible for the quality of the work of the leased employees;
  - (3) the prime contractor retains all power to accept or exclude individual employees from work on the project; and
  - (4) the prime contractor remains ultimately responsible for the payment of predetermined minimum wages, the submission of payrolls, statements of compliance and all other Federal regulatory requirements.
- b. "Specialty Items" shall be construed to be limited to work that requires highly specialized knowledge, abilities, or equipment not ordinarily available in the type of contracting organizations qualified and expected to bid or propose on the contract as a whole and in general are to be limited to minor components of the overall contract.
2. The contract amount upon which the requirements set forth in paragraph (1) of Section VI is computed includes the cost of material and manufactured products which are to be purchased or produced by the contractor under the contract provisions.
  3. The contractor shall furnish (a) a competent superintendent or supervisor who is employed by the firm, has full authority to direct performance of the work in accordance with the contract requirements, and is in charge of all construction operations (regardless of who performs the work) and (b) such other of its own organizational resources (supervision, management, and engineering services) as the contracting officer determines is necessary to assure the performance of the contract.
  4. No portion of the contract shall be sublet, assigned or otherwise disposed of except with the written consent of the contracting officer, or authorized representative, and such consent when given shall not be construed to relieve the contractor of any responsibility for the fulfillment of the contract. Written consent will be given only after the contracting agency has assured that each subcontract is evidenced in writing and that it contains all pertinent provisions and requirements of the prime contract.
  5. The 30% self-performance requirement of paragraph (1) is not applicable to design-build contracts; however, contracting agencies may establish their own self-performance requirements.

## VII. SAFETY: ACCIDENT PREVENTION

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts.

1. In the performance of this contract the contractor shall comply with all applicable Federal, State, and local laws governing safety, health, and sanitation (23 CFR 635). The contractor shall provide all safeguards, safety devices and protective equipment and take any other needed actions as it determines, or as the contracting officer may determine, to be reasonably necessary to protect the life and health of employees on the job and the safety of the public and to protect property in connection with the performance of the work covered by the contract.
2. It is a condition of this contract, and shall be made a condition of each subcontract, which the contractor enters into pursuant to this contract, that the contractor and any subcontractor shall not permit any employee, in performance of the contract, to work in surroundings or under conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous or dangerous to his/her health or safety, as determined under construction safety and health standards (29 CFR 1926) promulgated by the Secretary of Labor, in accordance with Section 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 3704).
3. Pursuant to 29 CFR 1926.3, it is a condition of this contract that the Secretary of Labor or authorized representative thereof, shall have right of entry to any site of contract performance to inspect or investigate the matter of compliance with the construction safety and health standards and to carry out the duties of the Secretary under Section 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 3704).

## VIII. FALSE STATEMENTS CONCERNING HIGHWAY PROJECTS

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts.

In order to assure high quality and durable construction in conformity with approved plans and specifications and a high degree of reliability on statements and representations made by engineers, contractors, suppliers, and workers on Federal-aid highway projects, it is essential that all persons concerned with the project perform their functions as carefully, thoroughly, and honestly as possible. Willful falsification, distortion, or misrepresentation with respect to any facts related to the project is a violation of Federal law. To prevent any misunderstanding regarding the seriousness of these and similar acts, Form FHWA-1022 shall be posted on each Federal-aid highway project (23 CFR 635) in one or more places where it is readily available to all persons concerned with the project:

18 U.S.C. 1020 reads as follows:

"Whoever, being an officer, agent, or employee of the United States, or of any State or Territory, or whoever, whether a person, association, firm, or corporation, knowingly makes any false statement, false representation, or false report as to the character, quality, quantity, or cost of the material used or to be used, or the quantity or quality of the work performed or to be performed, or the cost thereof in connection with the submission of plans, maps, specifications, contracts, or costs of construction on any highway or related project submitted for approval to the Secretary of Transportation; or

Whoever knowingly makes any false statement, false representation, false report or false claim with respect to the character, quality, quantity, or cost of any work performed or to be performed, or materials furnished or to be furnished, in connection with the construction of any highway or related project approved by the Secretary of Transportation; or

Whoever knowingly makes any false statement or false representation as to material fact in any statement, certificate, or report submitted pursuant to provisions of the Federal-aid Roads Act approved July 1, 1916, (39 Stat. 355), as amended and supplemented;

Shall be fined under this title or imprisoned not more than 5 years or both."

## IX. IMPLEMENTATION OF CLEAN AIR ACT AND FEDERAL WATER POLLUTION CONTROL ACT

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts.

By submission of this bid/proposal or the execution of this contract, or subcontract, as appropriate, the bidder, proposer, Federal-aid construction contractor, or subcontractor, as appropriate, will be deemed to have stipulated as follows:

1. That any person who is or will be utilized in the performance of this contract is not prohibited from receiving an award due to a violation of Section 508 of the Clean Water Act or Section 306 of the Clean Air Act.
2. That the contractor agrees to include or cause to be included the requirements of paragraph (1) of this Section X in every subcontract, and further agrees to take such action as the contracting agency may direct as a means of enforcing such requirements.

**X. CERTIFICATION REGARDING DEBARMENT, SUSPENSION, INELIGIBILITY AND VOLUNTARY EXCLUSION**

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts, design-build contracts, subcontracts, lower-tier subcontracts, purchase orders, lease agreements, consultant contracts or any other covered transaction requiring FHWA approval or that is estimated to cost \$25,000 or more – as defined in 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200.

**1. Instructions for Certification – First Tier Participants:**

- a. By signing and submitting this proposal, the prospective first tier participant is providing the certification set out below.
- b. The inability of a person to provide the certification set out below will not necessarily result in denial of participation in this covered transaction. The prospective first tier participant shall submit an explanation of why it cannot provide the certification set out below. The certification or explanation will be considered in connection with the department or agency's determination whether to enter into this transaction. However, failure of the prospective first tier participant to furnish a certification or an explanation shall disqualify such a person from participation in this transaction.
- c. The certification in this clause is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when the contracting agency determined to enter into this transaction. If it is later determined that the prospective participant knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the contracting agency may terminate this transaction for cause of default.
- d. The prospective first tier participant shall provide immediate written notice to the contracting agency to whom this proposal is submitted if any time the prospective first tier participant learns that its certification was erroneous when submitted or has become erroneous by reason of changed circumstances.
- e. The terms "covered transaction," "debarred," "suspended," "ineligible," "participant," "person," "principal," and "voluntarily excluded," as used in this clause, are defined in 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200. "First Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction between a grantee or subgrantee of Federal funds and a participant (such as the prime or general contract). "Lower Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction under a First Tier Covered Transaction (such as subcontracts). "First Tier Participant" refers to the participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a grantee or subgrantee of Federal funds (such as the prime or general contractor). "Lower Tier Participant" refers any participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a First Tier Participant or other Lower Tier Participants (such as subcontractors and suppliers).
- f. The prospective first tier participant agrees by submitting this proposal that, should the proposed covered transaction be entered into, it shall not knowingly enter into any lower tier covered transaction with a person who is debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this covered transaction, unless authorized by the department or agency entering into this transaction.
- g. The prospective first tier participant further agrees by submitting this proposal that it will include the clause titled "Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion-Lower Tier Covered Transactions," provided by the department or contracting agency, entering into this covered transaction, without modification, in all lower tier covered transactions and in all solicitations for lower tier covered transactions exceeding the \$25,000 threshold.
- h. A participant in a covered transaction may rely upon a certification of a prospective participant in a lower tier covered transaction that is not debarred, suspended, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction, unless it knows that the certification is erroneous. A participant is responsible for ensuring that its principals are not suspended, debarred, or otherwise ineligible to participate in covered transactions. To verify the eligibility of its principals, as well as the eligibility of any lower tier prospective participants, each participant may, but is not required to, check the Excluded Parties List System website (<https://www.epls.gov/>), which is compiled by the General Services Administration.
- i. Nothing contained in the foregoing shall be construed to require the establishment of a system of records in order to render in good faith the certification required by this clause. The knowledge and information of the prospective participant is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.
- j. Except for transactions authorized under paragraph (f) of these instructions, if a participant in a covered transaction knowingly enters into a lower tier covered transaction with a person who is suspended, debarred, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this transaction, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the department or agency may terminate this transaction for cause or default.

\* \* \* \* \*

**2. Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion – First Tier Participants:**

- a. The prospective first tier participant certifies to the best of its knowledge and belief, that it and its principals:
  - (1) Are not presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participating in covered transactions by any Federal department or agency;
  - (2) Have not within a three-year period preceding this proposal been convicted of or had a civil judgment rendered against them for commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with obtaining, attempting to obtain, or performing a public (Federal, State or local) transaction or contract under a public transaction; violation of Federal or State antitrust statutes or commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records, making false statements, or receiving stolen property;
  - (3) Are not presently indicted for or otherwise criminally or civilly charged by a governmental entity (Federal, State or local) with commission of any of the offenses enumerated in paragraph (a)(2) of this certification; and
  - (4) Have not within a three-year period preceding this application/proposal had one or more public transactions (Federal, State or local) terminated for cause or default.
- b. Where the prospective participant is unable to certify to any of the statements in this certification, such prospective participant shall attach an explanation to this proposal.

**2. Instructions for Certification - Lower Tier Participants:**

(Applicable to all subcontracts, purchase orders and other lower tier transactions requiring prior FHWA approval or estimated to cost \$25,000 or more - 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200)

- a. By signing and submitting this proposal, the prospective lower tier is providing the certification set out below.
- b. The certification in this clause is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was entered into. If it is later determined that the prospective lower tier participant knowingly rendered an erroneous certification, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the department, or agency with which this transaction originated may pursue available remedies, including suspension and/or debarment.

- c. The prospective lower tier participant shall provide immediate written notice to the person to which this proposal is submitted if at any time the prospective lower tier participant learns that its certification was erroneous by reason of changed circumstances.
- d. The terms "covered transaction," "debarred," "suspended," "ineligible," "participant," "person," "principal," and "voluntarily excluded," as used in this clause, are defined in 2 CFR Parts 180 and 1200. You may contact the person to which this proposal is submitted for assistance in obtaining a copy of those regulations. "First Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction between a grantee or subgrantee of Federal funds and a participant (such as the prime or general contractor). "Lower Tier Covered Transactions" refers to any covered transaction under a First Tier Covered Transaction (such as subcontracts). "First Tier Participant" refers to the participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a grantee or subgrantee of Federal funds (such as the prime or general contractor). "Lower Tier Participant" refers any participant who has entered into a covered transaction with a First Tier Participant or other Lower Tier Participants (such as subcontractors and suppliers).
- e. The prospective lower tier participant agrees by submitting this proposal that, should the proposed covered transaction be entered into, it shall not knowingly enter into any lower tier covered transaction with a person who is debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this covered transaction, unless authorized by the department or agency with which this transaction originated.
- f. The prospective lower tier participant further agrees by submitting this proposal that it will include this clause titled "Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion-Lower Tier Covered Transaction," without modification, in all lower tier covered transactions and in all solicitations for lower tier covered transactions exceeding the \$25,000 threshold.
- g. A participant in a covered transaction may rely upon a certification of a prospective participant in a lower tier covered transaction that is not debarred, suspended, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction, unless it knows that the certification is erroneous. A participant is responsible for ensuring that its principals are not suspended, debarred, or otherwise ineligible to participate in covered transactions. To verify the eligibility of its principals, as well as the eligibility of any lower tier prospective participants, each participant may, but is not required to, check the Excluded Parties List System website (<https://www.epls.gov/>), which is compiled by the General Services Administration.
- h. Nothing contained in the foregoing shall be construed to require establishment of a system of records in order to render in good faith the certification required by this clause. The knowledge and information of participant is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.
- i. Except for transactions authorized under paragraph e of these instructions, if a participant in a covered transaction knowingly enters into a lower tier covered transaction with a person who is suspended, debarred, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this transaction, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the department or agency with which this transaction originated may pursue available remedies, including suspension and/or debarment.

\* \* \* \* \*

**Certification Regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion--Lower Tier Participants:**

1. The prospective lower tier participant certifies, by submission of this proposal, that neither it nor its principals is presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participating in covered transactions by any Federal department or agency.
2. Where the prospective lower tier participant is unable to certify to any of the statements in this certification, such prospective participant shall attach an explanation to this proposal.

\* \* \* \* \*

**XI. CERTIFICATION REGARDING USE OF CONTRACT FUNDS FOR LOBBYING**

This provision is applicable to all Federal-aid construction contracts and to all related subcontracts which exceed \$100,000 (49 CFR 20).

1. The prospective participant certifies, by signing and submitting this bid or proposal, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:
  - a. No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the undersigned, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any Federal agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.
  - b. If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any Federal agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form-LLL, "Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying," in accordance with its instructions.
2. This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by 31 U.S.C. 1352. Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than \$10,000 and not more than \$100,000 for each such failure.
3. The prospective participant also agrees by submitting its bid or proposal that the participant shall require that the language of this certification be included in all lower tier subcontracts, which exceed \$100,000 and that all such recipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.



**STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION****ON-THE-JOB TRAINING**

(10-16-07)(Rev.4-21-15)

Z-10

**Description**

The North Carolina Department of Transportation will administer a custom version of the Federal On-the-Job Training (OJT) Program, commonly referred to as the Alternate OJT Program. All contractors (existing and newcomers) will be automatically placed in the Alternate Program. Standard OJT requirements typically associated with individual projects will no longer be applied at the project level. Instead, these requirements will be applicable on an annual basis for each contractor administered by the OJT Program Manager.

On the Job Training shall meet the requirements of 23 CFR 230.107 (b), 23 USC – Section 140, this provision and the On-the-Job Training Program Manual.

The Alternate OJT Program will allow a contractor to train employees on Federal, State and privately funded projects located in North Carolina. However, priority shall be given to training employees on NCDOT Federal-Aid funded projects.

**Minorities and Women**

Developing, training and upgrading of minorities and women toward journeyman level status is a primary objective of this special training provision. Accordingly, the Contractor shall make every effort to enroll minority and women as trainees to the extent that such persons are available within a reasonable area of recruitment. This training commitment is not intended, and shall not be used, to discriminate against any applicant for training, whether a member of a minority group or not.

**Assigning Training Goals**

The Department, through the OJT Program Manager, will assign training goals for a calendar year based on the contractors' past three years' activity and the contractors' anticipated upcoming year's activity with the Department. At the beginning of each year, all contractors eligible will be contacted by the Department to determine the number of trainees that will be assigned for the upcoming calendar year. At that time the Contractor shall enter into an agreement with the Department to provide a self-imposed on-the-job training program for the calendar year. This agreement will include a specific number of annual training goals agreed to by both parties. The number of training assignments may range from 1 to 15 per contractor per calendar year. The Contractor shall sign an agreement to fulfill their annual goal for the year.\

**Training Classifications**

The Contractor shall provide on-the-job training aimed at developing full journeyman level workers in the construction craft/operator positions. Preference shall be given to providing training in the following skilled work classifications:

Equipment Operators	Office Engineers
Truck Drivers	Estimators
Carpenters	Iron / Reinforcing Steel Workers
Concrete Finishers	Mechanics
Pipe Layers	Welders

The Department has established common training classifications and their respective training requirements that may be used by the contractors. However, the classifications established are not all-inclusive. Where the training is oriented toward construction applications, training will be allowed in lower-level management positions such as office engineers and estimators. Contractors shall submit new classifications for specific job functions that their employees are performing. The Department will review and recommend for acceptance to FHWA the new classifications proposed by contractors, if applicable. New classifications shall meet the following requirements:

Proposed training classifications are reasonable and realistic based on the job skill classification needs, and

The number of training hours specified in the training classification is consistent with common practices and provides enough time for the trainee to obtain journeyman level status.

The Contractor may allow trainees to be trained by a subcontractor provided that the Contractor retains primary responsibility for meeting the training and this provision is made applicable to the subcontract. However, only the Contractor will receive credit towards the annual goal for the trainee.

Where feasible, 25 percent of apprentices or trainees in each occupation shall be in their first year of apprenticeship or training. The number of trainees shall be distributed among the work classifications on the basis of the contractor's needs and the availability of journeymen in the various classifications within a reasonable area of recruitment.

No employee shall be employed as a trainee in any classification in which they have successfully completed a training course leading to journeyman level status or in which they have been employed as a journeyman.

**Records and Reports**

The Contractor shall maintain enrollment, monthly and completion reports documenting company compliance under these contract documents. These documents and any other information as requested shall be submitted to the OJT Program Manager.

Upon completion and graduation of the program, the Contractor shall provide each trainee with a certification Certificate showing the type and length of training satisfactorily completed.

**Trainee Interviews**

All trainees enrolled in the program will receive an initial and Trainee/Post graduate interview conducted by the OJT program staff.

**Trainee Wages**

Contractors shall compensate trainees on a graduating pay scale based upon a percentage of the prevailing minimum journeyman wages (Davis-Bacon Act). Minimum pay shall be as follows:

60 percent	of the journeyman wage for the first half of the training period
75 percent	of the journeyman wage for the third quarter of the training period
90 percent	of the journeyman wage for the last quarter of the training period

In no instance shall a trainee be paid less than the local minimum wage. The Contractor shall adhere to the minimum hourly wage rate that will satisfy both the NC Department of Labor (NCDOL) and the Department.

**Achieving or Failing to Meet Training Goals**

The Contractor will be credited for each trainee employed by him on the contract work who is currently enrolled or becomes enrolled in an approved program and who receives training for at least 50 percent of the specific program requirement. Trainees will be allowed to be transferred between projects if required by the Contractor's scheduled workload to meet training goals.

If a contractor fails to attain their training assignments for the calendar year, they may be taken off the NCDOT's Bidders List.

**Measurement and Payment**

No compensation will be made for providing required training in accordance with these contract documents.

**STANDARD SPECIAL PROVISION**  
**MINIMUM WAGES**  
**GENERAL DECISION NC180100 01/05/2018 NC100**

Z-100

Date: January 5, 2018

General Decision Number: NC180100 01/5/2018 NC100

Superseded General Decision Numbers: NC20170100

State: North Carolina

Construction Type: HIGHWAY

**COUNTIES:**

Alexander	Caldwell	Henderson
Buncombe	Catawba	Madison
Burke	Haywood	

HIGHWAY CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS (excluding tunnels, building structures in rest area projects & railroad construction; bascule, suspension & spandrel arch bridges designed for commercial navigation, bridges involving marine construction; and other major bridges).

Note: Under Executive Order (EO) 13658, an hourly minimum wage of \$10.35 for calendar year 2018 applies to all contracts subject to the Davis-Bacon Act for which the contract is awarded (and any solicitation was issued) on or after January 1, 2015. If this contract is covered by the EO, the contractor must pay all workers in any classification listed on this wage determination at least \$10.35 per hour (or the applicable wage rate listed on this wage determination, if it is higher) for all hours spent performing on the contract for calendar year 2018. The EO minimum wage rate will be adjusted annually. Please note that this EO applies to the above-mentioned types of contracts entered into by the federal government that are subject to the Davis-Bacon Act itself, but it does not apply to contracts subject only to the Davis-Bacon Related Acts, including those set forth at 29 CFR 5.1(a)(2) – (60). Additional information on contractor requirements and worker protections under the EO is available at [www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts](http://www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts).

Modification Number  
0

Publication Date  
01/05/2018

SUNC2014-002 11/13/2014

	Rates	Fringes
BLASTER	20.93	
CARPENTER	13.48	
CEMENT MASON/CONCRETE FINISHER	14.40	
ELECTRICIAN		
Electrician	18.79	2.62
Telecommunications Technician	14.67	1.67
IRONWORKER	12.48	
LABORER		
Asphalt Raker and Spreader	11.76	
Asphalt Screed/Jackman	15.38	.08
Carpenter Tender	10.50	

	Rates	Fringes
Cement Mason/Concrete Finisher Tender	11.04	
Common or General	11.90	
Guardrail/Fence Installer	13.09	
Pipelaye	12.87	
Traffic Signal/Lighting Installer	15.33	.22
PAINTER		
Bridge	20.67	
POWER EQUIPMENT OPERATORS		
Asphalt Broom Tractor	10.00	
Bulldozer Fine	16.28	
Bulldozer Rough	14.51	
Concrete Grinder/Groover	19.20	
Crane Boom Trucks	18.19	
Crane Other	18.69	
Crane Rough/All-Terrain	19.19	
Drill Operator Rock	15.00	
Drill Operator Structure	21.07	
Excavator Fine	16.02	
Excavator Rough	14.67	
Grader/Blade Fine	19.86	
Grader/Blade Rough	15.12	
Loader 2 Cubic Yards or Less	12.38	
Loader Greater Than 2 Cubic Yards	17.91	
Material Transfer Vehicle (Shuttle Buggy)	15.44	
Mechanic	17.86	
Milling Machine	15.08	
Off-Road Hauler/Water Tanker	11.95	
Oiler/Greaser	15.05	
Pavement Marking Equipment	11.99	
Paver Asphalt	17.84	.08
Paver Concrete	18.20	
Roller Asphalt Breakdown	15.00	.08
Roller Asphalt Finish	16.08	.07
Roller Other	12.51	.03
Scraper Finish	12.86	
Scraper Rough	13.83	
Slip Form Machine	20.38	
Tack Truck/Distributor Operator	14.81	.02
TRUCK DRIVER		
GVWR of 26,000 Lbs or Greater	13.65	
GVWR of 26,000 Lbs or Less	12.48	

Welders – Receive rate prescribed for craft performing operation to which welding is incidental.

Note: Executive Order (EO) 13706, Establishing Paid Sick Leave for Federal Contractors applies to all contracts subject to the Davis-Bacon Act for which the contract is awarded (and any solicitation was issued) on or after January 1, 2017. If this contract is covered by the EO, the contractor must provide employees with 1 hour of paid sick leave for every 30 hours they work, up to 56 hours of paid sick leave each year. Employees must be permitted to use paid sick leave for their own illness, injury or other health-related needs, including preventive care; to assist a

family member (or person who is like family to the employee) who is ill, injured, or has other health-related needs, including preventive care; or for reasons resulting from, or to assist a family member (or person who is like family to the employee) who is a victim of, domestic violence, sexual assault, or stalking. Additional information on contractor requirements and worker protections under the EO is available at [www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts](http://www.dol.gov/whd/govcontracts).

Unlisted classifications needed for work not included within the scope of the classifications listed may be added after award only as provided in the labor standards contract clauses (29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(ii)).

The body of each wage determination lists the classification and wage rates that have been found to be prevailing for the cited type(s) of construction in the area covered by the wage determination. The classifications are listed in alphabetical order of "identifiers" that indicate whether the particular rate is a union rate (current union negotiated rate for local), a survey rate (weighted average rate) or a union average rate (weighted union average rate).

#### Union Rate Identifiers

A four letter classification abbreviation identifier enclosed in dotted lines beginning with characters other than "SU" or "UAVG" denotes that the union classification and rate were prevailing for that classification in the survey. Example: PLUM0198-005 07/01/2014. PLUM is an abbreviation identifier of the union which prevailed in the survey for this classification, which in this example would be Plumbers. 0198 indicates the local union number or district council number where applicable, i.e., Plumbers Local 0198. The next number, 005 in the example, is an internal number used in processing the wage determination. 07/01/2014 is the effective date of the most current negotiated rate, which in this example is July 1, 2014.

Union prevailing wage rates are updated to reflect all rate changes in the collective bargaining agreement (CBA) governing this classification and rate.

#### Survey Rate Identifiers

Classifications listed under the "SU" identifier indicate that no one rate prevailed for this classification in the survey and the published rate is derived by computing a weighted average rate based on all the rates reported in the survey for that classification. As this weighted average rate includes all rates reported in the survey, it may include both union and non-union rates. Example: SULA2012-007 5/13/2014. SU indicates the rates are survey rates based on a weighted average calculation of rates and are not majority rates. LA indicates the State of Louisiana. 2012 is the year of survey on which these classifications and rates are based. The next number, 007 in the example, is an internal number used in producing the wage determination. 5/13/2014 indicates the survey completion date for the classifications and rates under that identifier.

Survey wage rates are not updated and remain in effect until a new survey is conducted.

#### Union Average Rate Identifiers

Classification(s) listed under the UAVG identifier indicate that no single majority rate prevailed for those classifications; however, 100% of the data reported for the classifications was union data.

EXAMPLE: UAVG-OH-0010 08/29/2014. UAVG indicates that the rate is a weighted union average rate. OH indicates the state. The next number, 0010 in the example, is an internal number used in producing the wage determination. 08/29/2014 indicates the survey completion date for the classifications and rates under that identifier.

A UAVG rate will be updated once a year, usually in January of each year, to reflect a weighted average of the current negotiated/CBA rate of the union locals from which the rate is based.

#### WAGE DETERMINATION APPEALS PROCESS

1.) Has there been an initial decision in the matter? This can be:

- \* an existing published wage determination
- \* a survey underlying a wage determination
- \* a Wage and Hour Division letter setting forth a position on a wage determination matter
- \* a conformance (additional classification and rate) ruling

On survey related matters, initial contact, including requests for summaries of surveys, should be with the Wage and Hour Regional Office for the area in which the survey was conducted because those Regional Offices have responsibility for the Davis-Bacon survey program. If the response from this initial contact is not satisfactory, then the process described in 2.) and 3.) should be followed.

With regard to any other matter not yet ripe for the formal process described here, initial contact should be with the Branch of Construction Wage Determinations. Write to:

Branch of Construction Wage Determinations  
Wage and Hour Division  
U. S. Department of Labor  
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.  
Washington, D.C. 20210

2.) If the answer to the question in 1.) is yes, then an interested party (those affected by the action) can request review and reconsideration from the Wage and Hour Administrator (See 29 CFR Part 1.8 and 29 CFR Part 7). Write to:

Wage and Hour Administrator  
U.S. Department of Labor  
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.  
Washington, D.C. 20210

The request should be accompanied by a full statement of the interested party's position and by any information (wage payment data, project description, area practice material, etc.) that the requestor considers relevant to the issue.

3.) If the decision of the Administrator is not favorable, an interested party may appeal directly to the Administrative Review Board (formerly the Wage Appeals Board). Write to:

Administrative Review Board  
U.S. Department of Labor  
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.  
Washington, D.C. 20210

- 4.) All decisions by the Administrative Review Board are final.  
END OF GENERAL DECISION



**PROJECT SPECIAL PROVISIONS**

**REST AREA**

# **CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS**

**NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION  
Waynesville, North Carolina**

**HAYWOOD COUNTY – 1-40 EASTBOUND REST AREA**

**SCO ID #18-19094-01A  
CPL Project #14391.00**

**August 28, 2018**

NORTH CAROLINA DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION  
WAYNESVILLE, NORTH CAROLINA

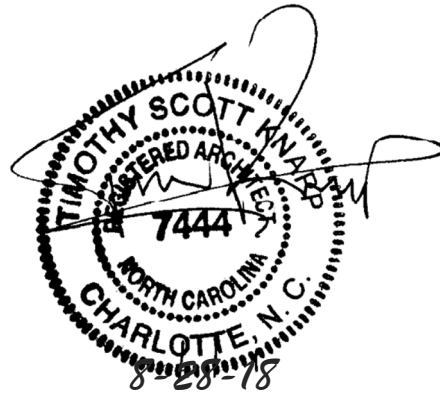
HAYWOOD COUNTY – I-40 EASTBOUND REST AREA

CPL PROJECT NUMBER: 14391.00

August 28, 2018



CORP.



DIV. 01 – 02, 04, 06-10, 12

DocuSigned by:

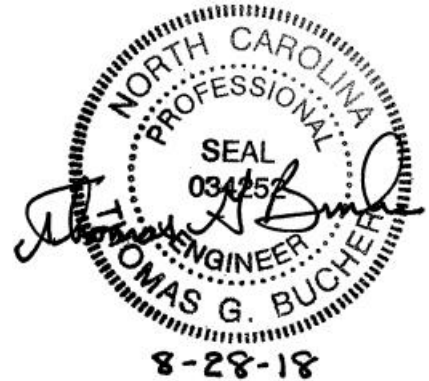
8/30/2018



DIV. 03, 05



DIV. 22 - 23



DIV. 26

DocuSigned by:

8/29/2018 10:56:31 AM PDT

DocuSigned by:

8/29/2018

DocuSigned by:

8/29/2018

**CLARK PATTERSON LEE**  
6302 Fairview Road, Suite 102  
Charlotte • North Carolina • 28210  
(704) 331-9131

TABLE OF CONTENTS

DESIGNERS – SEE DRAWINGS

LIST OF DRAWINGS – SEE DRAWINGS

**SPECIFICATIONS**

**DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

011000..... SUMMARY  
012000..... PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES  
012100..... ALLOWANCES  
012200..... UNIT PRICES  
012300..... ALTERNATES  
012600..... CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES  
013000..... ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS  
013300..... SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES  
014000..... QUALITY REQUIREMENTS  
014533..... CODE REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND PROCEDURES  
016000..... PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS  
017000..... EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS  
017700..... CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES  
017800..... CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS  
017839..... PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

**DIVISION 02 - SITE CONSTRUCTION**

024119..... SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

**DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE**

033000..... CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE  
033543..... DYE STAINED COLORED AND POLISHED CONCRETE  
035400..... CAST UNDERLAYMENT

**DIVISION 04 – MASONRY**

044301..... STACKED STONE VENEER

**DIVISION 05 – METALS**

055000..... METAL FABRICATIONS

**DIVISION 06 – WOOD AND PLASTICS**

061000..... ROUGH CARPENTRY  
061323..... HEAVY TIMBER CONSTRUCTION  
061600..... SHEATHING  
061800..... GLUE-LAMINATED CONSTRUCTION  
062000..... FINISH CARPENTRY

**DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

072500..... WEATHER BARRIERS  
073010..... ROOFING UNDERLAYMENT  
073113..... ROOFING SHINGLES  
074646..... FIBER CEMENT SIDING AND TRIM  
076200..... SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM  
077123..... MANUFACTURED GUTTERS AND DOWNSPOUTS  
079200..... JOINT SEALANTS

**DIVISION 08 - DOORS AND WINDOWS**

080671..... DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE  
081113..... HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES  
081416..... FLUSH WOOD DOORS  
083100..... ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS  
084229..... AUTOMATIC ENTRANCES  
084313..... ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS  
085200..... WOOD WINDOWS  
088000..... GLAZING

**DIVISION 09 - FINISHES**

092116..... GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES  
093000..... TILING  
096513..... RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES  
096623..... RESINOUS MATRIC TERRAZZO FLOORING  
099113..... EXTERIOR PAINTING  
099123..... INTERIOR PAINTING

**DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES**

101419..... DIMENSIONAL LETTER SIGNAGE  
102113.23.. SOLID PHENOLIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS  
102800..... TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES

**DIVISION 11 – EQUIPMENT - NOT USED**

**DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS**

123600..... COUNTERTOPS

**DIVISION 13 – SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION – NOT USED**

**DIVISION 14 – CONVEYING SYSTEMS – NOT USED**

**DIVISION 21 – FIRE PROTECTION – NOT USED**

**DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING**

220001 .....GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING WORK  
220517 .....SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING  
220518 .....ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING  
220519 .....METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING  
220523 .....GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING  
220529 .....HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT  
220553 .....IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT  
220719 .....PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION  
221116 .....DOMESTIC WATER PIPING  
221119 .....DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES  
221316 .....SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING  
221319 .....SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES  
223300 .....ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS  
224213.13...COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS  
224213.16...COMMERCIAL URINALS  
224216.13...COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES  
224216.16...COMMERCIAL SINKS  
224716 .....PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

**DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING (HVAC)**

230002 .....MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL COORDINATION  
230513 .....COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT  
230517 .....SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING  
230529 .....HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT  
230553 .....IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT  
230593 .....TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC  
230713 .....DUCT INSULATION  
230719 .....HVAC PIPING INSULATION  
232113 .....HYDRONIC PIPING  
232300 ..... REFRIGERANT PIPING  
233113 .....METAL DUCTS  
233300 .....AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES  
233713 .....DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES  
235416.13...GAS-FIRED FURNACES  
237200 .....AIR-TO-AIR ENERGY RECOVERY EQUIPMENT

**DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL**

260500 .....GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRICAL WORK  
260519 .....LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES  
260526 .....GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS  
260529 .....HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS  
260533 .....RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS  
260543 .....UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS  
260548 .....SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS  
260553 ..... IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS  
260923 .....LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES  
262726 .....WIRING DEVICES  
262816 .....ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS  
263213 .....ENGINE GENERATORS  
263600 .....TRANSFER SWITCHES  
265100 .....INTERIOR LIGHTING  
265219 .....EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING  
265619 .....EXTERIOR LIGHTING

**END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS**

SECTION 011000

SUMMARY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 PROJECT

- A. Project Name: NCDOT Haywood County I-40 Eastbound Rest Area Renovation.
- B. Owner Name: NC Department of Transportation.
- C. Architect's Name: Clark Patterson Lee.
- D. Scope:
  - 1. The Project consists of the renovation of approximately 2,300 square feet of the existing rest area facility with a focus on the interiors of the restroom area with some renovation to the interiors of the Welcome Center and some exterior improvements as indicated on the Drawings and as specified in the Project Manual.
  - 2. If, in the opinion of the General Contractor, work is indicated or is specified in such manner as will make it impossible to produce a first-class piece of work, or should discrepancies appear within the Contract Documents, he shall refer same to the Designer for interpretation before proceeding with work. If the General Contractor fails to make such reference, no excuse will thereafter be entertained for failure to carry out work in satisfactory manner. Where only part of the work is indicated, similar parts shall be considered repetition. Where any detail is shown and the components therefore are fully described, similar details shall be construed to require equal materials and construction.
- E. Intent:
  - 1. All work shall be in accordance with the Contract Documents. No change therefrom shall be made without a review by the Designer. Where more detailed information is needed, or when an interpretation of the Contract Documents is needed, the General Contractor, before proceeding with the work, shall refer the matter to the Designer who will furnish information or interpretation in the form of a Field Order or other written forms or drawings. If any errors, inconsistencies, or omissions in the Contract Documents are recognized by the General Contractor or any member of his organization, the General Contractor shall notify the Designer in writing of such error, inconsistency, or omission before proceeding with the work.
  - 2. Where compliance with two or more requirements, material or equipment, are specified and the requirements, materials or equipment, establish conflicting specifications or quality levels, the General Contractor/contractor is to comply with the most stringent or higher quality specification. The Designer shall be the authority for determining the highest quality specification.
  - 3. Should the specifications and drawings fail to particularly describe the material or kind of goods to be used in any place, then it shall be the duty of the General Contractor to make inquiry of the Designer for what is best suited. The material that would normally be used in this place to produce first quality finished work shall be considered a part of the Contract.
  - 4. Shop drawings shall be legible and suitable for producing legible reproductions.



## 1.02 CONTRACT DESCRIPTION

- A. Contract Type: A single prime contract based on a Stipulated Price as described in Instruction To Bidders and General Conditions of the Contract (Form OC-15).

## 1.03 DESCRIPTION OF ALTERATIONS WORK

- A. Scope of demolition and removal work is indicated on the Drawings and as specified in Section 024119 - Selective Demolition.
- B. Scope of alterations work is indicated on drawings.
- C. Plumbing: Alter existing and add new construction.
- D. HVAC: Alter existing and add new construction.
- E. Electrical Power and Lighting: Alter existing and add new construction.

## 1.04 WORK BY OWNER

- A. Owner has awarded a contract for supply and installation of the emergency generator and exterior landscaping which will commence on a date established by the Owner. Contractor shall coordinate his work with the contractors the Owner has retained for this work.

## 1.05 OWNER OCCUPANCY

- A. Owner intends to occupy the Project Buildings upon Final Acceptance.
- B. Cooperate with Owner to minimize conflict and to facilitate Owner's operations.
- C. Schedule the Work to accommodate Owner occupancy.

## 1.06 SPECIFICATION FORMATS AND CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Format: The Specifications are organized into Divisions and Sections using the 50-division format and CSI/CSC's "MasterFormat" numbering system.
  - 1. Section Identification: The Specifications use Section numbers and titles to help cross-referencing in the Contract Documents. Sections in the Project Manual are in numeric sequence; however, the sequence is incomplete because all available Section numbers are not used. Consult the table of contents at the beginning of the Project Manual to determine numbers and names of Sections in the Contract Documents.
  - 2. Division 01: Sections in Division 01 govern the execution of the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- B. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
  - 1. Abbreviated Language: Language used in the Specifications and other Contract Documents is abbreviated. Words and meanings shall be interpreted as appropriate. Words implied, but not stated, shall be inferred as the sense requires. Singular words shall be interpreted as plural, and plural words shall be interpreted as singular where applicable as the context of the Contract Documents indicates.

2. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. Requirements expressed in the imperative mood are to be performed by Contractor. Occasionally, the indicative or subjunctive mood may be used in the Section Text for clarity to describe responsibilities that must be fulfilled indirectly by Contractor or by others when so noted.
  - a. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 - EXECUTION - NOT USED

END OF SECTION 011000

SECTION 012000

PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Procedures for preparation and submittal of applications for progress payments.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Document 00 72 00 - Instructions To Bidders and General Conditions of the Contract (OC-15)..

1.03 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the Schedule of Values with preparation of General Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 1. Correlate line items in the Schedule of Values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:
    - a. Application for Payment forms with Continuation Sheets.
    - b. Submittals Schedule.
    - c. General Contractor's Construction Schedule
  - 2. Submit the Schedule of Values to Architect and UNCC Construction Manager at earliest possible date but no later than twenty-one days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
- B. Format and Content: Use the Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the Schedule of Values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section. Each section must be broken down into a minimum of individual line items for materials and labor.
  - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the Schedule of Values:
    - a. Project name and location.
    - b. Name of Architect.
    - c. Architect's project number.
    - d. General Contractor's name and address.
    - e. Date of submittal.
    - f. Mobilization.
    - g. Demobilization.
    - h. Closeout equal to 1/4 of 1 percent of construction contract amount.
    - i. Coordination Drawings.
    - j. Punchlist/inspections.
  - 2. Submit draft of AIA Document G703 Continuation Sheets.
  - 3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with the Project Manual table of contents. Provide several line items for principal subcontract amounts, where appropriate.
  - 4. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.

5. Provide a separate line item in the Schedule of Values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
  - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site. If specified, include evidence of insurance or bonded warehousing.
6. Provide separate line items in the Schedule of Values for initial cost of materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
7. Each item in the Schedule of Values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.
  - a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the Schedule of Values or distributed as general overhead expense, at General Contractor's option.
8. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the Schedule of Values before the next Applications for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

#### 1.04 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. After the award of the Contract, the General Contractor shall promptly submit to the Designer for review and Owner approval a complete schedule of values of the various parts of the work listed in the numerical order of the specifications. The schedule shall be dated and signed by the General Contractor and shall include a description of the work, quantities, labor, materials, and total Contract amount for each item. Upon Owner approval of this schedule of values, the schedule shall be used as the basis for determining monthly payments and, therefore, is needed in advance of the General Contractor submitting the first application and certification for payment. Plumbing, Electrical, and HVAC Prime Sub-Contracts shall be broken down in accordance with the Table of Contents for each such work. Values shall generally be of the same order of magnitude and generally shall be between \$10,000.00 and \$100,000.00. At a minimum, provide separate line items for material and labor for each Section of the Table of Contents. Should the schedule of values include any value for mobilization, the schedule of values shall include an equal value for demobilization. The Schedule of Values shall be submitted using the same form(s) that will be used for Applications for Payment.
  1. Provide line items for coordination drawings, delegated design engineering required by individual Specification Sections, punch list, as-built Drawings and O&M Manuals.
    - a. No payment shall be made for submittals other than those submittals specifically requiring delegated design engineering. Payment shall be made ONLY upon review and acceptance of such engineering by the Designer.
    - b. No partial payments for coordination drawings shall be requested or approved.
- B. The Request for Payment shall be on forms described by North Carolina State Construction Manual Section 323 and similar to AIA Document G703, latest edition. The Request for Payment shall list materials and labor separately for each Section of the Project Manual. When Request for Payment includes (1) materials stored other than on the Owner's property, or, (2) if allowed by the Owner, other than within the boundaries of the State of North Carolina, request for Payment will not be considered and another Request for Payment shall be made. CM shall also attach to the application all receipts and vouchers required to verify the requested payments for stored materials. No payment made to the Contractor by the Owner shall constitute acceptance of any work or materials not in accordance with the true intent of the Contract.
  1. Provide continuation sheets for General Conditions and General Requirements broken down as separate line items.

2. **Stored Materials:** The Designer is required to inspect all materials stored off-site and upon which payment is requested. Outside of a 25-mile radius from the project site, the General Contractor shall reimburse all expenses for such inspections incurred by the Designer via deductive change order to the Owner.
  - a. The General Contractor shall provide minimum 7 days written notice to the Designer for any requested stored materials inspections. Notice to the designer shall include all documentation for insurance coverage, storage facility bonding etc. as required by the General conditions. The Designer will not schedule off site materials inspections without the required documentation.
3. **'Pencil' Copy -** Prior to submitting hard copies for final certification by the Designer, The General Contractor shall submit to the Architect and Owner a draft, electronic copy of each Pay Application for review. Within 5 days of receipt, the Designer shall provide Owner and Designer comments and corrections needed for final certification. General Contractor shall make necessary adjustments and corrections per these comments and submit final hard copies for certification. Designer will NOT mark up hard copies of Applications for Payment. Incorrect Applications for Payment will be returned without certification to the Contractor for correction.
- C. The General Contractor shall additionally include on each monthly Application for Payment the following statement: "We certify that the Surety for this Project has been duly notified of the amount of this request." Unless exception to pay is made by the Surety to the Designer within 4 calendar days following the date of request, it will be assumed that the Surety concurs in the payment of this application.
- D. The General Contractor shall submit with each payment application, backup documentation for General Condition costs and fees.
  1. Backup documentation shall be submitted and categorized by line item for General Conditions costs accumulated in the month for which the Application for Payment is being submitted. Include a cover sheet tabulation for each line item and vendor invoices, receipts etc. for each line item in the General Conditions continuation sheets.
- E. American Institute of Architects Document G703, if used, may generally be obtained at office supply firms or directly from the American Institute of Architects, 1735 New York Avenue, Washington, D. C. 20036.
- F. THE FINAL PAYMENT of retained amount due to the General Contractor on account of the Contract shall not become due until the General Contractor has furnished to the Owner, through the Designer, Guarantees as set forth in the General Conditions and Section 01 77 00 - Closeout Procedures, including other Guarantees required by specific Sections of the Project Manual. In addition to the above, all other submissions required by other Articles and Sections of the Project Manual must be in the hands of the Designer before approval of final payment.
- G. **Transmittal:** Submit 5 signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours.
- H. **Waivers of Mechanic's Lien:** With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from every entity who is lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.
  1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
  2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit final or full waivers.
  3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.

4. Waiver Forms: Submit waivers of lien on forms, executed in a manner acceptable to Owner.
- I. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
  1. List of subcontractors.
  2. Schedule of Values.
  3. General Contractor's Construction (preliminary if not final).
  4. Products list.
  5. Submittals Schedule (preliminary if not final).
  6. List of General Contractor's staff assignments.
  7. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
  8. Initial progress report.
  9. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
- J. Final Payment Application: Submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
  1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
  4. NCSCO, "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims."
  5. NCSCO, "Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens."
  6. NCSCO "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."
  7. Evidence that claims have been settled.
- K. The Final Payment of retained amount due to the General Contractor on account of the Contract shall not become due until the General Contractor has furnished to the Owner, through the Designer, Guarantees as set forth in the General and Supplementary General Conditions including other Guarantees required by specific Sections of the Project Manual. In addition to the above, all other submissions required by other Articles and Sections of the Project Manual must be in the hands of the Designer before approval of final payment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 - EXECUTION - NOT USED

END OF SECTION 012000

SECTION 012100

ALLOWANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Cash allowances.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 26 00 - Contract Modification Procedures: Additional payment and modification procedures.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.
- B. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work.

1.04 ALLOWANCES SCHEDULE

- A. Allowance No. 1: Cast underlayment for existing concrete slabs requiring leveling of existing surface. Include the quantity of 1000 square feet with an average thickness of 1 inch. Provide cementitious cast underlayment in accordance with Section 03 54 00.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 - EXECUTION - NOT USED

END OF SECTION 012100

SECTION 012200

UNIT PRICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. List of unit prices.
- B. Measurement and payment criteria applicable to Work performed under a unit price payment method.

1.02 COSTS INCLUDED

- A. Unit Prices shall include full compensation for all required labor, products, tools, equipment, plant, transportation, services and incidentals; erection, application or installation of an item of the Work; overhead and profit.
  - 1. Overhead shall include all Conditions of the Contract and all general requirements such as Project management, scheduling, home office expense, layout, reproduction of Drawings and Specifications, testing and inspection, shop drawings and sample coordination, shop drawing preparation, proposal request estimating, supervision (including general and nonworking foremen) small tools and expendable items, taxes, temporary facilities and services, including access and safety provisions, "as-built" drawings, estimating general and administrative overhead, and profit. Pricing of proposal requests need to be accomplished within 20 calendar days minimum following receipt by the contractor. Upon request, the contractor shall provide the designer with documentation to substantiate labor rates.
  - 2. In the event of additions and deletions of items of direct labor and/or material, the item quantities shall be algebraically summed prior to the incorporation of applicable prices, Unit Prices, and/or the overhead and profit percentage applicable.

1.03 MEASUREMENT OF QUANTITIES

- A. Measurement methods delineated in the individual specification sections complement the criteria of this section. In the event of conflict, the requirements of the individual specification section govern.
- B. Take all measurements and compute quantities. Measurements and quantities will be verified by Architect.
- C. Assist by providing necessary equipment, workers, and survey personnel as required.

1.04 PAYMENT

- A. Payment for Work governed by unit prices will be made on the basis of the actual measurements and quantities of Work that is incorporated in or made necessary by the Work and accepted by the Architect, multiplied by the unit price.
- B. Payment will not be made for any of the following:
  - 1. Products wasted or disposed of in a manner that is not acceptable.
  - 2. Products determined as unacceptable before or after placement.
  - 3. Products remaining on hand after completion of the Work.
  - 4. Loading, hauling, and disposing of rejected Products.



1.05 UNIT PRICES

A. Schedule of Unit Prices:

1. UP-1 - Cast Underlayment
  - a. Description: Placement of Cast Underlayment according to Division 03 section "Cast Underlayment."
    - 1) Unit of measurement: Per square foot, in place, average thickness 1 inch.
2. UP-2 - Undercut and removal of unsuitable soil as directed By Geotechnical Engineer, removal off-site, and replacement with suitable material compacted to proper density.
  - a. Description: Removal, disposal off-site, and replacement of unsuitable soil with a controlled backfill material from an off-site source.
    - 1) Unit of Measurement: Cubic yard of unsuitable soil measured and removed in original position and not exceeding requirements of specification section 31 20 00.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 - EXECUTION - NOT USED

END OF SECTION 012200

SECTION 012300

ALTERNATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Alternate submission procedures.
- B. Documentation of changes to Contract Sum and Contract Time.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Instructions to Bidders and General Conditions of the Contract (OC-15): Instructions for preparation of pricing for alternates.
- B. Bid Forms: List of alternates on the Bid Form.
- C. The contractor shall review all addenda, drawings, and specifications to fully appraise the extent of each alternate.

1.03 ACCEPTANCE OF ALTERNATES

- A. Alternates quoted will be reviewed and accepted or rejected at Owner's option. Accepted alternates will be identified in the Owner-Contractor Agreement.
- B. Coordinate related work and modify surrounding work to integrate the Work of each alternate

1.04 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

Alternate No. 1. Apply stacked stone surround at six new columns at car parking lot side of facility as specified in Section 04 43 01 of the Project Manual. See Sheet A201 for column locations and 6/A402 for detail.

Alternate No. 2. Provide Certainteed Landmark Pro Roof Shingles (Basis of Design) in lieu of Certainteed XR-30 IR Roof Shingles (Basis of Design) as indicated on the Drawings and specified in Section 073113 in the Project Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 - EXECUTION - NOT USED

END OF SECTION 012300

SECTION 012600

CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Allowances" for procedural requirements for handling and processing allowances.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Unit Prices" for administrative requirements for using unit prices.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Product Requirements" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after Contract award.

1.02 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing Minor Changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on Architect's Supplemental Instructions" form.

1.03 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Proposal Requests issued by Architect are for information only. Do not consider them instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within 7 days after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include breakdown of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
      - 1) Breakdown of material and labor costs shall be submitted in the form of sub-contractor proposals, vendor quotes etc. Change proposals submitted without adequate backup documentation will be returned for correction.
    - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
      - 1) Costs for small tools, cutting blades, drill bits etc. that would normally be used by the contractor(s) for their day-to-day scope of work will not be accepted for change order work unless the scope of the change necessitates special purchase. Otherwise, costs for these items will be included as part of overhead and profit allowances per the General Conditions.

- c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
    - 1) For all Change Order Proposals, supervision shall be charged only for on-site field supervision directly attributable to the change (working foreman etc.) and shall be charged at a rate that represents reasonable supervisory participation in the scope of Work covered by the change. All other project management 'soft costs' will be included as part of overhead and profit allowances per the General Conditions.
  - d. Include an updated General Contractor's Construction Schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time
- B. General Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or unforeseen conditions require modifications to the Contract, General Contractor may propose changes by submitting a request for a change to Architect.
  - 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
  - 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
  - 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - a. Costs for small tools, cutting blades, drill bits etc. that would normally be used by the subcontractor(s) for their day-to-day scope of work will not be accepted for change order work unless the scope of the change necessitates special purchase. Otherwise, costs for these items will be included as part of overhead and profit allowances per the General Conditions.
  - 4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
    - a. For all Change Order Proposals, supervision shall be charged only for on-site field supervision directly attributable to the change (working foreman etc.) and shall be charged at a rate that represents reasonable supervisory participation in the scope of Work covered by the change. All other project management 'soft costs' will be included as part of overhead and profit allowances per the General Conditions.
  - 5. Include an updated General Contractor's Construction Schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
  - 6. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Product Requirements" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
- C. Proposal Request Form: Use AIA Document G709 for Proposal Requests.
- D. Cost of Change Worksheet: All change proposals shall be accompanied by completed cost of change worksheet included at the end of this section.

#### 1.04 ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance Adjustment: To adjust allowance amounts, base each Change Order proposal on the difference between purchase amount and the allowance, multiplied by final measurement of work-in-place. If applicable, include reasonable allowances for cutting losses, tolerances, mixing wastes, normal product imperfections, and similar margins.
  - 1. Include installation costs in purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
  - 2. If requested, prepare explanation and documentation to substantiate distribution of overhead costs and other margins claimed.
  - 3. Submit substantiation of a change in scope of work, if any, claimed in Change Orders related to unit-cost allowances.
  - 4. Owner reserves the right to establish the quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.
- B. Submit claims for increased costs because of a change in scope or nature of the allowance described in the Contract Documents, whether for the Purchase Order amount or Contractor's handling, labor, installation, overhead, and profit. Submit claims within 21 days of receipt of the Change Order or Construction Change Directive authorizing work to proceed. Owner will reject claims submitted later than 21 days after such authorization.
  - 1. Do not include Contractor's or subcontractor's indirect expense in the Change Order cost amount unless it is clearly shown that the nature or extent of work has changed from what could have been foreseen from information in the Contract Documents.
  - 2. No change to Contractor's indirect expense is permitted for selection of higher- or lower-priced materials or systems of the same scope and nature as originally indicated.

#### 1.05 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. Change Orders shall be processed according to NCSCO Electronic Change Order Process. General Contractor, Owner and Designer shall familiarize themselves with this process and follow the requirements as detailed at the NCSCO website:  
<http://interscope2.doa.state.nc.us:8080/interscope/help/ChangeOrders.pdf>.

#### 1.06 FIELD WORK ORDERS

- A. Field Work Order: General Contractor may issue a Field Work Order on NCSCO form. Field Work Order instructs subcontractor(s) to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
  - 1. Field Work Order contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Field Work Order.
  - 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 - EXECUTION - NOT USED

END OF SECTION 012600

SECTION 013000

ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Electronic document submittal service.
- B. Preconstruction meeting.
- C. Progress meetings.
- D. Construction progress schedule.
- E. Submittal procedures.
- F. RFI procedures.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 016000 - Product Requirements: General product requirements.
- B. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Additional coordination requirements.
- C. Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals: Project record documents; operation and maintenance data; warranties and bonds.

1.03 PROJECT COORDINATOR

- A. The Project Coordinator shall coordinate all work of his Contract to produce the required finished Project in accordance with the Contract Documents. Special attention shall be given to the submission of shop drawings, product data, samples, color charts, and requests for substitution within the specified time; furnishing the proper shop drawings to Subcontractors, and products suppliers, whose work and equipment is affected by and related thereto; and the furnishing of all information concerning locations, type, and size of built-in equipment and products and equipment utilities. This coordination is in addition to all other coordination requirements called for in the Technical Sections of the Project Manual and on the drawings.
- B. Project Coordinator: General Contractor.
- C. Cooperate with the Project Coordinator in allocation of mobilization areas of site; for field offices and sheds, for access, traffic, and parking facilities.
- D. During construction, coordinate use of site and facilities through the Project Coordinator.
- E. Comply with Project Coordinator's procedures for intra-project communications; submittals, reports and records, schedules, coordination drawings, and recommendations; and resolution of ambiguities and conflicts.
- F. Comply with instructions of the Project Coordinator for use of temporary utilities and construction facilities. Responsibility for providing temporary utilities and construction facilities is identified in Section 011000 - Summary.
- G. Coordinate field engineering and layout work under instructions of the Project Coordinator.

- H. Make the following types of submittals to Architect through the Project Coordinator:
  - 1. Requests for information.
  - 2. Requests for substitution.
  - 3. Shop drawings, product data, and samples.
  - 4. Test and inspection reports.
  - 5. Applications for payment and change order requests.
  - 6. Progress schedules.
  - 7. Correction Punch List and Final Correction Punch List for Substantial Completion.
  - 8. Closeout submittals.
- I. The Project Coordinator shall maintain a record of all items noted on the Architect/Engineer's Observation of Work in Progress, the subcontractor responsible for completing the work, and the date the work was completed.
- J. The Project Coordinator and each Subcontractor shall keep a Superintendent on the Project during the progress of the Work, for purposes of coordination with other Subcontractors, and if required by the Owner, regardless of whether said Subcontractor has work currently in progress. Subcontractors are allowed to work any day of the year, except at times when the Owner may have special events which would be disrupted by Subcontractor's activities.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

##### 3.01 ELECTRONIC DOCUMENT SUBMITTALS

- A. All documents transmitted for purposes of administration of the contract are to be in electronic (PDF) format.
  - 1. Besides submittals for review, information, and closeout, this procedure applies to Requests for Interpretation (RFIs), progress documentation, contract modification documents (e.g. supplementary instructions, change proposals, change orders), applications for payment, field reports and meeting minutes, Contractor's correction punchlist, and any other document any participant wishes to make part of the project record.
  - 2. It is Contractor's responsibility to submit documents in allowable format.
  - 3. All other specified submittal and document transmission procedures apply, except that electronic document requirements do not apply to samples or color selection charts.

##### 3.02 PRECONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE

- A. The Architect shall schedule a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to State Construction Office, Owner and General Contractor. Hold the conference at Project site or another convenient location. Conduct the meeting to review responsibilities and personnel assignments. The Architect shall arrange for the preconstruction conference in coordination with the SCO Project Monitor assigned. He shall then give written notice to the General Contractor, all subcontractors, the Owner and the State Construction Office as to the time and place of this conference. The purpose of this meeting is to review the requirements of the Project and the requirements of the State Construction Office and to coordinate activities for all construction. The Architect shall send copies of the minutes of this conference to the General Contractor, all subcontractors, the Owner, the State Construction Office and to other interested parties. No preconstruction conference will be scheduled or starting date established until all contracts have been signed, approved and distributed to all parties.

1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of State Construction Office, Owner, Architect, and their consultants; General Contractor and its project manager and superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
- B. Agenda: Shall follow NCSCO Preconstruction Meeting Requirements and Agenda and to discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
  1. Tentative construction schedule.
    - a. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
    - b. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
    - c. Procedures for RFIs.
    - d. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
    - e. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
    - f. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
    - g. Submittal procedures.
    - h. Preparation of Record Documents.
    - i. Use of the premises and existing building.
    - j. Work restrictions.
    - k. Owner's occupancy requirements.
  2. Minutes: The Architect will record and distribute meeting minutes.

### 3.03 PREINSTALLATION CONFERENCES

- A. The General Contractor shall conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.
  1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
  2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
    - a. The Contract Documents.
    - b. Options.
    - c. Related RFIs.
    - d. Related Change Orders.
    - e. Purchases.
    - f. Deliveries.
    - g. Submittals.
    - h. Review of mockups.
    - i. Possible conflicts.
    - j. Compatibility problems.
    - k. Time schedules.
    - l. Weather limitations.
    - m. Manufacturer's written recommendations.
    - n. Warranty requirements.
    - o. Compatibility of materials.
    - p. Acceptability of substrates.
    - q. Temporary facilities and controls.



- r. Space and access limitations.
- s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
- u. Installation procedures.
- v. Coordination with other work.
- w. Required performance results.
- x. Protection of adjacent work.
- y. Protection of construction and personnel.
- 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
- 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to parties who should have been present.
- 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvened the conference at earliest feasible date.
- 6. Minutes: General Contractor shall record and distribute meeting minutes.

### 3.04 ADMINISTRATIVE AND SUPERVISORY PERSONNEL

- A. General: In addition to Project superintendent, provide other administrative and supervisory personnel as required for proper performance of the Work.

### 3.05 PROGRESS MEETINGS

- A. The Architect shall conduct progress meetings at regular intervals. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests. All in-house consultants and contract consultants whose design is under current active construction shall be present at the job site for monthly meetings.
  - 1. The consultants shall be available to answer questions and resolve all problems within their respective discipline. These meetings shall be open to subcontractors, material suppliers and any others who can contribute toward maintaining required job progress. The General Contractor shall request that each subcontractor be represented by both home office and project personnel. These representatives shall have authority to act on behalf of the subcontractor. It shall be the purpose of these meetings to effect coordination, cooperation and assistance in maintaining progress of the project on schedule in order to complete the project within the contract time. The format of these meetings shall include the following:
    - a. Review minutes of last job conference and resolve all uncorrected problems.
    - b. Review the construction schedule for completion by all subcontractors and update when necessary. (Progress of work and field observations since previous meeting).
    - c. Review of Designer's Logs. (Issues, Information & Instructions; Proposals and Modifications).
  - 2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of State Construction Office, Owner and Architect, General Contractor, each subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.

3. Agenda: Shall follow NCSCO Monthly Meetings Agenda.
  - a. General Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to General Contractor's Construction Schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
    - 1) Review schedule for next period.
  - b. Minutes: The Architect shall prepare and submit to the Owner, General Contractor and the State Construction Office representative (Project Monitor) minutes of the monthly meeting. These minutes shall include a roster of all participants and all documentation of all items relating to project status and progress. In addition, minutes shall be distributed to all parties present or should have been present, no later than 7 days after each meeting by the Architect.
  - c. Updating. General Contractor shall revise Construction Schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule within 7 days of meeting.
- B. The General Contractor shall schedule and conduct regular progress meeting as conditions on the Project require but at least weekly and the General Contractor shall conduct bi-weekly Owner's meetings and other meetings as may be directed by the Owner, at which Principal Trade and Specialty Contractors, Owner, Architect, and other designated representatives and General Contractor can discuss jointly such matters as progress, scheduling, and construction-related problems. The General Contractor shall prepare and distribute complete minutes of meetings to all attendees and others as directed by the Owner within three (3) days of such meetings. Representatives of the Owner may attend meetings and shall in any case receive all notices and minutes of meetings.

### 3.06 WEATHER DELAY DEFINITIONS (SEE GENERAL CONDITIONS - OC-15)

### 3.07 REQUESTS FOR INTERPRETATION (RFIS)

- A. Procedure: Immediately on discovery of the need for interpretation of the Contract Documents, and if not possible to request interpretation at Project meeting, prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
  1. RFIs shall originate with General Contractor. RFIs submitted by entities other than General Contractor will be returned with no response.
  2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in work of subcontractors.
  3. All RFI's shall be submitted to the Designer electronically via email. The General Contractor and the Designer shall keep individual RFI logs to be reconciled on a regular basis. The Designer's log shall be recognized as the official Project log.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing interpretation and the following:
  1. Project name.
  2. Date.
  3. Name of General Contractor.
  4. Name of Architect.

5. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
    - a. RFI's answered by the General Contractor without input from the Designer or Owner shall not be included in the Project RFI logs.
  6. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
  7. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  8. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
  9. Suggested solution(s). If solution(s) impact the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, General Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
  10. Signature.
  11. Attachments: Include drawings, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
    - a. Supplementary drawings prepared by subcontractor shall include dimensions, thickness, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments.
- C. Software-Generated RFIs: Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above.
1. Attachments shall be electronic files in Adobe Acrobat PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and return it. The Architect will respond to RFI's in an average of seven (7) working days. It is acknowledged and understood that some RFI's will require longer response time than others. RFIs received after 4:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following RFIs will be returned without action:
    - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    - c. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    - d. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
    - e. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
    - f. Incomplete RFIs or RFIs with numerous errors.
    - g. RFI's requesting confirmation of written direction by other means from the Owner or Architect.
  2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will start again.
  3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for General Contractor to submit Change Proposal.
    - a. If General Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if General Contractor disagrees with response.
- F. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Software log with not less than the following:
1. Project name.
  2. Name and address of General Contractor.
  3. Name and address of Architect.
  4. RFI number including RFIs that were dropped and not submitted.
  5. RFI description.

6. Date the RFI was submitted.
7. Date Architect's response was received.
8. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.

3.08 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE (SEE INSTRUCTION TO BIDDERS AND GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT - OC-15)

3.09 CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

- A. The Designer will provide Drawings and Specifications to General Contractor free of charge for construction purposes the number of sets scheduled in General Conditions of the Contract (OC-15). Additional Drawings and/or Specifications will be furnished on request at direct material cost plus 25% for handling.

3.10 SUBMITAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. All shop drawings, submittals, samples, and data shall be submitted to the Designer for review according to accepted CPM schedule from Article 5 (a). After these items have been reviewed by the Designer they will be returned to the General Contractor for distribution. Samples and shop drawings required for evaluation of a substitution shall be submitted with the request for substitution. Shop drawings, submittals, samples, and data will not be considered by the Designer unless the submission clearly indicates that they have been checked, coordinated between subcontractors, and stamped approved by the General Contractor and Fabricator or subcontractor and fabricator as the case may be. All shop drawings and catalog cuts submitted shall each receive the pre-approved stamp completed and dated by the General Contractor. Samples shall have the stamp affixed to a tag attached to each sample.
- B. No extension of construction time will be allowed for delay in checking shop drawings, submittals, samples or data because of the Subcontractor's, or Fabricator's failure to check shop drawings before submitting them to the Designer. All shop drawings shall be prepared to show how the material relates specifically to the conditions of the Project. Standard manufacturer's drawings that do not show how and where the material is to be used will not be considered. Shop drawings shall not be reproductions or portions of reproductions of the Contract documents. Coordinated shop drawings at the same scale indicating all mechanical, electrical, and plumbing shall be required between all trades. The dominate Subcontractor in a given area, as determined by the General Contractor, shall submit its drawings to the other involved Subcontractors through the General Contractor.
- C. The General Contractor will furnish and deliver to the Owner one copy of each shop drawing, submittal, sample, and data which has been reviewed by the Designer and which has received a "NO EXCEPTIONS TAKEN" or a "TO BE CORRECTED AS NOTED" evaluation. The General Contractor shall deliver these to the Owner within 14 calendar days of receiving each reviewed item from the General Contractor following review by the Designer, or in the case where one copy of a sample was submitted, within 14 calendar days of receiving advice that the sample is "NO EXCEPTIONS TAKEN" or "TO BE CORRECTED AS NOTED." Coordinate delivery with the Owner's project manager. The owner shall have the option of accepting submittal copies during construction or at closeout in which case the General Contractor shall neatly store all items by division in "banker type" storage boxes or a separate file cabinet in the General Contractor's office facility. All stored submittals and samples shall be accessible to owner at any time during normal working hours.

- D. After the Electrical, HVAC, and Plumbing shop drawing submittals have received a favorable review, the General Contractor shall submit to the Designer for the Owner, complete operating and maintenance manuals as called for in Divisions 22, 23, 26 and 28. These manuals shall be submitted not later than 14 calendar days before occupancy.
- E. Only Contract Documents, approved Change Orders, approved submittals to the extent they are in accordance with the Contract Documents, Designer bulletin drawings, and references specifically incorporated into Contract Documents constitute authoritative description of the Work. No other documents, including subcontractor generated drawings, shall be considered authoritative.

END OF SECTION 013000

SECTION 013300

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for submitting test and inspection reports and for mockup requirements.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
  - 4. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific requirements for submittals in those Sections.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information that requires Architect's responsive action.

1.03 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. General: Electronic copies of CAD Drawings of the Contract Drawings will be provided by Architect for General Contractor's use in preparing submittals according to Par.1.04 herein.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
  - 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  - 2. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
    - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow enough time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
  - 1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise General Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
  - 2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  - 3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.

4. The following shop drawings will take longer than 20 calendar days for review and return to the General Contractor:
  - a. Structural Steel
  - b. Mechanical Systems
- D. Identification: Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal for identification.
  1. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.
  2. Provide a space approximately 6 by 8 inches on label or beside title block to record General Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
  3. Include the following information on label for processing and recording action taken:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name and address of Architect.
    - d. Name and address of General Contractor.
    - e. Name and address of subcontractor.
    - f. Name and address of supplier.
    - g. Name of manufacturer.
    - h. Submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
      - 1) Submittal number shall use Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number for each required submittal identified in each specification section(e.g., 06 10 00.01 - Product Data; 06 10 00.02 - Shop Drawings etc.). Resubmittals shall be identified exactly as original submittal.
    - i. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
    - j. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
    - k. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
    - l. Other necessary identification.
- E. Deviations: Highlight or otherwise specifically identify deviations from the Contract Documents on submittals.
- F. Transmittal: Transmitted electronically to Architect using Architect's submittal portal website (newform). Package each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form. Architect will return submittals, without review, received from sources other than General Contractor.
  1. Transmittal Form: Use form approved by the Architect.
  2. On an attached separate sheet, prepared on General Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same label information as related submittal.
- G. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
  1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
  2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked "Approved: No Exceptions" or "Approved, Revisions Noted."
- H. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.

- I. Use for Construction: Use only final submittals with mark indicating approval by Architect as specified above.
- J. Additional Copies: Unless additional copies are required for final submittal, and unless Architect observes non-compliance with provisions in the Contract Documents, initial submittal may serve as final submittal.
  - 1. Submit one copy of submittal directly to concurrent reviewer (Commissioning Agent) in addition to specified number of copies to Architect.

#### 1.04 REQUEST FOR COPIES OF DRAWINGS

- A. Electronic copies of the Architectural drawings may be provided to the contractor upon receipt of a signed release.
  - 1. Electronic drawing copies for MEP Designers of Record are subject to each consultants policy for distribution or may not be available to the General Contractor.
  - 2. The documents, including those in electronic form, prepared by the Architect or the Architect's consultants are Instruments of Service through which the Work to be executed by the subcontractor is described. The General Contractor nor any Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, material or equipment supplier shall own or claim a copyright in the documents prepared by the Architect or the Architect's consultants and unless otherwise indicated the Architect and the Architect's consultants shall be deemed the authors of them and will retain all common law, statutory and other reserved rights, in addition to the copyrights. Copies, including those in electronic form, furnished to the General Contractor are for use solely with respect to this Project and shall not be used on other projects or for additions to this Project outside the scope of Work. The General Contractor, Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, material or equipment supplier are authorized to use and reproduce applicable portions of the documents appropriate to and for use in the execution of their Work under the Contract Documents.
  - 3. The General Contractor, Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, material or equipment supplier shall not submit all or portions of the Contract Documents for Shop Drawings. All Shop Drawings must be prepared specifically for this project by the appropriate Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, material or equipment supplier. Documents, including those in electronic form supplied by the Architect or the Architect's consultants may only be use in the preparation of Shop Drawings as background information.
  - 4. Electronic files are not Construction Documents. Significant differences may exist between the electronic files and the Construction Documents. The Architect and the Architect's consultants disclaim and make no representations, or warranties, expressed or implied, as to the merchantability, condition, accuracy, use, fitness for a particular purpose, suitability, durability of the information or the medium in or on which the information is furnished, of the transferred electronic information. The Architect and the Architect's consultants shall not be liable for any damages, use of the electronic files is at the sole risk of the General Contractor, Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, material or equipment supplier. The General Contractor, Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, material or equipment supplier, by use of electronic files, shall not be relieved of their duty to fully comply with the Contract Documents, including without limitation, the need to check, confirm and coordinate their work.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Prepare and submit Action Submittals required by individual Specification Sections.



- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
  - 1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard printed data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  - 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  - 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's written recommendations.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
    - d. Standard color charts.
    - e. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - f. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
    - g. Printed performance curves.
    - h. Operational range diagrams.
    - i. Standard product operation and maintenance manuals.
    - j. Compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - k. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - l. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    - m. Notation of coordination requirements.
  - 4. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
  - 5. Number of Copies: Contractor shall submit shop drawings as follows:
    - a. Electronic copy in PDF format to Architect.
    - b. Architect will retain all hard copies and return electronic copy with redlines and disposition to General Contractor.
      - 1) General Contractor shall provide and distribute copies of submittals to sub-contractors from returned electronic copy.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
  - 1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Dimensions.
    - b. Identification of products.
    - c. Fabrication and installation drawings.
    - d. Roughing-in and setting diagrams.
    - e. Wiring diagrams showing field-installed wiring, including power, signal, and control wiring.
    - f. Shopwork manufacturing instructions.
    - g. Templates and patterns.
    - h. Schedules.
    - i. Design calculations.
    - j. Compliance with specified standards.
    - k. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - l. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - m. Relationship to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
    - n. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
    - o. Wiring Diagrams: Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.

2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches but no larger than 30 by 40 inches.
3. Number of Copies: General Contractor shall submit shop drawings as follows:
  - a. Electronic copy in PDF format to Architect.
  - b. Architect will return electronic copy with redlines and disposition to General Contractor.
    - 1) General Contractor shall provide and distribute copies of submittals to sub-contractors from returned electronic copy.
- D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
  1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Generic description of Sample.
    - b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - c. Sample source.
    - d. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
  3. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
    - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
    - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of the Constructio Manager.
  4. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
  5. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one returned Sample set as a Project Record Sample.
      - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
      - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.

- E. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
  2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
  3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
  4. Submit subcontract list in electronic pdf format.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.01 GENERAL CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of General Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents. General Contractor submittal stamps with a disposition of "Reviewed" are not acceptable.

#### 3.02 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. General: Architect will not review submittals that do not bear General Contractor's approval stamp and will return them without action.
- B. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or modifications required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action taken, as follows:
1. Approved: No Exceptions
  2. Approved: Furnish as Corrected
  3. Not Approved: Revise and Resubmit
  4. Not Approved
- C. Partial submittals are not acceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned without review.
- D. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will not be reviewed and may be discarded.

END OF SECTION 013300

SECTION 014000

QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve General Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 1. Specific quality-assurance and -control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
  - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit General Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 3. Requirements for General Contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
- C. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Divisions 03 through 33 Sections for specific test and inspection requirements.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect.
- C. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with industry standards.
- D. Source Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source, i.e., plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- E. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- F. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.

- G. Installer/Applicator/Erector: General Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
  - 1. Using a term such as "carpentry" does not imply that certain construction activities must be performed by accredited or unionized individuals of a corresponding generic name, such as "carpenter." It also does not imply that requirements specified apply exclusively to tradespeople of the corresponding generic name.

### 1.03 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer uncertainties and requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- B. Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports that include the following:
  - 1. Date of issue.
  - 2. Project title and number.
  - 3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
  - 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
  - 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
  - 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
  - 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
  - 8. Complete test or inspection data.
  - 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
  - 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspecting.
  - 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
  - 13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.
- C. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

### 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this Article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice the State of North Carolina and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or products that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- F. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
  - 1. NRTL: A nationally recognized testing laboratory according to 29 CFR 1910.7.
  - 2. NVLAP: A testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program.
- G. Testing Laboratories Listing:
  - 1. All custom fabricated assemblies of electrically operated equipment provided under this Contract shall be listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, such as Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. This requirement shall apply in every case where such listings have been established for the particular type of materials or devices in question.
  - 2. All standard manufactured items of electrically operated equipment shall be listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory such as Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. This requirement shall apply in every case where such listings have been established for the particular item in question.
- H. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

### 1.06 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
  - 1. Owner will furnish General Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform.

2. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to General Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
- B. Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are General Contractor's responsibility. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Construction Manager by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
  1. Where services are indicated as General Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
    - a. General Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
  2. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
  3. Where quality-control services are indicated as General Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
  4. Testing and inspecting requested by General Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
  5. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures."
- D. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were General Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- E. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and General Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
  1. Notify Architect and General Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
  3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
  4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
  5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  6. Do not perform any duties of General Contractor.
- F. Associated Services: Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
  1. Access to the Work.
  2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.

3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
  4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  5. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
  6. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.
- G. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.

### 1.07 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Conducted by a qualified testing agency as required by authorities having jurisdiction, as indicated in individual Specification Sections, and as follows:
1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviewing the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
  2. Notifying Architect promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to authorities having jurisdiction.
  4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Project Acceptance, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
  5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
  6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected work.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
  2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
  3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
  4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and modifications as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

### 3.02 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible.
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.



- C. Repair and protection are General Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 014000

## SECTION 014533

### CODE-REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND PROCEDURES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Requirements for Special Inspections.
  - 1. The Owner shall employ one or more special inspectors to provide inspections during construction.
  - 2. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the contract Documents requirements.
- B. Requirements for the Contractor to provide quality-control services required by Architect or Authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.

##### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Approved Agency: An established and recognized agency regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, when such agency has been approved.
- B. Independent: An approved agency shall be objective and competent. The agency shall also disclose possible conflicts of interest so that objectivity can be confirmed.
- C. Equipment: An approved agency shall have adequate equipment to perform required tests. The equipment shall be periodically calibrated.
- D. Personnel: An approved agency shall employ experienced personnel educated in conducting, supervising and evaluating tests and/or inspections.
- E. Special Inspection, Continuous: The full-time observation of work requiring special inspection by an approved special inspector who is present in the area where the work is being performed.
- F. Special Inspection, Periodic: The part-time or intermittent observation of work requiring special inspection by an approved special inspector who is present in the area where the work has been or is being performed and at the completion of the work.
- G. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions and procedures performed before and during execution of the work to guard against defects and deficiencies and ensures that proposed construction complies with requirements.

##### 1.3 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Copies of Regulations: Obtain copies of the following regulations and retain at the project site to be available for reference by parties who have a reasonable need:
- B. 2012 North Carolina State Building Code, Chapter 17 "Structural Tests and Special Inspections".

##### 1.4 REFERENCES

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.
- B. ACI International (ACI)
  - 1. ACI 318/318R (2005) Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary

- C. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC)
  - 1. AISC 360 (2005) Specification for Structural Steel Buildings
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)
  - 1. ASTM A 615/A 615M (2004a) Deformed and Plain Billet-steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

## **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in the State of North Carolina and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Professional Engineer Qualifications Submittals shall be prepared and sealed by a qualified professional engineer licensed in North Carolina.
- B. Special Inspector: Owner/Owner's Agent shall provide a Special Inspector at the work site for each of the areas of responsibilities, specified below, who shall assist and report to the Owner, Engineer of record and who shall have no duties other than their assigned quality control duties. Special Inspectors are required to be physically present at the construction site to perform the phases of control and prepare documentation for each definable feature of work in their area of responsibility at the frequency specified. Special Inspectors shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
  - 1. Requirements for Special Inspectors shall not supersede building codes and similar regulations governing the Work, nor interfere with local trade-union jurisdictional settlements and similar conventions.
  - 2. Concrete:
    - a. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade I, according to ACI CP-01 or an equivalent certification program.
    - b. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade I.
    - c. Testing Agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade II.

## **1.6 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS**

- A. Concrete Construction: The special inspections and verifications for concrete construction shall be as required by this Section 1704.4 and Table 1704.4 of The 2012 North Carolina State Building Code.
- B. Wood Construction. Special inspections of the fabrication process of wood structural elements and assemblies shall be in accordance with Section 1704.2. of The 2012 North Carolina State Building Code

## **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE FOR SEISMIC RESISTANCE**

- A. Scope: A quality assurance plan for seismic requirements shall be provided in accordance with Section 1705.2 of the 2012 North Carolina State Building Code for the following:
  - 1. The seismic-force-resisting systems in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C.
- B. The following additional systems in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C:
  - 1. HVAC ductwork containing hazardous materials, and anchorage of such ductwork
  - 2. Piping systems and mechanical units containing flammable, combustible or highly toxic materials
  - 3. Anchorage of electrical equipment used for emergency or standby power systems.

## 1.8 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS FOR SEISMIC RESISTANCE

- A. General: Provide Special Inspection where required in Section 1704.1 of the 2012 North Carolina State Building Code.
- B. Special Inspections itemized in Section 1707.2 through 1707.8 of the 2012 North Carolina State Building Code are required for the following:
  - 1. The seismic-force-resisting systems in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C.
  - 2. Architectural, mechanical and electrical components in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C..
  - 3. Structural wood: Periodic special inspections for nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of components within the seismic-force-resisting system, including drag struts, braces and hold-downs.
  - 4. Mechanical and electrical components:
    - a. Periodic special inspection during the anchorage of electrical equipment for emergency or standby power systems in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C.
    - b. Periodic special inspection during installation of piping systems intended to carry flammable, combustible, or highly toxic contents and their associated mechanical units in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C.
    - c. Periodic special inspection during the installation of HVAC ductwork that will contain hazardous materials in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 STATEMENT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

- A. Refer to attached form “**Statement of Special Inspections**” at the end of this section.
- B. Refer to attached “**Schedule of Special Inspections**” at the end of this section.

## 3.2 SPECIAL INSPECTION REPORTS

- A. Report Requirement: Special Inspectors shall keep records of inspections. The special inspector shall furnish inspection reports to the code enforcement official, and to the registered design professional in responsible charge.
  - 1. Reports shall indicate that work inspected was done in conformance to approved construction documents.
  - 2. Discrepancies shall be brought to the immediate attention of the contractor for correction. If the discrepancies are not corrected, the discrepancies shall be brought to the attention of the code enforcement official and to the registered design professional in responsible charge prior to the completion of that phase of the work.
- B. Periodic Report: On the first day of each month, the special inspector shall furnish to the Architect five copies of the combined progress reports of the special inspector's observations. These progress reports shall list all special inspections of construction or reviews of testing performed during that month, note all uncorrected deficiencies, and describe the corrections made both to these deficiencies and to previously reported deficiencies.
  - 1. Each monthly report shall be signed by all special inspectors who performed special inspections of construction or reviewed testing during that month, regardless of whether they reported any deficiencies.
  - 2. Each monthly report shall be signed by the Contractor.

- C. Final Report: At completion of construction, each special inspector shall prepare and sign a final report attesting that all work they inspected and all testing and test reports they reviewed were completed in accordance with the approved construction documents and that deficiencies identified were satisfactorily corrected.
1. The Special Inspector shall submit a combined final report containing the signed final reports.
  2. The Contractors shall sign the combined final report attesting that all final reports of special inspectors that performed work to comply with these construction documents are contained therein, and that the Contractor has reviewed and approved all of the individual inspector's final reports.
  3. Refer to attached form **“Report of Special Inspections”** attached at the end of this section.

END OF SECTION 01 45 33

Statement of Special Inspections

Name of project:

Address or Legal Description:

Owner's Name:

Authority having jurisdiction:

I , as the owners , or Agent of the owner (contractors may not employ the special inspector),  
certify that I or architect/engineer of record, will be responsible for employing the special inspector(s) as  
required by the 2012 North Carolina State Building Code Section 1704 for the construction project  
located at the site listed above.

Signed:

I , as the structural engineer of record, certify that I have prepared the following special inspections  
program as required by the 2012 North Carolina State Building Code Section 1704 for the construction  
project located at the site listed above

Printed Name:

Seal



Signature:

Date:

List of work requiring special inspections:

See ATTACHED schedule

Special Inspections Report

REPORT TYPE:

- ☐ Continuous  
☐ Periodic  
☐ Final

WORK / MATERIAL INSPECTED:

PROJECT NAME:

Address or Legal Description:

Owner's Name:

Phone:

Fax:

APPROVED INSPECTION AGENCY:

Address:

Phone:

Fax:

AUTHORITY HAVING JURISDICTION:

Address:

Phone:

Fax:

REGISTER DESIGN PROFESSION OR RECORD:

Address:

Phone:

Fax:

STATEMENT OF CONFORMANCE:

Discrepancies:

1. None \_\_\_\_\_

- a. Contractor Review:  
b. Contractor signature:  
c. Contractor correction:

Outstanding Discrepancies:

1. None \_\_\_\_\_

- a. Authority Having Jurisdiction review:

Registered Design Professional review:

**SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS**

**CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION**

Inspection Required	Material / Work	Scope of Inspection	Frequency of Inspection		Reference Standard	Report type	BCNYS Section	Qualifications	Approved Agency
			Continuous	Periodic					
	Concrete testing	Absence of test data	NA	NA	Chapter 3 of ACI 318	Statement of conformance	Table 1704.4, 1704.4.1	ICC Reinforced Concrete Special Inspector	
Y	Concrete reinforcement	Inspection of reinforcing steel, including pre-stressing tendons, and placement.	NA	Required	ACI 318:3.5,7.1 – 7.7	Inspection report	Table 1704.4, 1903.5, 1907.1, 1907.7, 1914.4	ICC Reinforced Concrete Special Inspector	
	Concrete reinforcement welding	Inspection of reinforcing steel welding in accordance with Table 1704.3, Item 5B.	Required	NA	AWS D1.4 CERTIFIED 318: 3.5.2	Inspection report	Table 1704.4, 1903.5.2	ICC Reinforced Concrete Special Inspector	
Y	Bolts	Inspect bolts to be installed in concrete prior to and during placement of concrete where allowable loads have been increased	Required	NA	NA	Inspection report	Table 1704.4, 1911.5	ICC Reinforced Concrete Special Inspector 1	
Y	Design Mix	Verifying use of required design mix.	NA	Required	ACI 318: Ch. 4, 5.2-5.4	Inspection report	Table 1704.4, 1904, 1905.2-1905.4,1914.2, 1914.3	ICC Reinforced Concrete Special Inspector	



Inspection Required	Material / Work	Scope of Inspection	Frequency of Inspection		Reference Standard	Report type	BCNYS Section	Qualifications	Approved Agency
			Continuous	Periodic					
Y	Concrete strength	Strength test	Required	NA	ASTM C 31, ASTM C 39	Inspection report	Table 1704.4, 1905.6.3.2, 1905.6.2.1	ICC Reinforced Concrete Special Inspector	
Y	Slump	Sampling fresh concrete and performing slump, air content and determining the temperature of fresh concrete at the time of making specimens for strength tests.	Required	NA	ASTM C 172, ASTM C 31, ACI 318: 5.6, 5.8	Inspection report	Table 1704.4, 1905.6, 1914.10	CERTIFIED-ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician-Grade 1	
	Shotcrete	Inspection of concrete and shotcrete placement for proper application techniques.	Required	NA	ACI 318: 5.9, 5.10	Inspection report	Table 1704.4, 1905.9, 1905.10, 1914.6, 1914.6, 1914.7, 1914.8	ICC Reinforced Concrete Special Inspector	
Y	Curing	Inspection for maintenance of specified curing temperature and techniques.	NA	Required	ACI 318: 5.11-5.13	Inspection report	Table 1704.4, 1905.11, 1905.13, 1914.9	ICC Reinforced Concrete Special Inspector	
	Pre-stressed concrete	Inspect application of pre-stressing forces.	Required	NA	ACI 318: 18.18	Inspection report	Table 1704.4	CERTIFIED-ICC Reinforced Concrete and ICC Prestressed Concrete	

**SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS**

**SOILS**

Inspection Required	Material / Work	Scope of Inspection	Frequency of Inspection		Reference Standard	Report type	BCNYS Section	Qualifications	Approved Agency
			Continuous	Periodic					
Y	Site preparation	Prior to placement of the prepared fill.	Prior to placement	NA	Soil report	Inspection report	1704.1, 1802.2		
Y	Placement of soil	Maximum lift thickness	During placement and compaction of the fill material.	NA	Soil report	Inspection report	1704.1, 1802.2, 1803.4		
Y	Compaction of soil	Evaluate in-place dry density of compacted fill	During placement and compaction of the fill material.	NA	Soil report	Inspection report	1704.1, 1802.2		
Y	Bearing soil testing	Test for soil suitable bearing	Prior to work	NA	Soil report	Inspection report	NA		

END OF SECTION – 014533

## SECTION 016000

### PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; product substitutions; and comparable products.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties for Contract closeout.
  - 4. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific requirements for warranties on products and installations specified to be warranted.
- C. Related Requirements
  - 1. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Product quality monitoring.

##### 1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items purchased for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
  - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature, that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
  - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
  - 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process, or where indicated as a product substitution, to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
- C. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: Where a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis of design," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of other named manufacturers.

##### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product List: Submit a list, in tabular form, showing specified products. Include generic names of products required. Include manufacturer's name and proprietary product names for each product.

1. Coordinate product list with General Contractor's Construction Schedule and the Submittals Schedule.
  2. Form: Tabulate information for each product under the following column headings:
    - a. Specification Section number and title.
    - b. Generic name used in the Contract Documents.
    - c. Proprietary name, model number, and similar designations.
    - d. Manufacturer's name and address.
    - e. Supplier's name and address.
    - f. Installer's name and address.
    - g. Projected delivery date or time span of delivery period.
    - h. Identification of items that require early submittal approval for scheduled delivery date.
  3. Initial Submittal: Within 14 days after date of commencement of the Work, submit 3 copies of initial product list. Include a written explanation for omissions of data and for variations from Contract requirements.
    - a. At General Contractor's option, initial submittal may be limited to product selections and designations that must be established early in Contract period.
  4. Completed List: Within 30 days after date of commencement of the Work, submit 3 copies of completed product list. Include a written explanation for omissions of data and for variations from Contract requirements.
  5. Architect's Action: Architect will respond in writing to Contractor within 10 days of receipt of completed product list. Architect's response will include a list of unacceptable product selections and a brief explanation of reasons for this action. Architect's response, or lack of response, does not constitute a waiver of requirement to comply with the Contract Documents.
- B. Substitution Requests prior to Receipt of Bids: Submit in accordance with Article 8 of the North Carolina Department of Administration State Construction Office Instructions to Bidders, Form OC-15.
- C. Substitution Requests After Award of Contract (If Allowed by the Architect): Submit electronic copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles. These substitutions shall be made only by the General Contractor and not by subcontractors or material suppliers. Necessary or required substitutions can be made after contract award per usual procedure, but only under unusual or extenuating circumstances.
1. Substitution Request Form: Use Form approved by the Architect.
  2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified material or product cannot be provided.
    - b. Statement from contractor certifying that proposed substitution provides Owner with significant benefit in terms of time required for installation, quality of proposed product, cost savings etc. Under no circumstance will the Designer consider substitution requests that require additional cost to the Owner or significant changes to the documents.
    - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.

- d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
  - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
  - f. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
  - g. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
  - h. Research/evaluation reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - i. Detailed comparison of General Contractor's Construction Schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating lack of availability or delays in delivery.
  - j. General Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and is appropriate for applications indicated.
  - k. General Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
  - l. General Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within 7 days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or 7 days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Form of Acceptance: From Designer in writing only.
  - b. Use product specified if Architect cannot make a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.
- D. Comparable Product Requests (If Allowed by the Architect): Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
1. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within one week of receipt of a comparable product request. Architect will notify Contractor of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product request within 15 days of receipt of request, or 7 days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Form of Approval: As specified in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures."
  - b. Use product specified if Architect cannot make a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- E. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Division 01. Show compliance with requirements.

#### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If General Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, product selected shall be compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.

1. Each Contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
2. If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.

#### 1.05 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
  1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
  2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
  3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
  4. Inspect products on delivery to ensure compliance with the Contract Documents and to ensure that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
  1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
  2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
  3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
  4. Store cementitious products and materials on elevated platforms.
  5. Store foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
  6. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
  7. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
  8. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

#### 1.06 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve General Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
  1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Preprinted written warranty published by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
  2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by or incorporated into the Contract Documents, either to extend time limit provided by manufacturer's warranty or to provide more rights for Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution. Submit a draft for approval before final execution.
  1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.

2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using appropriate form properly executed.
  3. Refer to Divisions 2 through 33 Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 NEW PRODUCTS

- A. Provide new products unless specifically required or permitted by the Contract Documents.
- B. Do not use products having any of the following characteristics:
  1. Made using or containing CFC's or HCFC's.

### 2.02 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, that are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, that are new at time of installation.
  1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
  2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
  3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
  4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
  5. Where products are accompanied by the term "match sample," sample to be matched is Architect's.
  6. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish "salient characteristics" of products.
- B. Product Selection Procedures:
  1. Available Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both products and manufacturers, provide one of the products listed, or an unnamed product, that complies with requirements.
  2. Available Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed, or an unnamed manufacturer, that complies with requirements.
  3. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named.
  4. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require matching an established Sample, select a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
    - a. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with provisions in Part 2 "Product Substitutions" Article for proposal of product.



5. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected from manufacturer's colors, patterns, textures" or a similar phrase, select a product that complies with other specified requirements.
  - a. Standard Range: Where Specifications include the phrase "standard range of colors, patterns, textures" or similar phrase, Architect will select color, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that does not include premium items.
  - b. Full Range: Where Specifications include the phrase "full range of colors, patterns, textures" or similar phrase, Architect will select color, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

### 2.03 PRODUCT SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Timing: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 10 days prior to bid date and time. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.
- B. Conditions: Architect will consider General Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
  1. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
  2. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
  3. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
  4. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
  5. Requested substitution will not adversely affect General Contractor' Construction Schedule.
  6. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
  7. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  8. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
  9. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.

### 2.04 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Timing: Architect will consider requests for substitution of comparable products if received within 10 days prior to bid date and time. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.
- B. Conditions: Architect will consider General Contractor' request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
  1. Evidence that the proposed product does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents, that it is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce the indicated results, and that it is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant qualities include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
  3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.

4. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
5. Samples, if requested.

PART 3 - EXECUTION - NOT USED

END OF SECTION 016000

## SECTION 017000

### EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Examination, preparation, and general installation procedures.
- B. Requirements for alterations work, including selective demolition.
- C. Cutting and patching.
- D. Cleaning and protection.
- E. Starting of systems and equipment.
- F. Demonstration and instruction of Owner personnel.
- G. General requirements for maintenance service.

##### 1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 011000 - Summary: Limitations on working in existing building; continued occupancy; work sequence; identification of salvaged and relocated materials.
- B. Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures: Submittals procedures.
- C. Section 014000 - Quality Requirements: Testing and inspection procedures.
- D. Section 015000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls: Temporary exterior enclosures.
- E. Section 015000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls: Temporary interior partitions.
- F. Section 0177 00 - Closeout Procedures: Procedures required for proper closeout.
- G. Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals: Operation and maintenance data, warranties and bonds.
- H. Section 017839 - Project Record Documents: Requirements for submittal of record documents.
- I. Individual Product Specification Sections:
  - 1. Advance notification to other sections of openings required in work of those sections.
  - 2. Limitations on cutting structural members.

##### 1.03 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate scheduling, submittals, and work of the various sections of the Project Manual to ensure efficient and orderly sequence of installation of interdependent construction elements, with provisions for accommodating items installed later.
- B. Verify that utility requirements and characteristics of new operating equipment are compatible with building utilities. Coordinate work of various sections having interdependent responsibilities for installing, connecting to, and placing in service, such equipment.
- C. Coordinate space requirements, supports, and installation of mechanical and electrical work that are indicated diagrammatically on drawings. Follow routing indicated for pipes, ducts, and conduit, as closely as practicable; place runs parallel with lines of building. Utilize spaces efficiently to maximize accessibility for other installations, for maintenance, and for repairs.

- D. In finished areas except as otherwise indicated, conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring within the construction. Coordinate locations of fixtures and outlets with finish elements.
- E. Coordinate completion and clean-up of work of separate sections.
- F. After Owner occupancy of premises, coordinate access to site for correction of defective work and work not in accordance with Contract Documents, to minimize disruption of Owner's activities.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 PATCHING MATERIALS

- A. New Materials: As specified in product sections; match existing products and work for patching and extending work.
- B. Type and Quality of Existing Products: Determine by inspecting and testing products where necessary, referring to existing work as a standard.
- C. Product Substitution: For any proposed change in materials, submit request for substitution described in Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that existing site conditions and substrate surfaces are acceptable for subsequent work. Start of work means acceptance of existing conditions. Do not proceed with the installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected to meet the requirements of the component and its manufacturer.
- B. Verify that existing substrate is capable of structural support or attachment of new work being applied or attached.
- C. Examine and verify specific conditions described in individual specification sections.
- D. All dimensions of existing facilities are to be considered approximate and take field measurements before confirming product orders or beginning fabrication, to minimize waste due to over-ordering or misfabrication.
- E. Verify that utility services are available, of the correct characteristics, and in the correct locations.
- F. Prior to Cutting: Examine existing conditions prior to commencing work, including elements subject to damage or movement during cutting and patching. After uncovering existing work, assess conditions affecting performance of work. Beginning of cutting or patching means acceptance of existing conditions. Under no circumstances shall structural elements be cut, drilled, or otherwise altered without prior approval of the Architect.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate surfaces prior to applying next material or substance.
- B. Seal cracks or openings of substrate prior to applying next material or substance.
- C. Apply manufacturer required or recommended substrate primer, sealer, or conditioner prior to applying any new material or substance in contact or bond.

### 3.03 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. The Contractor shall perform the installation work in accordance with the Contract Documents and the manufacturer's installation instructions and recommendations, the more explicit or more stringent requirements governing.
- B. Install products as specified in individual sections, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, and so as to avoid waste due to necessity for replacement.
- C. Make vertical elements plumb and horizontal elements level, unless otherwise indicated. Allow for expansion and building movement.
- D. Install equipment and fittings plumb and level, neatly aligned with adjacent vertical and horizontal lines, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Make consistent texture on surfaces, with seamless transitions, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Make neat transitions between different surfaces, maintaining texture and appearance.

### 3.04 GENERAL CONTRACTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. The General Contractor shall inspect materials and equipment immediately upon delivery and again prior to installation. Damaged and defective items shall be rejected and removed from the Project.
- B. The General Contractor shall provide uniform joint widths in exposed work of the same material. Joints shall be arranged in exposed work to obtain the best visual effect, as determined by the Architect.
- C. The General Contractor shall re-check measurements and dimensions before starting each installation.
- D. The General Contractor shall install each component during weather conditions and Project status that will insure the best possible results. Isolate each part of the completed construction from incompatible material to prevent deterioration.
- E. The General Contractor shall coordinate the installation of temporary enclosures with required inspections and tests to minimize the necessity of uncovering completed construction work for inspection and testing.
- F. Where mounting heights are not indicated or specified, install individual components at the standard mounting heights recognized within the industry and governing code for the particular application. Refer questionable mounting height decisions to the Architect for a final decision.
- G. Provide dielectronic isolation between dissimilar metals, such as, but not limited to, between mild steel and aluminum.
- H. Various items will be mounted within rated assemblies such as walls and floors. The contractor providing any such items shall also provide the work necessary to maintain the rating of the assembly.
- I. Cleaning Prior to Installing Finishes: The General Contractor and subcontractors shall remove all debris and soot, smudges, dust, and other deposits from the walls, ceilings, floors, and other exposed surfaces prior to installing finishes. Do not perform any finishing work until such surfaces are properly clean.

### 3.05 ALTERATIONS (SEE GENERAL CONDITION - ARTICLE 11)

- A. Drawings showing existing construction and utilities are based on casual field observation and existing record documents only.
  - 1. Verify that construction and utility arrangements are as indicated.
  - 2. Report discrepancies to Architect before disturbing existing installation.
  - 3. Beginning of alterations work constitutes acceptance of existing conditions.
- B. Keep areas in which alterations are being conducted separated from other areas that are still occupied.
  - 1. Provide, erect, and maintain temporary dustproof partitions of construction indicated in locations indicated on drawings.
- C. Remove existing work as indicated and as required to accomplish new work.
  - 1. Remove items indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Relocate items indicated on drawings.
  - 3. Where new surface finishes are to be applied to existing work, perform removals, patch, and prepare existing surfaces as required to receive new finish; remove existing finish if necessary for successful application of new finish.
  - 4. Where new surface finishes are not specified or indicated, patch holes and damaged surfaces to match adjacent finished surfaces as closely as possible.
- D. Services (Including but not limited to HVAC, Plumbing, Fire Protection, Electrical, and Telecommunications): Remove, relocate, and extend existing systems to accommodate new construction.
  - 1. Maintain existing active systems that are to remain in operation; maintain access to equipment and operational components; if necessary, modify installation to allow access or provide access panel.
  - 2. Where existing systems or equipment are not active and Contract Documents require reactivation, put back into operational condition; repair supply, distribution, and equipment as required.
  - 3. Where existing active systems serve occupied facilities but are to be replaced with new services, maintain existing systems in service until new systems are complete and ready for service.
    - a. Disable existing systems only to make switchovers and connections; minimize duration of outages.
    - b. See Section 011000 for other limitations on outages and required notifications.
    - c. Provide temporary connections as required to maintain existing systems in service.
  - 4. Verify that abandoned services serve only abandoned facilities.
  - 5. Remove abandoned pipe, ducts, conduits, and equipment, including those above accessible ceilings; remove back to source of supply where possible, otherwise cap stub and tag with identification; patch holes left by removal using materials specified for new construction.
- E. Protect existing work to remain.
  - 1. Prevent movement of structure; provide shoring and bracing if necessary.
  - 2. Perform cutting to accomplish removals neatly and as specified for cutting new work.
  - 3. The General Contractor and all subcontractors are hereby reminded and cautioned that extreme care shall be exercised to protect the existing facilities from damage during the progress of the work. Any damage that occurs shall be repaired or damaged areas removed and replaced with new materials equal to the existing and to the Owner's satisfaction without additional cost.

4. Lawn areas in the material storage areas and elsewhere as affected by the contract shall be protected from unnecessary digging, trenching and rutting, and after completion of the work all holes, trenches, ruts, and other damage shall be filled in, graded, and made ready to receive new grassing. If grassing is included in the project, these areas shall be grassed in accordance with the requirements of Section 32 92 00. If grassing is not included in the project, these areas shall be grassed to match existing as close as possible.
- F. Adapt existing work to fit new work: Make as neat and smooth transition as possible.
- G. When existing finished surfaces are cut so that a smooth transition with new work is not possible, terminate existing surface along a straight line at a natural line of division and make recommendation to Architect prior to construction.
- H. Where removal of partitions or walls results in adjacent spaces becoming one, rework floors, walls, and ceilings to a smooth plane without breaks, steps, or bulkheads.
- I. Where a change of plane of 1/4 inch or more occurs in existing work, submit recommendation for providing a smooth transition for Architect review and request instructions.
- J. Patching: Where the existing surface is not indicated to be refinished, patch to match the surface finish that existed prior to cutting. Where the surface is indicated to be refinished, patch so that the substrate is ready for the new finish.
- K. Refinish existing surfaces as indicated:
- L. Where rooms or spaces are indicated to be refinished, refinish all visible existing surfaces to remain to the specified condition for each material, with a neat transition to adjacent finishes.
- M. If mechanical or electrical work is exposed accidentally during the work, re-cover and refinish to match.
- N. Clean existing systems and equipment.
- O. Remove demolition debris and abandoned items from alterations areas and dispose of off-site; do not burn or bury.
- P. Do not begin new construction in alterations areas before demolition is complete.
- Q. Comply with all other applicable requirements of this section.

### 3.06 CUTTING AND PATCHING (SEE GENERAL CONDITIONS OC-15)

- A. See General Conditions, Article 39. The repair of all damages made by cutting shall include restoring those surfaces to a state of finish equal to that when construction began, including such things as surface texture, design, and color, unless in remodeled work new finishes are called for. All such repairs shall be performed by persons trained and proficient in the particular trades involved; for example, plaster repairs by plasterers, masonry repairs by masons, tile repairs by tile setters, painting by painters, and the like. It is the intent of the Contract Documents that all areas requiring repairs shall be restored to a completely finished condition acceptable to the Architect and the Owner.
  1. All cutting required to perform the work, and install the products specified under particular Contract or Subcontract, shall be performed under that particular Contract or Subcontract, and all patching work resulting from this cutting shall be performed under that particular Contract or Subcontract unless completely new products have been scheduled or called for. All patching work shall be by craftsmen skilled in the required work and who may already be engaged on the Project. Cutting shall be held to the minimum.

2. All patching work within previously painted areas shall be painted by that Contract or Subcontract, which caused the need for this painting, unless completely new finish or finishes have been scheduled or called for. All painting shall be by skilled painters who may already be engaged on the Project.

### 3.07 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. Maintain areas free of waste materials, debris, and rubbish. Maintain site in a clean and orderly condition.
- B. Remove debris and rubbish from pipe chases, plenums, attics, crawl spaces, and other closed or remote spaces, prior to enclosing the space.
- C. Broom and vacuum clean interior areas prior to start of surface finishing, and continue cleaning to eliminate dust.
- D. Collect and remove waste materials, debris, and trash/rubbish from site periodically and dispose of off-site in a lawful manner. Burying and burning of waste on the property shall not be permitted. Washing waste down sewers or into waterways shall not be permitted. Waste shall not be allowed to accumulate and shall not be allowed to become hazardous to safety and health.
- E. The General Contractor shall furnish rodent proof containers in each construction area for the workmen to deposit their garbage and similar waste. This waste shall be kept separate from all other waste and shall be so identified in order that it can be disposed of as required by local regulations. Upon evidence of pest infestation, the Contractor shall provide extermination services as a part of the work.
- F. Hazardous and dangerous waste, as listed by the EPA, shall be kept separate from all other waste. The trade responsible for this waste shall be solely responsible for the handling, removal, and disposing, in accordance with the regulations pertaining to such waste, on a daily basis.
- G. The Contractor shall be responsible for furnishing means and methods for preventing mud being brought into the building or onto the construction by workmen.

### 3.08 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED WORK

- A. Protect installed work from damage by construction operations.
- B. Provide special protection where specified in individual specification sections.
- C. Provide temporary and removable protection for installed products. Control activity in immediate work area to prevent damage.
- D. When interior finishes begin, there shall be no smoking or use of tobacco products inside the building.
- E. Provide protective coverings at walls, projections, jambs, sills, and soffits of openings.
- F. Protect finished floors, stairs, and other surfaces from traffic, dirt, wear, damage, or movement of heavy objects, by protecting with durable sheet materials.
- G. Prohibit traffic or storage upon waterproofed or roofed surfaces. If traffic or activity is necessary, obtain recommendations for protection from waterproofing or roofing material manufacturer.
- H. Remove protective coverings when no longer needed; reuse or recycle coverings if possible.



### 3.09 SYSTEM STARTUP

- A. Coordinate schedule for start-up of various equipment and systems.
- B. Notify Architect and Engineer seven days prior to start-up of each item.
- C. Verify that each piece of equipment or system has been checked for proper lubrication, drive rotation, belt tension, control sequence, and for conditions that may cause damage.
- D. Verify tests, meter readings, and specified electrical characteristics agree with those required by the equipment or system manufacturer.
- E. Verify that wiring and support components for equipment are complete and tested.
- F. Execute start-up under supervision of applicable Contractor personnel and manufacturer's representative in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.
- G. When specified in individual specification Sections, require manufacturer to provide authorized representative to be present at site to inspect, check, and approve equipment or system installation prior to start-up, and to supervise placing equipment or system in operation.
- H. Submit a written report that equipment or system has been properly installed and is functioning correctly.

### 3.10 DEMONSTRATION AND INSTRUCTION

- A. Unless training requirements are included in the specifications, prior to issuance of Date of Acceptance, the General Contractor shall have his/her authorized representatives visit the Project and give full instructions to the Owner's designated operating and maintenance, care, and adjustment of all equipment and special construction elements."
- B. Demonstrate start-up, operation, control, adjustment, trouble-shooting, servicing, maintenance, and shutdown of each item of equipment at scheduled time, at equipment location.
- C. For equipment or systems requiring seasonal operation, perform demonstration for other season within six months.
- D. Provide a qualified person who is knowledgeable about the Project to perform demonstration and instruction of Owner's personnel.
- E. Prepare and insert additional data in operations and maintenance manuals when need for additional data becomes apparent during instruction.

### 3.11 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operating products and equipment to ensure smooth and unhindered operation.
- B. Testing, adjusting, and balancing HVAC systems: See Section 01 40 00 and Section 23 05 93.

### 3.12 MAINTENANCE

- A. Provide service and maintenance of components indicated in specification sections.
- B. Maintenance Period: As indicated in specification sections or, if not indicated, not less than one year from the Date of Final Acceptance or the length of the specified warranty, whichever is longer.
- C. Furnish service and maintenance of components indicated in specification sections during the warranty period.
- D. Examine system components at a frequency consistent with reliable operation. Clean, adjust, and lubricate as required.

- E. Include systematic examination, adjustment, and lubrication of components. Repair or replace parts whenever required. Use parts produced by the manufacturer of the original component.
- F. Maintenance service shall not be assigned or transferred to any agent or subcontractor without prior written consent of the Owner.

END OF SECTION 017000

SECTION 017700

CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Inspection procedures.
  - 2. Warranties.
  - 3. Final cleaning.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
  - 2. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific closeout and special cleaning requirements for the Work in those Sections.

1.02 INITIAL CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
- B. Submit specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
- C. Obtain and submit releases permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
- D. Prepare and submit Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals, Final Completion construction photographs, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
- E. Deliver tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items to clocation designated by Owner. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
- F. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
- G. Complete startup testing of systems.
- H. Submit test/adjustment/balance records.
  - 1. All building control work must be complete prior to performing Test and Balance.
  - 2. Control work and Test and Balance must be complete prior to start of commissioning.
- I. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
- J. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities. Building power and utilities shall remain the responsibility of General Contractor during all reviews up to and including the day of Final Acceptance.
- K. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- L. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
- M. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.

- N. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Division 01 Section "Price and Payment Procedures."
- O. Submit certified copy of Architect's Pre-Final inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. The certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
- P. Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
- Q. Submit pest-control final inspection report and warranty.
  - 1. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training videotapes.

### 1.03 INSPECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General: Prior to requesting any Designer/Owner required inspection, General Contractor shall perform their own inspection.
  - 1. General Contractor shall prepare punch list of items for subcontractor correction and distribute such list to all subs for corrective action.
  - 2. General Contractor shall submit completed and signed off punch lists to Architect along with written request for required designer/Owner inspections. General Contractor shall initial each punch list item verifying completion.
  - 3. Owner and designer will perform required inspections upon receipt of contractor request for inspection and General Contractor's completed punch lists.
  - 4. Designer(s) shall issue punch list of corrective actions required for each design discipline to General Contractor for distribution to subcontractors for corrective action.
  - 5. Upon completion of corrective action, General Contractor shall initial each item on designer's punch lists as verification of satisfactory correction of the item, and submit complete, signed off punch lists to Architect along with written request for verification inspection.
    - a. General Contractor must submit Designer's punch list in its original format. Punch lists sorted, manipulated or otherwise created by the General Contractor based on the Designer's original list will not be accepted.
  - 6. Designers will schedule verification inspection for completed punch lists:
    - a. If, in the designer's judgment, the General Contractor has not satisfactorily completed corrective actions or otherwise provided agreeable resolution for ALL punch list items, the Designer will stop the verification inspection, and advise the General Contractor in writing with a brief general description of reasons for stopping inspection.
    - b. The General Contractor shall then take the appropriate corrective actions to make all corrections and re-schedule verification inspection as specified above.
    - c. The designers shall re-schedule the verification inspection upon written request from General Contractor. If, in the designers' judgment, the General Contractor fails again to meet the requirements as outlined herein, the inspection will be stopped.
    - d. All subsequent inspections after the second General Contractor-requested verification inspection will constitute an additional service by the Designer and shall be payable to the Designer by the General Contractor via a deductive Change Order to the Owner/Contractor Agreement on an hourly plus reimbursable expenses basis.

- B. Required Inspections: All inspections listed below shall follow the inspection procedures as indicated above:
1. Above-ceiling Inspection: Owner and Designers shall perform inspections of all above-ceiling installations prior to close up of ceilings.
    - a. General Contractor shall provide ladders, lifts and all other equipment necessary to provide access to above-ceiling areas for inspection purposes.
    - b. Above-ceiling areas that are determined to be inaccessible for inspection purposes shall be opened up as necessary to provide such access. All costs associated with such work and subsequent repairs will be entirely the General Contractor's responsibility.
  2. Pre-final Inspection: Owner and Designers shall perform pre-final inspections to determine final compliance and completion of all construction prior to Final Acceptance Inspection including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. All general architectural and PME components and systems.
    - b. All life safety systems including complete Fire Alarm testing as specified in Division 28.
    - c. Emergency generator and associated systems.
  3. Final Inspection for Owner Occupancy:
    - a. Upon completion of Pre-final inspection and verification by the Designer, the Designer shall request Final Inspection for Owner Occupancy with NCSCO.
    - b. The General Contractor and Designer shall cooperate to provide all required applicable documentation from Project Approval Form for Final Inspection for Owner Occupancy prior to Designer request to NCSCO.
    - c. Attendance at Final Inspection for Owner Occupancy shall include Architect, Owner, NCSCO personnel, General Contractor and all major sub-contractors.
    - d. General Contractor shall provide all equipment, testing materials and means of access to perform and demonstrate all systems as determined by the Designers and NCSCO to establish Final Acceptance.
    - e. Results of completed inspection will form basis of requirements for Final Acceptance.

#### 1.04 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (CONTRACTOR'S PUNCH LIST)

- A. Preparation: Submit three copies of list. Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by General Contractor that are outside the limits of construction. Use CSI Form 14.1A or other Architect approved form.
1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and proceeding from lowest floor to highest floor.
  2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
  3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Page number.

### 1.05 WARRANTIES

- A. Submittal Time: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement will begin at Final Acceptance.
- B. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of the Project Manual.
  - 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11 inch paper. Provide an electronic pdf copy along with the bound hard copy.
  - 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
  - 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of General Contractor.
- C. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 FINAL CLEANING (SEE GENERAL CONDITIONS - ARTICLE 41)

- A. General: Provide final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Before the date of the Preliminary Review, the Work and the site shall be cleaned of all debris, boxes, cartons, crates, wrappings, etc. Only such cleaning materials and equipment absolutely required shall be allowed on the Project at this time. If approved beforehand by the Architect, other materials may be stored on the Site in designated areas in a neat and orderly manner. Clean up shall include removal of all dirt and construction debris from the roof structure.
- C. Before the date of the Final Review is made to determine completion of the Project, in accordance with the Contract Documents, all of the Contractor's products and equipment shall be removed from the site, the Project given a thorough cleaning as listed below and the Project made 100 percent complete and ready for the Owner's occupancy and use as intended. All other cleaning and preparation shall be in accordance with the specification sections.
- D. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a portion of Project:
    - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.

- b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
  - c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
  - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
  - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
  - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
  - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
  - h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
  - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; shampoo if visible soil or stains remain.
  - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Replace chipped or broken glass and other damaged transparent materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
  - k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
  - l. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred, exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that cannot be satisfactorily repaired or restored or that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
    - 1) Do not paint over "UL" and similar labels, including mechanical and electrical nameplates.
  - m. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
  - n. Replace parts subject to unusual operating conditions.
  - o. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
  - p. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
  - q. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction.
  - r. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency. Replace burned-out bulbs, and those noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.
  - s. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- E. Comply with safety standards for cleaning. Do not burn waste materials. Do not bury debris or excess materials on Owner's property. Do not discharge volatile, harmful, or dangerous materials into drainage systems. Remove waste materials from Project site and dispose of lawfully.

END OF SECTION 017700

SECTION 017800

CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Record Site Utility Survey
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data.
- C. Warranties and bonds.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. North Carolina General Conditions of the Contract (OC-15): Performance bond and labor and material payment bonds, warranty, and correction of work.
- B. Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures: Submittals procedures, shop drawings, product data, and samples.
- C. Section 017700 - Closeout Procedures: Contract closeout procedures.
- D. Individual Product Sections: Specific requirements for operation and maintenance data.
- E. Individual Product Sections: Warranties required for specific products or Work.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordinate closeout submittals with the Project OPR. Comply with Owner's requirements for documents and formats, including, but not limited to:
  - 1. The General Contractor shall turn over to the Owner all equipment, files, logs, drawings or submittals, etc., belonging to the Owner.
  - 2. The General Contractor shall provide receipts signed by the Owner for all required items of the attic stock. The Project Expeditor shall submit a listing (specification section, type of material, and quantity) of all required attic stock items for review by the Owner and Designer prior to the preliminary final inspection.
  - 3. The General Contractor s shall provide one copy of all packing slips, instruction sheets, Owner's guides, etc., that were packed with items of equipment and materials incorporated into the project.
  - 4. The General Contractor shall provide a comprehensive listing of subcontractors and suppliers showing the generic name of materials, work or equipment provided, trade or brand name, name, address, telephone number and contract person, and a reference to the drawings or specification.
  - 5. Shop Drawings, Fire Sprinkler and Fire Alarm Drawings shall be sent in AutoCAD and PDF formats. Other General shop drawings, not specific to UNC Charlotte may be sent in PDF format.
  - 6. Design manuals, warranty information, and paper documentation provided to the Owner shall be in a digital format to facilitate storage. Acceptable file types are pdf, doc, xls, tiff, jpg, and dwg.
- B. Coordinate closeout submittals with the Project OPR. Comply with Owner's requirements for document requirements and format.



- C. Project Record Documents: Submit documents to Architect with claim for final Application for Payment.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data:
  - 1. For equipment, or component parts of equipment put into service during construction and operated by Owner, submit completed documents within ten days after acceptance.
  - 2. Submit one copy of completed documents 15 days prior to final inspection. This copy will be reviewed and returned after final inspection, with Architect comments. Revise content of all document sets as required prior to final submission.
  - 3. Submit two sets of revised final documents in final form within 10 days after final inspection.
- E. Warranties and Bonds:
  - 1. For equipment or component parts of equipment put into service during construction with Owner's permission, submit documents within 10 days after acceptance.
  - 2. Make other submittals within 10 days after Date of Final Acceptance, prior to final Application for Payment.
  - 3. For items of Work for which acceptance is delayed beyond Date of Final Acceptance, submit within 10 days after acceptance, listing the date of acceptance as the beginning of the warranty period.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Maintain on site one set of the following record documents; record actual revisions to the Work:
  - 1. Drawings.
  - 2. Specifications.
  - 3. Addenda.
  - 4. Change Orders and other modifications to the Contract.
  - 5. Reviewed shop drawings, product data, and samples.
- B. Ensure entries are complete and accurate, enabling future reference by Owner.
- C. Store record documents separate from documents used for construction.
- D. Record information concurrent with construction progress.
- E. Specifications: Legibly mark and record at each product section description of actual products installed, including the following:
  - 1. Manufacturer's name and product model and number.
  - 2. Product substitutions or alternates utilized.
  - 3. Changes made by Addenda and modifications.
- F. The Project Coordinator shall submit for the Architect's review, the current list of all work in place action items with the dates of completion and the person responsible for verifying the work was completed. For items not completed at Final Acceptance, the Project Coordinator shall annotate the anticipated date of completion for each item.

- G. Record Drawings and Shop Drawings: Legibly mark each item to record actual construction including:
  - 1. Measured horizontal and vertical locations of underground utilities and appurtenances, referenced to permanent surface improvements.
  - 2. Measured locations of internal utilities and appurtenances concealed in construction, referenced to visible and accessible features of the Work.
  - 3. Field changes of dimension and detail.
  - 4. Details not on original Contract drawings.

### 3.02 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. Source Data: For each product or system, list names, addresses and telephone numbers of Subcontractors and suppliers, including local source of supplies and replacement parts.
- B. Product Data: Mark each sheet to clearly identify specific products and component parts, and data applicable to installation. Delete inapplicable information.
- C. Drawings: Supplement product data to illustrate relations of component parts of equipment and systems, to show control and flow diagrams. Do not use Project Record Documents as maintenance drawings.
- D. Typed Text: As required to supplement product data. Provide logical sequence of instructions for each procedure, incorporating manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Manuals shall be submitted in PDF format and three hard copies.

### 3.03 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA FOR MATERIALS AND FINISHES

- A. For Each Product, Applied Material, and Finish:
  - 1. Product data, with catalog number, size, composition, and color and texture designations.
- B. Instructions for Care and Maintenance: Manufacturer's recommendations for cleaning agents and methods, precautions against detrimental cleaning agents and methods, and recommended schedule for cleaning and maintenance.
- C. Where additional instructions are required, beyond the manufacturer's standard printed instructions, have instructions prepared by personnel experienced in the operation and maintenance of the specific products.

### 3.04 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA FOR EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

- A. For Each Item of Equipment and Each System:
  - 1. Description of unit or system, and component parts.
  - 2. Identify function, normal operating characteristics, and limiting conditions.
  - 3. Include performance curves, with engineering data and tests.
  - 4. Complete nomenclature and model number of replaceable parts.
- B. Panelboard Circuit Directories: Provide electrical service characteristics, controls, and communications; typed.
- C. Include color coded wiring diagrams as installed.
- D. Operating Procedures: Include start-up, break-in, and routine normal operating instructions and sequences. Include regulation, control, stopping, shut-down, and emergency instructions. Include summer, winter, and any special operating instructions.

- E. Maintenance Requirements: Include routine procedures and guide for preventative maintenance and trouble shooting; disassembly, repair, and reassembly instructions; and alignment, adjusting, balancing, and checking instructions.
- F. Provide servicing and lubrication schedule, and list of lubricants required.
- G. Include manufacturer's printed operation and maintenance instructions.
- H. Include sequence of operation by controls manufacturer.
- I. Provide original manufacturer's parts list, illustrations, assembly drawings, and diagrams required for maintenance.
- J. Provide control diagrams by controls manufacturer as installed.
- K. Provide charts of valve tag numbers, with location and function of each valve, keyed to flow and control diagrams.
- L. Include test and balancing reports.
- M. Additional Requirements: As specified in individual product specification sections.

### 3.05 WARRANTIES AND BONDS

- A. Obtain warranties and bonds, executed in duplicate by responsible Subcontractors, suppliers, and manufacturers, within 10 days after completion of the applicable item of work. Except for items put into use with Owner's permission, leave date of beginning of time of warranty until the Date of Final Acceptance is determined.
- B. Verify that documents are in proper form, contain full information, and are notarized.
- C. Co-execute submittals when required.
- D. Retain warranties and bonds until time specified for submittal.
- E. Manual: Bind in commercial quality 8-1/2 by 11 inch three D side ring binders with durable plastic covers.
- F. Cover: Identify each binder with typed or printed title WARRANTIES AND BONDS, with title of Project; name, address and telephone number of Contractor and equipment supplier; and name of responsible company principal.
- G. Table of Contents: Neatly typed, in the sequence of the Table of Contents of the Project Manual, with each item identified with the number and title of the specification section in which specified, and the name of product or work item.
- H. Separate each warranty or bond with index tab sheets keyed to the Table of Contents listing. Provide full information, using separate typed sheets as necessary. List Subcontractor, supplier, and manufacturer, with name, address, and telephone number of responsible principal.

END OF SECTION 017800

SECTION 017839

PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Project Record Documents, including the following:
  - 1. Mark-up Record Prints to be used in developing Record Drawings.
  - 2. Record Specifications.
  - 3. Record Product Data.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
  - 2. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific requirements for Project Record Documents of the Work in those Sections.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set of marked-up Record Prints to be incorporated as Record Drawings by the Designer.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit one copy of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit one copy of each Product Data submittal.
  - 1. Where Record Product Data is required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit marked-up Product Data as an insert in manual instead of submittal as Record Product Data.
- D. Subcontractors shall submit record documents to General Contractor not later than 60 days prior to Final Acceptance by the Owner.
- E. General Contractor shall submit project record drawings to Architect at time of project closeout. Project record drawings shall meet North Carolina Department of Administration Standards of the most current North Carolina Construction Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of blue- or black-line white prints of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings.
  - 1. Preparation: Mark Record Prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to prepare the marked-up Record Prints.
    - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
    - b. Accurately record information in an understandable drawing technique.

- c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
  2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
    - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
    - c. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
    - d. Actual equipment locations.
    - e. Duct size and routing.
    - f. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
    - g. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
    - h. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
    - i. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
    - j. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
    - k. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
  3. Mark the Contract Drawings or Shop Drawings, whichever is most capable of showing actual physical conditions, completely and accurately. If Shop Drawings are marked, show cross-reference on the Contract Drawings.
    - a. Use of loose sheets, separate binders, booklets, etc. as supplementary information for record prints will not be acceptable.
  4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
  5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
  6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Format: Identify and date each Record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD PRINT" in a prominent location.
  1. Record Prints: Organize Marked-up Record Prints into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.

## 2.02 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
  1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
  3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
  4. For each principal product, indicate whether Record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as Record Product Data.
  5. Note related Change Orders, Record Product Data, and Record Drawings where applicable.

## 2.03 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
  - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  - 2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
  - 3. Note related Change Orders, Record Specifications, and Record Drawings where applicable.

## 2.04 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

- A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for Project Record Document purposes. Post changes and modifications to Project Record Documents as they occur; do not wait until the end of Project.
- B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store Record Documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use Project Record Documents for construction purposes. Maintain Record Documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to Project Record Documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

END OF SECTION 017839

SECTION 024119

SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Selective demolition of building elements for alteration purposes.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 1000 - Summary: Limitations on Contractor's use of site and premises.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS -- NOT USED

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL PROCEDURES AND PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with applicable codes and regulations for demolition operations and safety of adjacent structures and the public.
  - 1. Obtain required permits.
  - 2. Take precautions to prevent catastrophic or uncontrolled collapse of structures to be removed; do not allow worker or public access within range of potential collapse of unstable structures.
  - 3. Provide, erect, and maintain temporary barriers and security devices.
  - 4. Use physical barriers to prevent access to areas that could be hazardous to workers or the public.
  - 5. Conduct operations to minimize effects on and interference with adjacent structures and occupants.
  - 6. Do not close or obstruct roadways or sidewalks without permit.
  - 7. Conduct operations to minimize obstruction of public and private entrances and exits; do not obstruct required exits at any time; protect persons using entrances and exits from removal operations.
  - 8. Obtain written permission from owners of adjacent properties when demolition equipment will traverse, infringe upon or limit access to their property.
- B. Do not begin removal until receipt of notification to proceed from Owner.
- C. Protect existing structures and other elements that are not to be removed.
  - 1. Provide bracing and shoring.
  - 2. Prevent movement or settlement of adjacent structures.
  - 3. Stop work immediately if adjacent structures appear to be in danger.
- D. If hazardous materials are discovered during removal operations, stop work and notify Architect and Owner immediately; hazardous materials include regulated asbestos containing materials, lead, PCB's, and mercury.

### 3.02 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION FOR ALTERATIONS

- A. Drawings showing existing construction and utilities are based on casual field observation and existing record documents only.
  - 1. Verify that construction and utility arrangements are as shown.
  - 2. Report discrepancies to Architect before disturbing existing installation.
  - 3. Beginning of demolition work constitutes acceptance of existing conditions that would be apparent upon examination prior to starting demolition.
- B. Separate areas in which demolition is being conducted from other areas that are still occupied.
  - 1. Provide, erect, and maintain temporary dustproof partitions of construction in accordance with General Conditions (OC-15) .
- C. Maintain weatherproof exterior building enclosure except for interruptions required for replacement or modifications; take care to prevent water and humidity damage.
- D. Remove existing work as indicated and as required to accomplish new work.
  - 1. Remove items indicated on drawings.
- E. Services (Including but not limited to HVAC, Plumbing, Fire Protection, Electrical, and Telecommunications): Remove existing systems and equipment as indicated.
  - 1. Maintain existing active systems that are to remain in operation; maintain access to equipment and operational components.
  - 2. Where existing active systems serve occupied facilities but are to be replaced with new services, maintain existing systems in service until new systems are complete and ready for service.
  - 3. See Supplementary General Conditions for other limitations on outages and required notifications.
  - 4. Verify that abandoned services serve only abandoned facilities before removal.
  - 5. Remove abandoned pipe, ducts, conduits, and equipment; remove back to source of supply where possible, otherwise cap stub and tag with identification.
- F. Protect existing work to remain.
  - 1. Prevent movement of structure; provide shoring and bracing if necessary.
  - 2. Perform cutting to accomplish removals neatly and as specified for cutting new work.
  - 3. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during removal work.
  - 4. Patch as specified for patching new work.

### 3.03 DEBRIS AND WASTE REMOVAL

- A. Remove debris, junk, and trash from site.
- B. Leave site in clean condition, ready for subsequent work.
- C. Clean up spillage and wind-blown debris from public and private lands.

END OF SECTION 024119



SECTION 033000

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section specifies cast-in place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes, for the following:
1. Footings.
  2. Foundation walls and piers.
  3. Slabs-on-grade.

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with fly ash; subject to compliance with requirements.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture, indicating quantity of each ingredient and admixtures proposed or required. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
1. For mix designs based on field experience, include individual strength test results, standard deviation, and required average compressive strength calculations.
  2. For mix designs based on trial, include proportions, test results, and graphic analysis indicating average compressive strength.
  3. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
- C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.
- D. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- E. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with requirements:
1. Aggregates. Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali aggregate reactivity.
- F. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers; indicate compatibility with application of surface applied flooring products where applicable:
1. Cementitious materials.
  2. Admixtures.
  3. Form materials and form-release agents.
  4. Steel reinforcement and accessories.
  5. Curing compounds.
  6. Bonding agents.
  7. Adhesives.
  8. Joint-filler strips.

- 9. Repair materials.
- G. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements to determine compliance with specified tolerances.
- H. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.
  - 1. Include copies of delivery tickets complying with ASTM C 94 for each load of concrete delivered to the site.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94 requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  - 1. Comply with requirements of the Concrete Manufacturers Association "Concrete Plant Standards."
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from one source, and obtain admixtures through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."
- E. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
  - 1. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," Sections 1 through 5.
  - 2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
- F. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
- G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
  - 1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:
    - a. Contractor's superintendent.
    - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
    - c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
    - d. Concrete subcontractor.
  - 2. Review the following:
    - a. Coordination with special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control.
    - b. Concrete finishes and finishing.
    - c. Cold- and hot-weather concreting procedures.
    - d. Curing procedures.
    - e. Construction contraction and isolation joints and joint-filler strips.
    - f. Anchor rod and anchorage device installation tolerances.
    - g. Steel reinforcement installation.
    - h. Floor and slab flatness and levelness measurement.
    - i. Concrete repair procedures.

- j. Concrete protection.

## **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.
  - 1. Store steel reinforcement off ground, under suitable cover or enclosed.
  - 2. Maintain ease of access for inspection and identification of materials.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 FORM-FACING MATERIALS**

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
  - 1. Metal or other approved panel materials.
  - 2. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
    - a. High-density overlay, Class 1 or better.
    - b. Medium-density overlay, Class 1 or better; mill-release agent treated and edge sealed.
    - c. B-B (Concrete Form), Class 1 or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
- B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- C. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.
- D. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
  - 1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
- E. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
  - 1. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
  - 2. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes no larger than 1 inch in diameter in concrete surface.
  - 3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

### **2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT**

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed.
  - 1. Include supplementary requirement S1.
- B. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, as drawn.
- C. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

## **2.3 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES**

- A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:

## **2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS**

- A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
  - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II. Supplement with the following:
    - a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F.
- B. Aggregates, General: Tested and passed within 6 months of use for the following:
  - 1. Gradation: ASTM C 136.
  - 2. Material Passing No. 200 Sieve: ASTM C 117.
  - 3. Organic Impurities: ASTM C 40.
  - 4. Soundness: ASTM C 88.
  - 5. Clay Lumps: ASTM C 142.
  - 6. Abrasiveness of Coarse Materials: ASTM C 131.
  - 7. Soft Particles: ASTM C 235.
  - 8. Freeze/Thaw Resistance: ASTM C 66, ASTM C 682.
- C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 3M, coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
  - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: As indicated in design mixes.
  - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- D. Water: ASTM C 94 and potable.

## **2.5 ADMIXTURES**

- A. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- B. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
  - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
  - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type B.
  - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.
  - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type F.
  - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type G.
  - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017, Type II.
- C. Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete and complying with ASTM C 494, Type C.
  - 1. Products:
    - a. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Eucon CIA.

- b. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co.; DCI.
- c. Master Builders, Inc.; Rheocrete CNI.
- d. Sika Corporation; Sika CNI.

## 2.6 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
  - 1. Products:
    - a. Burke by Edoco; BurkeFilm.
    - b. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
    - c. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Aquafilm.
    - d. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Eucobar.
    - e. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-Con.
    - f. MBT Protection and Repair, Div. of ChemRex; Confilm.
    - g. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sealtight Evapre.
    - h. Sika Corporation, Inc.; SikaFilm.
    - i. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Finishing Aid.
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately **9 oz./sq. yd.** when dry.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Clear, Solvent-Borne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.
  - 1. Products:
    - a. Burke by Edoco; Cureseal 1315.
    - b. ChemMasters; Spray-Cure & Seal Plus.
    - c. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Sealcure 1315.
    - d. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Super Diamond Clear.
    - e. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Lumiseal Plus.
    - f. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; CS-309/30.
    - g. Sonneborn, Div. of ChemRex; Kure-N-Seal 5.
    - h. Tamms Industries, Inc.; LusterSeal 300.

## 2.7 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.
- B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.

## 2.8 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
  - 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.

3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109.

## **2.9 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL**

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
  1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
  2. Design mixes to meet or exceed each requirement specified. Adjust mix design to meet the most stringent requirement.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
  1. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
- C. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.06 percent by weight of cement.
- D. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Use water-reducing, high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
  2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
  3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.
  4. Use set-accelerating corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.

## **2.10 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS**

- A. Footings: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi at 28 days.
  2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio by Weight: 0.50.
  3. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 475 lb/cu. yd.
  4. Maximum Nominal Aggregate Size: 2 inches.
  5. Maximum Slump Limit: 3-1/2 inches, plus 1 inch.
- B. Slabs-on-Grade (Exterior): Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
  2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio by Weight: 0.45.
  3. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 590 lb/cu. yd.
  4. Maximum Nominal Aggregate Size: 1 inch.
  5. Maximum Slump Limit: 3-1/2 inches, plus 1 inch.
  - Air Content: 4 to 6 percent.
- C. Foundations/Piers: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
  2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio by Weight: 0.45.
  3. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 590 lb./cu.yd.
  4. Maximum Nominal Aggregate Size: 1-1/2 inches.
  5. Maximum Slump Limit: 3-1/2 inches, plus 1 inch.
  6. Air Content: 4 to 6 percent.

## **2.11 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT**

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."
- B. Bend steel reinforcement in accordance with ACI 318.
  - 1. Do not heat steel reinforcement for bending. Bend or straighten bars cold.
  - 2. Do not bend partially embedded steel reinforcement, except as approved.

## **2.12 CONCRETE MIXING**

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94, paragraphs 1 to 15 and 18 only, and furnish batch ticket information.
  - 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
  - 1. For mixer capacity of 1 cu. yd. or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
  - 2. For mixer capacity larger than 1 cu. yd., increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd.
  - 3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixture time, quantity, and amount of water added. Record approximate location of final deposit in structure.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 FORMWORK**

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
  - 1. Class A, 1/8 inch for smooth-formed finished surfaces.
  - 2. Class C, 1/2 inch for rough-formed finished surfaces.
- D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
- E. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
  - 1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
  - 2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
- F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- G. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.

- H. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- I. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
- J. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- K. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- L. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

### **3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS**

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

### **3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS**

- A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F for 24 hours after placing concrete, if concrete is hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations are maintained.
- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

### **3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT**

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.
  - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
  - 2. Allow six hours between completion of reinforcement installation and placement of concrete for special inspection.
- B. Clean reinforcement of dirt, grease, scale, loose rust, oil, paint and other foreign matter prior to installation.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
- D. Splicing of Reinforcement: Conform to ACI 318 Chapter 12 for wired lap splices and embedment lengths.



- E. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- F. Install welded wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.
- G. Maintain required concrete cover dimensions indicated. Coordinate placement of conduit and inserts with reinforcement. Protect installed reinforcement from damage or displacement prior to and during concrete placement.

### **3.5 JOINTS**

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
  - 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
  - 2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
  - 3. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
  - 1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
  - 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch-wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
  - 1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
  - 3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- E. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

### **3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT**

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed and corrections made.
- B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect.

- C. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.
  - 1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
  - 1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
  - 2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
    - a. Supplement mechanical consolidation by hand, spading, rodding, or tamping.
  - 3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
  - 1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
  - 2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
  - 3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
  - 4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
  - 5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.
- F. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
  - 1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
  - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
  - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- G. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
  - 1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  - 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

### **3.7 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES**

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
  - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
  - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, to receive a rubbed finish, or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.
- C. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed finished as-cast concrete where indicated:
  - 1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
  - 2. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix one part portland cement to one and one-half parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.
  - 3. Cork-Floated Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply a stiff grout. Mix one part portland cement and one part fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding agent and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Compress grout into voids by grinding surface. In a swirling motion, finish surface with a cork float.
- D. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

### **3.8 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS**

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exposed concrete platforms, steps, and ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

### **3.9 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS**

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.

### **3.10 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING**

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the remainder of the curing period.
- D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.
- E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
  - 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
    - a. Water.
    - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
    - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
  - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
  - 3. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

### **3.11 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS**

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of one part portland cement to two and one-half parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
  - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension in solid concrete, but not less than 1 inch in depth. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.

2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
  3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
  2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
  3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
  4. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
  5. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
  6. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

### **3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage a special inspector and qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Inspections:
1. Steel reinforcement placement.
  2. Steel reinforcement welding.
  3. Headed bolts and studs.
  4. Verification of use of required design mixture.
  5. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
  6. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
  7. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.

- C. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
  2. Slump: ASTM C 143; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; ASTM C 173, volumetric method, for structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
  5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31.
    - a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
    - a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
  7. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
  8. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
  9. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
  10. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42 or by other methods as directed by Architect.
  11. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
  12. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION 03 30 00

SECTION 033543

DYE STAINED COLORED AND POLISHED CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Dye stained concrete slabs-on-grade.
  - 2. Grinding and polishing concrete surfaces.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 03 Section "Cast-In-Place Concrete" for general applications of concrete and coordination of sample submittal and color selection.
  - 2. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for colored sealant for joints.

1.02 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM C309 "Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete."
  - 2. ASTM C494 "Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete."

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's complete technical data sheets for the following:
  - 1. Concrete dye stain.
  - 2. Chemical lithium hardener
  - 3. Final finish
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts showing full range of colors available.
- C. Qualification Data: For firms indicated in "Quality Assurance" Article, including list of completed projects.
- D. Submit the following in accordance with Section "Submittal Procedures."
  - 1. Product data for each grinding machine, including all types of grinding heads, dust extraction system, joint filler, concrete densifying impregnator, penetrating sealer, and any other chemicals used in the process.
  - 2. Shop drawing indicating control joint location in concrete slabs.
  - 3. Installation methods including finishing of floor surface adjacent to walls.
- E. Applicators must submit a copy of their attendance to the manufacture's Polished Concrete Certified Training Program.
- F. Polished concrete samples: For each Polished Concrete finish required.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer with experience in the production of specified products.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An installer with 5 year's experience with work of similar scope and quality.

- C. Obtain each specified material from same source and maintain high degree of consistency in workmanship throughout Project.
- D. Notification of manufacturer's authorized representative shall be given at least 1-week before start of Work.
- E. Certified Applicators:
  - 1. Consult manufacturer for a list of Certified Applicators in your area.
- F. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at project site to comply with requirements in Section "Project Management and Coordination."
- G. Installer/Applicator shall be certified by chemical manufacturer and shall provide adequate number of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary craft.
- H. Manufacturer's Certification: Provide a letter of acknowledgement from both the equipment and chemical manufacturer stating that the installer is a trained applicator and is familiar with proper procedures and installation requirements recommended by the manufacturer.

#### 1.05 DYE STAINED GROUND AND POLISHED CONCRETE MOCKUP

- A. At location on Project selected by Architect, place and finish 6 feet by 6 feet area.
- B. Construct mockup using processes and techniques intended for use on permanent work, including curing procedures. Include samples of control, construction, and expansion joints in sample panels. Mockup shall be produced by the individual workers who will perform the work for the Project.
- C. Edges should be included in mockup.
- D. Accepted mockup provides visual standard for work of Section.
- E. Mockup shall remain through completion of work for use as a quality standard for finished work.
- F. Remove mockup when directed.

#### 1.06 ENVIRONMENTAL LIMITATIONS:

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature and moisture content, ambient temperature and humidity, ventilation and other conditions affecting chemical performance.
- B. Application of finish and dye system shall take place a minimum of 21 days prior to fixture and trim installation and/or substantial completion.
- C. Finish concrete area shall be closed to traffic during finish floor application and after application for the time as recommended by the manufacturer.

#### 1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. All chemicals: Comply with manufacturer's instructions. Deliver in original, unopened packaging. Store in dry conditions.

#### 1.08 PRE-JOB CONFERENCE

- A. One week prior to placement of concrete a meeting will be held to discuss the Project and application materials.
  - 1. Owner, Architect, General Contractor, Subcontractor, Ready-Mix Concrete Representative, and a Manufacturer's Representative be present.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURER

- A. Products: Provide the basis of design product, L. M. SCOFIELD COMPANY, Douglasville, Georgia 1-800-800-9900., as indicated on the Color and Finish Schedule or an equivalent product matching the basis of design products, characteristics and color.
- B. Installation of Product shall be only by a Certified Applicator. For a list of Certified Applicators, contact Manufacturer.

### 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Solvent based color liquid dye concentrate.
- B. Provide manufacturer's companion Lithium Densifier and final finish product to help ensure color and protection.
- C. Acceptable product:
  - 1. SCOFIELD Formula One Lithium Densifier MP by L. M. SCOFIELD COMPANY.
  - 2. Alternate manufacturers of comparable products:
    - a. Davis Colors.
    - b. QC Construction Products.
- D. Chemical Hardener/Densifiers:
  - 1. Materials:
    - a. SCOFIELD Formula One-LD MP is a high performing hardening and dust proofing compound that is chemically reactive and permanently bonds to concrete formulated to be used in conjunction with integrally colored concrete as well as uncolored concrete.
    - b. SCOFIELD Formula One Guard-W is water-borne acrylic penetrating material formulated to protect polished concrete from normal staining and to enhance gloss.
  - 2. Planetary grinding equipment must be capable of providing a multiple step process starting with coarse metal bond diamonds and ending with fine resin bond diamonds.
- E. SUBSTITUTIONS: The use of products other than those specified will be considered if the substitution request follows the requirements indicated in Section 01 60 00. This request shall be accompanied by the following:
  - 1. A certificate of compliance from material manufacturer stating that proposed products meet or exceed requirements of this Section.
  - 2. Documented proof that proposed materials have a 5-year proven record of performance, confirmed by at least 5 local projects that Architect can examine.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 POLISHED CONCRETE APPLICATION

- A. Applicator shall examine the areas and conditions under which work of this section will be provided and the General Contractor shall correct conditions detrimental to the timely and proper completion of the work and the Applicator shall not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are resolved. Unless determined prior to bid, the condition of the floor before the polishing process is the responsibility of the General Contractor. The floor must be protected from damage during general construction.
- B. Grind the concrete floor with metal bond diamonds removing construction debris until the specified Grade is obtained. The first cut must be performed with a metal bond diamond.

- C. After the 400 grit resin bond diamond has been used apply liquid dye and liquid hardener according to the manufacturer's current literature. Allow 12 hours to cure before continuing.
- D. Finish honing and polishing the floor to desired Class.
- E. After the polishing process has been completed apply protection guard material according to the products current technical bulletin. Allow to cure for 2-4 hours.
- F. Upon completion, the work shall be ready for final inspection and acceptance by the customer.

### 3.02 PROTECTION

- A. The General Contractor is responsible for using Temporary Floor Protection throughout the project to safeguard the surface quality of concrete slabs before and after application of decorative finishes or installations of other materials.
- B. All concrete floors that will be not be covered by other materials will be protected throughout the project. The concrete slab must be treated as a finished floor at all times during construction.
- C. Temporary Floor Protection will be removed only while finish work to the concrete is being performed and will be replaced after the final finish has cured sufficiently.

### 3.03 CLEANING

- A. The work area shall be kept clean and free of debris at all times.
- B. Remove slurry and dust from adjoining surfaces as necessary.
- C. Dispose of material containers in accordance with local regulations.
- D. Protect finished work until fully cured per manufacturer's recommendations.

### 3.04 SCHEDULES

- A. CUT AND SHINE LEVELS:
  - 1. Cut Level (Depth of cut).
    - a. Grade 2-3.
  - 2. Shine Level (Gloss level).
    - a. Class 1.

END OF SECTION 033543

SECTION 035400

CAST UNDERLAYMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Liquid-applied self-leveling floor underlayment.
  - 1. Use cementitious type at existing areas for required leveling.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: Alteration project procedures; selective demolition for remodeling.

1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES

- A. See Section 012100 - Allowances, for cash allowances affecting this section.

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C109/C109M - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars (Using 2-in. or (50-mm) Cube Specimens).
- B. ASTM C348 - Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Hydraulic-Cement Mortars.
- C. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's data sheets documenting physical characteristics and product limitations of underlayment materials. Include information on mixing instructions.
- B. Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section, and approved by manufacturer.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Keep dry and protect from direct sun exposure, freezing, and ambient temperature greater than 105 degrees F.

1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install underlayment until floor penetrations and peripheral work are complete.
- B. Maintain minimum ambient temperatures of 50 degrees F 24 hours before, during and 72 hours after installation of underlayment.
- C. During the curing process, ventilate spaces to remove excess moisture.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Cementitious Underlayment:
  - 1. ARDEX Engineered Cements; ARDEX K 15: [www.ardexamericas.com](http://www.ardexamericas.com). (Basis of Design)
  - 2. LATICRETE International, Inc; LATICRETE SUPERCAP SC500 with LATICRETE SUPERCAP Primer Plus: [www.laticretesupercap.com/#sle](http://www.laticretesupercap.com/#sle).
  - 3. W. R. Meadows, Inc; Floor-Top STG: [www.wrmeadows.com/#sle](http://www.wrmeadows.com/#sle).
- B. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

### 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Underlayment: Blended cement mix, that when mixed with water in accordance with manufacturer's directions will produce self-leveling underlayment with the following properties:
  - 1. Compressive Strength: Minimum 4000 psi after 28 days, tested per ASTM C109/C109M.
  - 2. Flexural Strength: Minimum 1000 psi after 28 days, tested per ASTM C348.
  - 3. Density: 125 pounds per cubic foot, nominal.
  - 4. Final Set Time: 1-1/2 to 2 hours, maximum.
  - 5. Thickness: Capable of thicknesses from feather edge to maximum 3-1/2 inch.
  - 6. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread/Smoke developed index of 0/0 in accordance with ASTM E84.
- B. Water: Potable and not detrimental to underlayment mix materials.
- C. Primer: Manufacturer's recommended type.
- D. Joint and Crack Filler: Latex based filler, as recommended by manufacturer.

### 2.03 MIXING

- A. Site mix materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Mix to self-leveling consistency without over-watering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that substrate surfaces are clean, dry, unfrozen, do not contain petroleum byproducts, or other compounds detrimental to underlayment material bond to substrate.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Remove substrate surface irregularities. Fill voids and deck joints with filler. Finish smooth.
- B. Vacuum clean surfaces.
- C. Prime substrate in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Allow to dry.
- D. Close floor openings.

### 3.03 APPLICATION

- A. Install underlayment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Pump or pour material onto substrate. Do not retemper or add water.
  - 1. Pump, move, and screed while the material is still highly flowable.
  - 2. Be careful not to create cold joints.
  - 3. Wear spiked shoes while working in the wet material to avoid leaving marks.
- C. Place to required thickness, with top surface level to 1/8 inch in 10 ft.
- D. Place before partition installation.
- E. If a fine, feathered edge is desired, steel trowel the edge after initial set, but before it is completely hard.

### 3.04 CURING

- A. Once underlayment starts to set, prohibit foot traffic until final set has been reached.
- B. Air cure in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect against direct sunlight, heat, and wind; prevent rapid drying to avoid shrinkage and cracking.
- B. Do not permit traffic over unprotected floor underlayment surfaces.

END OF SECTION 035400

SECTION 044301

STACKED STONE VENEER

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Prefabricated natural stone veneer rock panel wall system for exterior and interior use.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit sample panel, approximately 24 by 24 inches, containing fullsize samples of specified rock panel system illustrating anticipated variation in color and texture complete with specified sealants.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type required by this section, with minimum three years of documented experience.

1.04 MOCK-UP

- A. Construct stone wall mock-up, 4 feet long by 4 feet wide; include stone anchor accessories, corner condition, and typical control joint in mock-up.
- B. Locate where directed.
- C. Mock-up may remain as part of the Work.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect stone from discoloration during storage on site.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Stone Panel System:
  - 1. Realstone Systems; Product Ledgestone & AccentStone: [www.realstonesystems.com](http://www.realstonesystems.com).
- B. Other Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - 1. Coronado Stone Products: [www.coronado.com](http://www.coronado.com).
  - 2. Cultured Stone: [www.culturedstone.com](http://www.culturedstone.com).
- C. Substitutions: See General Conditions and Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 STONE

- A. Rock Panel Stone Color: See Finish Specifications.
- B. Individual Rock Panel Size: Random.
- C. Rock Panel Thickness: Varies randomly from 1/2 inch to 1 inch.
- D. Panels fabricated using multiple pieces of stone to different rectangular sizes. Utilize individual stone pieces of varying heights and lengths and thickness to achieve desired 3 dimensional aesthetic effects.
- E. Adhere individual stones together using two part epoxy adhesive.

## 2.03 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Polymer Modified Thinset
  - 1. Polymer Modified Thinset for tile-set applications: meeting or exceeding ANSI 118.4 & ANSI 118.11 standards; required for use in wet or dry applications.
- B. Water: Potable

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that support work and site conditions are ready to receive work of this section.

### 3.02 SETTING OF ROCK PANEL SYSTEM, GENERAL

- A. Install stone veneer panels in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Perform necessary field cutting and trimming as panels are set.
  - 1. Use wet tile saws with diamond blades to cut stone. Cut lines straight and true, with edges eased slightly to prevent snipping.
- C. Lay out stone veneer panels prior to setting with mortar to ensure proper fit and alignment.
- D. Scribe and field-cut stone veneer as necessary to fit at obstructions. Produce neat joints of size specified or indicated. Fix stone veneer panels as tight as possible to eliminate any visible gaps or unsightly joints
- E. Install corner units first.
- F. Unusual conditions may require additional information in this article.
- G. Install remaining stone veneer panels with vertical end joints staggered randomly to form an offset pattern. Never stack bond Norstone rock panels.
- H. Install stone working from the bottom up using mortarless joints.
- I. Rake out perimeter and expansion joints for sealant to full depth of system before setting mortar has hardened. Rake joints with square bottoms and clean sides.
- J. Expansion- and Control-Joint Installation: Locate and install according to Drawings and Shop Drawings.
- K. Provide sealant joints of widths and at locations indicated.
  - 1. Keep sealant joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
  - 2. Sealing joints is specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealers."

### 3.03 INSTALLATION OVER METAL LATH

- A. Using a plasterer's or tile setter's trowel, apply scratch coat over metal lath 1/2 to 3/4 inch thick to prepared surface area to comply with ASTM C 926. Use a toothed scraper, notched trowel or small piece of lath to lightly rake horizontal grooves in the scratch coat. Allow scratch coat to dry for 24 hours then apply Laticrete 9235 or Laticrete Hydroban Waterproofing Membrane.
- B. Coat backs of stone veneer Rock Panel system units and face of scratch coat with cement-paste bond coat, then butter both surfaces with setting mortar at least 3/8 inch thick. Tap stone veneer Rock Panels into place, completely filling space between the stone veneer and scratch coat.

### 3.04 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean Rock Panel system as work progresses. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- B. Final Cleaning: Clean Rock Panel system no fewer than six days after completion of pointing and sealing, using clean water and stiff-bristle fiber brushes. **WARNING** Do not use wire brushes, acid-type cleaning agents, cleaning agents containing caustic compounds or abrasives, or other materials or methods that could damage stone.

END OF SECTION 044301



SECTION 055000

METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Steel framing and supports for ceiling-hung toilet compartments.
  - 2. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
  - 3. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
  - 4. Shelf angles.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section:
  - 1. Loose steel lintels.
  - 2. Anchor bolts, and steel pipe sleeves indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
- C. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, wedge-type inserts, and other items cast into concrete.

**1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Paint products.
  - 2. Grout.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for metal fabrications.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and finish of extruded nosing.
- D. Welding certificates.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

**1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

## **1.6 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages and steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 METALS, GENERAL**

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

### **2.2 FERROUS METALS**

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36.
- B. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500, cold-formed steel tubing.
- C. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, standard weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.

### **2.3 FASTENERS**

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 316 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
  - 1. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593; with hex nuts, ASTM F 594; and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 2.
- D. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- E. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3.
- F. Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1.
- G. Wood Screws: Flat head, ASME B18.6.1.
- H. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.1.
- I. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B18.21.1.
- J. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

- K. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47 malleable iron or ASTM A 27 cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.
- L. Post-Installed Anchors: Chemical anchors.
  - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 2 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593, and nuts, ASTM F 594.

## **2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- B. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- D. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- E. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.

## **2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL**

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.

- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.

## **2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS**

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
- C. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.

## **2.7 SHELF ANGLES**

- A. Fabricate shelf angles from steel angles of sizes indicated and for attachment to concrete framing. Provide horizontally slotted holes to receive 3/4-inch bolts, spaced not more than 6 inches from ends and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide mitered and welded units at corners.
  - 2. Provide open joints in shelf angles at expansion and control joints. Make open joint approximately 2 inches larger than expansion or control joint.
- B. For cavity walls, provide vertical channel brackets to support angles from backup masonry and concrete.
- C. Galvanize shelf angles located in exterior walls.

## **2.8 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM**

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
- B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
  - 1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.
- C. Galvanize exterior miscellaneous steel trim.

## **2.9 METAL BOLLARDS**

- A. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe.

## **2.10 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS**

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
- B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span but not less than 8 inches unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

## **2.11 FINISHES, GENERAL**

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- C. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

## **2.12 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES**

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
  - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
- B. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Shop prime with universal shop primer unless indicated.
- C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:
  - 1. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 2. Other Items: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- D. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
  - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## **3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for

use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.

- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:
  - 1. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.

### **3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS**

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.

### **3.3 INSTALLING METAL BOLLARDS**

- A. Fill metal-capped bollards solidly with concrete and allow concrete to cure seven days before installing.
- B. Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align bollards in holes 3 inches above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace bollards in position until concrete has cured.
- C. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 05 50 00

SECTION 061000

ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Framing with dimension lumber.
  - 2. Incidental framing with timber.
  - 3. Framing with engineered wood products.
  - 4. Wood blocking and nailers.
  - 5. Utility shelving.
  - 6. Plywood backing panels.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 06 Section "Heavy Timber Construction."
  - 2. Division 06 Section "Sheathing."

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal or greater but less than 5 inches nominal in least dimension.
- C. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal or greater in least dimension.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  - 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
  - 4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
  - 5. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.
- B. Fastener Patterns: Full-size templates for fasteners in exposed framing.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
  - 1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.

2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
3. Engineered wood products.
4. Power-driven fasteners.
5. Powder-actuated fasteners.
6. Expansion anchors.
7. Metal framing anchors.

## **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Stack lumber flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect lumber from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL**

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.
  3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
  4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 19 percent unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Engineered Wood Products: Provide engineered wood products acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.
1. Allowable Design Stresses: Provide engineered wood products with allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer that meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

### **2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER**

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPAC U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with the ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with the ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with the ground.
1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.
  2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.



- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
  - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
  - 1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
  - 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
  - 3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
  - 4. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
  - 5. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

### 2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
  - 1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
  - 2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
  - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece.
- E. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- F. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
  - 1. Concealed blocking.
  - 2. Framing for non-load-bearing partitions.
  - 3. Framing for non-load-bearing exterior walls.
  - 4. Roof construction.
  - 5. Plywood backing panels.

## **2.4 DIMENSION LUMBER FRAMING**

- A. Maximum Moisture Content: 19 percent for 2-inch nominal thickness or less, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Species and Grade: As indicated on drawings for the following uses:
  - 1. Exterior and load-bearing walls.
  - 2. Non-load-bearing interior partitions.
  - 3. Framing other than non-load-bearing interior partitions.
  - 4. Ceiling joists.
  - 5. Joists, rafters, and other framing not listed above.
- C. Species and Grade: Any species and grade with a modulus of elasticity of at least 1,400,000 psi and an extreme fiber stress in bending of at least 1050 psi for 2-inch nominal thickness and 12-inch nominal width for single-member use for the following:
  - 1. Exterior and load-bearing walls.
  - 2. Framing other than non-load-bearing interior partitions.

## **2.5 TIMBER FRAMING**

- A. Provide timber framing complying with the following requirements, according to grading rules of grading agency indicated:
  - 1. Species and Grade: Spruce-Pine-Fir, No.1 grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - 2. Maximum Moisture Content: 20 percent.
  - 3. Additional Restriction: Free of heart centers.

## **2.6 ENGINEERED WOOD PRODUCTS**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of engineered wood product from single source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Laminated-Veneer Lumber: Structural composite lumber made from wood veneers with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, evaluated and monitored according to ASTM D 5456 and manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D 2559.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Boise Cascade Corporation.
    - b. Georgia-Pacific.
    - c. Louisiana-Pacific Corporation.
    - d. Weldwood of Canada Limited; Subsidiary of International Paper Corporation.
    - e. Weyerhaeuser Company.
  - 2. Extreme Fiber Stress in Bending, Edgewise: 2900 psi for 12-inch nominal- depth members.
  - 3. Modulus of Elasticity, Edgewise: 2,000,000 psi.

## **2.7 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER**

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
  - 1. Blocking.
  - 2. Nailers.
  - 3. Furring.
  - 4. Utility shelving.

- B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction or No. 2 grade lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species:
  - 1. Northern species; NLGA.
  - 2. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.
- C. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.

## **2.8 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS**

- A. Telephone and Electrical Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 3/4-inch nominal thickness.

## **2.9 FASTENERS**

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners of Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
- E. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1.
- F. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
- G. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2.

## **2.10 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS**

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Alpine Engineered Products, Inc.
  - 2. Cleveland Steel Specialty Co.
  - 3. KC Metals Products, Inc.
  - 4. Harlen Metal Products, Inc.
  - 5. Phoenix Metal Products, Inc.
  - 6. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
  - 7. USP Structural Connectors.
- B. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated of basis-of-design products. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 coating designation.
  - 1. Use for interior locations unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Hot-Dip, Heavy-Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M; structural steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G185 coating designation; and not less than 0.036 inch.
  - 1. Use for wood-preservative-treated lumber and where indicated.
- E. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
  - 1. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.

## **2.11 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- B. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch.
  - 1. Use as a separator between preservative-treated wood and metal decking.
- C. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chlorpyrifos as its active ingredient.
  - 1. Use for exposed ends of posts and beams.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate nailers, blocking, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- B. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. Install fire-retardant treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.
- E. Metal Framing Anchors: Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- F. Install sill sealer gasket to form continuous seal between sill plates and foundation walls.
- G. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
  - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.

- I. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
  - 2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and 2-inch nominal- thickness.
  - 3. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than 100 sq. ft. and to solidly fill space below partitions.
  - 4. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than 20 feet o.c.
- J. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- K. Comply with AWP A M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
  - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
  - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- L. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
  - 2. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
- M. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.
- N. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.
  - 1. Comply with approved fastener patterns where applicable. Before fastening, mark fastener locations, using a template made of sheet metal, plastic, or cardboard.
  - 2. Use finishing nails unless otherwise indicated. Countersink nail heads and fill holes with wood filler.
  - 3. Use common nails as approved for compliance with structural requirements. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads.

### **3.2 WOOD BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION**

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.

- D. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material.

### **3.3 WOOD FURRING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.

### **3.4 WALL AND PARTITION FRAMING INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Provide single bottom plate and double top plates using members of 2-inch nominal thickness whose widths equal that of studs, except single top plate may be used for non-load-bearing partitions. Fasten plates to supporting construction unless otherwise indicated.
1. For exterior walls, provide 2-by-6-inch nominal- size wood studs spaced 16" o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  2. For interior partitions and walls, provide 2-by-4-inch nominal- size wood studs spaced 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Provide continuous horizontal blocking at midheight of partitions more than 96 inches high, using members of 2-inch nominal thickness and of same width as wall or partitions.
- B. Construct corners and intersections with three or more studs.
- C. Frame openings with multiple studs and headers. Provide nailed header members of thickness equal to width of studs. Support headers on jamb studs.
1. For non-load-bearing partitions, provide double-jamb studs and headers not less than 4-inch nominal depth for openings 48 inches and less in width, 6-inch nominal depth for openings 48 to 72 inches in width, 8-inch nominal depth for openings 72 to 120 inches in width, and not less than 10-inch nominal depth for openings 10 to 12 feet in width.
  2. For load-bearing walls, provide double-jamb studs for openings 60 inches and less in width, and triple-jamb studs for wider openings. Provide headers of depth indicated.

### **3.5 CEILING JOIST AND RAFTER FRAMING INSTALLATION**

- A. Ceiling Joists: Install ceiling joists with crown edge up and complying with requirements specified above for floor joists. Face nail to ends of parallel rafters.
1. Where ceiling joists are at right angles to rafters, provide additional short joists parallel to rafters from wall plate to first joist; nail to ends of rafters and to top plate and nail to first joist or anchor with framing anchors or metal straps. Provide 1-by-8-inch nominal- size or 2-by-4-inch nominal- size stringers spaced 48 inches o.c. crosswise over main ceiling joists.
- B. Rafters: Notch to fit exterior wall plates and toe nail or use metal framing anchors. Double rafters to form headers and trimmers at openings in roof framing, if any, and support with metal hangers. Where rafters abut at ridge, place directly opposite each other and nail to ridge member or use metal ridge hangers.
1. At valleys, provide double-valley rafters of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and 2 inches deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against valley rafters.
  2. At hips, provide hip rafter of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and 2 inches deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against hip rafter.
- C. Provide collar beams (ties) as indicated or, if not indicated, provide 1-by-6-inch nominal- size boards between every third pair of rafters, but not more than 48 inches o.c. Locate below ridge member, at third point of rafter span. Cut ends to fit roof slope and nail to rafters.

- D. Provide special framing as indicated for eaves, overhangs, dormers, and similar conditions if any.

### **3.6 TIMBER FRAMING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install timber with crown edge up and provide not less than 4 inches of bearing on supports. Provide continuous members unless otherwise indicated; tie together over supports as indicated if not continuous.
- B. Where beams or girders are framed into pockets of exterior concrete or masonry walls, provide 1/2-inch air space at sides and ends of wood members.
- C. Install wood posts using metal anchors indicated.
- D. Treat ends of timber beams and posts exposed to weather by dipping in water-repellent preservative for 15 minutes.

### **3.7 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 06 10 00

SECTION 061323

HEAVY TIMBER CONSTRUCTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes framing using timbers and decorative timber trusses.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for dimension lumber items associated with heavy timber construction.

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Timbers: Lumber of 5 inches nominal or greater in least dimension.
- B. Inspection agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  - 1. NeLMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association.
  - 2. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority.
  - 3. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  - 4. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For timber connectors.
  - 1. For timber connectors, include installation instructions.
- B. Certificates of Inspection: Issued by lumber grading agency for exposed timber not marked with grade stamp.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Timber Standard: Comply with AITC 108, "Standard for Heavy Timber Construction."

**1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Schedule delivery of heavy timber construction to avoid extended on-site storage and to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 TIMBER**

- A. General: Comply with DOC PS 20 and with grading rules of lumber grading agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review as applicable.
  - 1. Factory mark each item of timber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - 2. For exposed timber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, apply grade stamps to surfaces that will not be exposed to view, or omit grade stamps and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.



- B. Timber Species and Grade: Hem-Fir, Spruce-Pine-Fir or Southern Yellow Pine; No. 1, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWP.
- C. Dressing: Provide dressed timber (S4S) unless otherwise indicated.
- D. End Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, colorless wood sealer that is effective in retarding the transmission of moisture at cross-grain cuts and is compatible with indicated finish.
- E. Penetrating Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, penetrating wood sealer that is compatible with indicated finish.

## **2.2 TIMBER CONNECTORS**

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Structural-steel shapes, plates, and flat bars complying with ASTM A 36.
- B. Fabricate beam hangers from steel with 1/4-inch stirrups and 1/4-inch top plates.
- C. Fabricate truss plates ties from steel, 1/4-inch thick; provide shapes per truss elevation diagram.
- D. Provide bolts, 3/4 inch unless otherwise indicated, complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; provide nuts complying with ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, provide flat washers.
- E. Finish steel assemblies and fasteners with rust-inhibitive primer, 2-mil dry film thickness.

## **2.3 FABRICATION**

- A. Camber: Fabricate horizontal members and inclined members with a slope of less than 1:1, with natural convex bow (crown) up, to provide camber.
- B. Shop fabricate members by cutting and restoring exposed surfaces to match specified surfacing. Finish exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks, and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
- C. Pre-drill for fasteners and assembly of units.
- D. Coat crosscuts with end sealer.
- E. Seal Coat: After fabricating and surfacing each unit, apply a saturation coat of penetrating sealer on surfaces of each unit except for treated wood where the treatment included a water repellent.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Erect heavy timber construction true and plumb. Provide temporary bracing to maintain lines and levels until permanent supporting members are in place.
  - 1. Install horizontal and sloping members with crown edge up and provide not less than 4 inches of bearing on supports. Provide continuous members unless otherwise indicated; tie together over supports if not continuous.
  - 2. Handle and temporarily support heavy timber construction to prevent surface damage, compression, and other effects that might interfere with indicated finish.
- B. Cutting: Avoid extra cutting after fabrication. Where field fitting is unavoidable, comply with requirements for shop fabrication.
- C. Fit members by cutting and restoring exposed surfaces to match specified surfacing. Pre-drill for fasteners and assembly of units.

1. Finish exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks, and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
  2. Coat crosscuts with end sealer.
- D. Install timber connectors as indicated.
1. Unless otherwise indicated, install bolts with same orientation within each connection and in similar connections.
  2. Install bolts with orientation as indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
- 3.2 ADJUSTING**
- A. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after completing erection. Replace damaged heavy timber construction if repairs are not approved by Architect.

END OF SECTION 06 13 23

SECTION 061600

SHEATHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Wall sheathing.
  - 2. Roof sheathing.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.

**1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

**1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS**

- A. Plywood: DOC PS 1.
- B. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated.

**2.2 WALL SHEATHING**

- A. Plywood Wall Sheathing: Exterior, APA rated Exposure I sheathing.
  - 1. Span Rating: Not less than 32/16.
  - 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 1/2 inch.
- B. Cement Bonded Particle Board Sheathing: Exterior, APA rated Exposure I sheathing.
  - 1. Span Rating: Not less than 32/16.
  - 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 1/2 inch. Match existing sheathing thickness.
  - 3. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Armoroc.
    - b. Versaroc.
    - c. JetBoard.

**2.3 ROOF SHEATHING**

- A. Plywood Roof Sheathing: Exterior, APA rated Exposure I sheathing.
  - 1. Span Rating: Not less than 48/24.
  - 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 3/4 inch.  
Edge Detail: Tongue and groove.

## **2.4 FASTENERS**

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's "International Building Code."
  - 2. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
- D. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.
- E. Coordinate wall and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- F. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

### **3.2 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
- B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
  - 1. Wall and Roof Sheathing:
    - a. Nail or staple to wood framing.
    - b. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
    - c. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.

END OF SECTION 06 16 00

## SECTION 061800 – GLUED LAMINATED CONSTRUCTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes framing using timbers.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for dimension lumber items associated with heavy timber construction.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Glued-Laminated (Glulam) Timber: An engineered, stress-rated timber product assembled from selected and prepared wood laminations bonded together with adhesives and with the grain of the laminations approximately parallel longitudinally.
- B. Inspection agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  - 1. NeLMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association.
  - 2. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority.
  - 3. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  - 4. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include data on lumber, adhesives, fabrication, and protection.
  - 2. For preservative-treated wood products. Include chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.
  - 3. For timber connectors, include installation instructions.
- B. Certificates of Inspection: Issued by lumber grading agency for exposed timber not marked with grade stamp.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For structural glued-laminated timber and timber connectors.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Conformance: Issued by a qualified testing and inspecting agency indicating that structural glued-laminated timber complies with requirements in AITC A190.1.
- B. Material Certificates: For preservative-treated wood products, from manufacturer. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
- C. Research/Evaluation Reports: For structural glued-laminated timber and timber connectors, from ICC-ES.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Schedule delivery of heavy timber construction to avoid extended on-site storage and to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. Individually wrap members using plastic-coated paper covering with water-resistant seams.
- C. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements," to design structural glued-laminated timber and connectors.
- B. Structural Performance: Structural glued-laminated timber and connectors shall withstand the effects of structural loads shown on Drawings without exceeding allowable design working stresses listed in AITC 117 or determined according to ASTM D3737 and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### 2.2 STRUCTURAL GLUED-LAMINATED TIMBER

- A. General: Provide structural glued-laminated timber that complies with AITC A190.1 and AITC 117 or research/evaluation reports acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Factory mark each piece of structural glued-laminated timber with AITC Quality Mark or APA-EWS trademark. Place mark on surfaces that are not exposed in the completed Work.
  - 2. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made from single species.
  - 3. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made from solid lumber laminations; do not use laminated veneer lumber.
  - 4. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made with wet-use adhesive complying with AITC A190.1.
- B. Species and Grades for Beams:
  - 1. Species and Beam Stress Classification: Any species, 24F-1.7E.
  - 2. Lay-up: Balanced.
- C. Appearance Grade: Architectural, complying with AITC 110.
  - 1. For Architectural appearance grades, fill voids as required by AITC 110.

### 2.3 TIMBER CONNECTORS

- A. Fabricate beam hangers from steel with 1/4-inch stirrups and 1/4-inch top plates.
- B. Fabricate strap ties from steel, 3 inches wide by 1/4-inch thick.
- C. Provide bolts, 5/8 inch unless otherwise indicated, complying with ASTM A307, Grade A; nuts complying with ASTM A563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- D. Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Structural-steel shapes, plates, and flat bars complying with ASTM A36/.
- E. Finish steel assemblies and fasteners with rust-inhibitive primer, 2-mil dry film thickness.

## **2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. End Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, colorless wood sealer that is effective in retarding the transmission of moisture at cross-grain cuts and is compatible with indicated finish.
- B. Penetrating Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, penetrating wood sealer that is compatible with indicated finish.

## **2.5 FABRICATION**

- A. Shop fabricate for connections to greatest extent possible, including cutting to length and drilling bolt holes.
  - 1. Dress exposed surfaces as needed to remove planing and surfacing marks.
- B. Camber: Fabricate horizontal members with either circular or parabolic camber equal to 1/500 of span.
- C. End-Cut Sealing: Immediately after end cutting each member to final length, apply a saturation coat of end sealer to ends and other cross-cut surfaces, keeping surfaces flood coated for not less than 10 minutes.
- D. Seal Coat: After fabricating, sanding, and end-coat sealing, apply a heavy saturation coat of penetrating sealer on surfaces of each unit.

## **2.6 FACTORY FINISHING**

- A. Wiped Stain Finish: Manufacturer's standard, dry-appearance, penetrating acrylic stain and sealer; oven dried and resistant to mildew and fungus.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Clear Finish: Manufacturer's standard, two-coat, clear varnish finish; resistant to mildew and fungus.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates in areas to receive structural glued-laminated timber, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Erect structural glued-laminated timber true and plumb and with uniform, close-fitting joints. Provide temporary bracing to maintain lines and levels until permanent supporting members are in place.
  - 1. Handle and temporarily support glued-laminated timber to prevent surface damage, compression, and other effects that might interfere with indicated finish.

- B. Cutting: Avoid extra cutting after fabrication. Where field fitting is unavoidable, comply with requirements for shop fabrication.
- C. Fit structural glued-laminated timber by cutting and restoring exposed surfaces to match specified surfacing and finishing.
  - 1. Predrill for fasteners using timber connectors as templates.
  - 2. Finish exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
  - 3. Coat cross cuts with end sealer.
- D. Install timber connectors as indicated.
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, install bolts with same orientation within each connection and in similar connections.
  - 2. Install bolts with orientation as indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.

### **3.3 ADJUSTING**

- A. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after completing erection. Replace damaged structural glued-laminated timber if repairs are not approved by Architect.

### **3.4 PROTECTION**

- A. Do not remove wrappings on individually wrapped members until they no longer serve a useful purpose, including protection from weather, sunlight, soiling, and damage from work of other trades.
  - 1. Coordinate wrapping removal with finishing work. Retain wrapping where it can serve as a painting shield.
  - 2. Slit underside of wrapping to prevent accumulation of moisture inside the wrapping.

END OF SECTION 06 18 00



SECTION 062000

FINISH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Exterior wood fencing and trim.
- B. Hardware and attachment accessories.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 099113 - Exterior Painting: Staining of finish carpentry items.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards.
- B. AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) - North American Architectural Woodwork Standards, U.S. Version 3.0.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Provide data on fire retardant treatment materials and application instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate materials, component profiles, fastening methods, jointing details, and accessories.
  - 1. Scale of Drawings: 1-1/2 inch to 1 foot, minimum.
  - 2. Provide the information required by AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS).
- C. Samples: Submit two samples of wood fencing and accessories, 6 inches long.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect work from moisture damage.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 FINISH CARPENTRY ITEMS

- A. Quality Standard: Custom Grade, in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS), unless noted otherwise.
- B. Exterior Woodwork Items:
  - 1. Exterior fencing.

2.02 WOOD-BASED COMPONENTS

- A. Wood fabricated from old growth timber is not permitted.

## 2.03 EXTERIOR LUMBER AND TRIM FOR FENCE

- A. Lumber and Trim for Wood Fencing:
  - 1. Species and Grade: Western red cedar, Clear Heart; Grade A; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - 2. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent.
  - 3. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
  - 4. Face Surface: Surfaced (smooth).

## 2.04 FASTENINGS

- A. Fasteners: Of size and type to suit application.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install work in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) or AWMAC/WI (NAAWS) requirements for grade indicated.
- B. Set and secure materials and components in place, plumb and level. Set posts in ground in accordance with the Drawings or in accordance with Architect's instructions.
- C. Carefully scribe work abutting other components, with maximum gaps of 1/32 inch. Do not use additional overlay trim to conceal larger gaps.
- D. Install wood fencing and trim products as indicated on the Drawings.

## 3.02 PREPARATION FOR SITE FINISHING

- A. Set exposed fasteners. Apply wood filler in exposed fastener indentations. Sand work smooth.
- B. Site Finishing: See Section 09 91 13.

## 3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from True Position: 1/16 inch.
- B. Maximum Offset from True Alignment with Abutting Materials: 1/32 inch.

END OF SECTION 062000

SECTION 072500

WEATHER BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Air Barriers: Materials that form a system to stop passage of air through exterior walls, joints between exterior walls and roof, and joints around frames of openings in exterior walls.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 076200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Metal flashings installed in conjunction with weather barriers.
- B. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing building expansion joints.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Weather Barrier: Assemblies that form either water-resistive barriers, air barriers, or vapor retarders.
- B. Air Barrier: Air tight barrier made of material that is relatively air impermeable but water vapor permeable, both to the degree specified, with sealed seams and with sealed joints to adjacent surfaces. Note: For the purposes of this specification, vapor impermeable air barriers are classified as vapor retarders.

1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM D1970/D1970M - Standard Specification for Self-Adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection.
- B. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- C. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials.
- D. ASTM E2178 - Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide data on material characteristics and performance criteria.
- B. Shop Drawings: Provide drawings of special joint conditions.
- C. ABAA Installer Qualification: Submit documentation of current contractor accreditation and current installer certification; keep copies of each contractor accreditation and installer certification on site during and after installation, and present on-site documentation upon request.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 WEATHER BARRIER ASSEMBLIES

#### A. Air Barrier:

1. On outside surface of sheathing of exterior walls use air barrier sheet, mechanically fastened type.

### 2.02 AIR BARRIER MATERIALS (WATER VAPOR PERMEABLE AND WATER-RESISTIVE)

#### A. Air Barrier Sheet, Mechanically Fastened:

1. Air Permeance: 0.004 cubic feet per minute per square foot, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178.
2. Water Vapor Permeance: 5 perms, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M Procedure A (desiccant procedure).
3. Ultraviolet (UV) and Weathering Resistance: Approved in writing by manufacturer for up to 180 days of weather exposure.
4. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of 25 or less, and smoke developed index of 50 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
5. Flame Propagation Test: Materials and construction shall be as tested according to NFPA 285.
6. Seam and Perimeter Tape: Polyethylene self adhering type, mesh reinforced, 2 inches wide, compatible with sheet material; unless otherwise specified.
7. Manufacturers:
  - a. DuPont Building Innovations; Tyvek Commercial Wrap D with Tyvek Fluid Applied Flashing - Brush Formulation, Tyvek Fluid Applied Flashing and Joint Compound, FlexWrap NF, StraightFlash, StraightFlash VF, Tyvek Wrap Caps, and Tyvek Tape: [www.dupont.com/#sle](http://www.dupont.com/#sle).
  - b. Fortifiber Building Systems Group: [www.fortifiber.com/#sle](http://www.fortifiber.com/#sle).
  - c. VaproShield, LLC; WrapShield IT - Integrated Tape: [www.vaproshield.com/#sle](http://www.vaproshield.com/#sle).

#### B. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

### 2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Sealants, Tapes, and Accessories for Sealing Weather Barrier and Sealing Weather Barrier to Adjacent Substrates: As specified or as recommended by weather barrier manufacturer.
- B. Flexible Flashing: Self-adhesive sheet flashing complying with ASTM D1970/D1970M, except slip resistance requirement is waived if not installed on a roof.
- C. Thinners and Cleaners: As recommended by material manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces and conditions are ready to accept the work of this section.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Remove projections, protruding fasteners, and loose or foreign matter that might interfere with proper installation.
- B. Clean and prime substrate surfaces to receive adhesives in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Air Barriers: Install continuous air tight barrier over surfaces indicated, with sealed seams and with sealed joints to adjacent surfaces.
- C. Apply sealants and adhesives within recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer if temperature is out of this range.
- D. Mechanically Fastened Sheets - On Exterior:
  - 1. Install sheets shingle-fashion to shed water, with seams generally horizontal.
  - 2. Overlap seams as recommended by manufacturer but at least 6 inches.
  - 3. Overlap at outside and inside corners as recommended by manufacturer but at least 12 inches.
  - 4. Attach to framed construction with fasteners extending through sheathing into framing. Space fasteners at 12 to 18 inches on center along each framing member supporting sheathing.
  - 5. For applications specified to be air tight, seal seams, laps, penetrations, tears, and cuts with self-adhesive tape; use only large-headed, gasketed fasteners recommended by the manufacturer.
  - 6. Where stud framing rests on concrete or masonry, extend lower edge of sheet at least 4 inches below bottom of framing and seal to foundation with sealant.
  - 7. Install water-resistive barrier over jamb flashings.
  - 8. Install air barrier and vapor retarder UNDER jamb flashings.
  - 9. Install head flashings under weather barrier.
  - 10. At openings to be filled with frames having nailing flanges, wrap excess sheet into opening; at head, seal sheet over flange and flashing.
- E. Openings and Penetrations in Exterior Weather Barriers:
  - 1. Install flashing over sills, covering entire sill frame member, extending at least 5 inches onto weather barrier and at least 6 inches up jambs; mechanically fasten stretched edges.
  - 2. At openings to be filled with frames having nailing flanges, seal head and jamb flanges using a continuous bead of sealant compressed by flange and cover flanges with sealing tape at least 4 inches wide; do not seal sill flange.
  - 3. At openings to be filled with non-flanged frames, seal weather barrier to each side of opening framing, using flashing at least 9 inches wide, covering entire depth of framing.
  - 4. At head of openings, install flashing under weather barrier extending at least 2 inches beyond face of jambs; seal weather barrier to flashing.
  - 5. At interior side of window openings, seal gap between window/door frame and rough framing, using joint sealant over backer rod.
  - 6. At door openings, provide backer rod and sealant installed from the exterior between the frame and the membrane flashing at the rough door opening.
  - 7. Service and Other Penetrations: Form flashing around penetrating item and seal to weather barrier surface.

### 3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 014000 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.

- B. Coordination of ABAA Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Provide testing and inspection required by ABAA QAP.
  - 2. Notify in ABAA writing of schedule for air barrier work. Allow adequate time for testing and inspection.
  - 3. Cooperate with ABAA testing agency.
  - 4. Allow access to air barrier work areas and staging.
  - 5. Do not cover air barrier work until tested, inspected, and accepted.
- C. Do not cover installed weather barriers until required inspections have been completed.
- D. Obtain approval of installation procedures by the weather barrier manufacturer based on a mock-up installed in place, prior to proceeding with remainder of installation.

### 3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Do not leave materials exposed to weather longer than recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 072500

## SECTION 073010

### ROOFING UNDERLAYMENT

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies a self-adhering sheet membrane used as underlayment for sloped roofs.
  - 1. Severe climate application, Grace Ice & Water Shield®.
- B. Related Sections: Refer to the following specification sections for coordination:
  - 1. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry.
  - 2. Section 073113 - Asphalt Shingles.
- C. Referenced Standards: Comply with the requirements of the following standards published by ASTM International to the extent referenced in this section.
  - 1. ASTM D412 - Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers - Tension.
  - 2. ASTM D461 - Standard Test Methods for Felt.
  - 3. ASTM D 903 - Standard Test Method for Peel or Stripping Strength of Adhesive Bonds.
  - 4. ASTM D1970 - Standard Specification for Self-Adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection.
  - 5. ASTM D3767 - Standard Practice for Rubber-Measurement of Dimensions.
  - 6. ASTM E96 - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials.
  - 7. ASTM G90 - EMMAqua test.

##### 1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data and installation instructions.

##### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and applicable codes at the location of the project.
- B. Manufacturer: Minimum 10 years experience producing roofing underlayment.
- C. Installer: Minimum 2 years experience with installation of similar underlayment.

##### 1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials and products in unopened factory labeled packages. Protect from damage.
- B. Cover materials and store in dry condition between temperatures of 40 and 90 degrees F (5 and 32 degrees C). Use within one year of date of manufacture. Do not store at elevated temperatures as that will reduce the shelf life of the product.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURER

- A. Basis of Design Manufacturer: GCP Applied Technologies, Inc, 62 Whittemore Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02140, Toll Free 866-333-3726, [www.gcpat.com](http://www.gcpat.com) <<http://www.gcpat.com>> or equal.
- B. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

### 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Membrane Roof Underlayment: Provide Grace Ice and Water Shield by GCP Applied Technologies, Inc. with the following characteristics:
  - 1. Material: Cold applied, self-adhering membrane composed of a high strength polyethylene film coated on one side with a layer of rubberized asphalt adhesive and interwound with a disposable release sheet. An embossed, slip resistant surface is provided on the polyethylene.
  - 2. Color: Gray-black.
  - 3. Membrane Thickness: 40 mil (1.02 mm) ASTM D3767 procedure A (Section 9.1).
  - 4. Tensile Strength, Membrane: 250 psi (1720 kN/m<sup>2</sup>) ASTM D412 (Die C modified).
  - 5. Elongation, Membrane: 250% ASTM D412 (Die C modified).
  - 6. Low Temperature Flexibility: Unaffected @ -20°F (-29°C) ASTM D1970.
  - 7. Adhesion to Plywood: 3.0 lbs/in. width (525 N/m) ASTM D903.
  - 8. Permeance (Max): 0.05 perms (2.9 ng/m<sup>2</sup>s Pa) ASTM E96.
  - 9. Material Weight Installed (Max): 0.3 lb/ft<sup>2</sup> (1.3 kg/m<sup>2</sup>) ASTM D461.
  - 10. Primer: Water-based Perm-A-Barrier WB Primer by GCP Applied Technologies, Inc.
  - 11. Code and Standards Compliance: Grace Ice and Water Shield meets the following:
    - a. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. Class A fire classification under fiber-glass shingles and Class C under organic felt shingles (per ASTM E108/UL 790).
    - b. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. Classified Sheathing Material Fire Resistance Classification with Roof Designs: P225, P227, P230, P237, P259, P508, P510, P512, P514, P701, P711, P717, P722, P723, P732, P734, P736, P742, P803, P814, P818, P824
    - c. ICC ESR-1677 approval according to AC-48 Acceptance Criteria for Self-Adhered underlayments used as Ice Barriers.
    - d. Miami-Dade County Code Report NOA 12-1115.02.
    - e. Canadian Construction Materials Centre (CCMC) 13670-L
    - f. City of Los Angeles RR 25330
    - g. Florida State Approval Report No. FL289-R3

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Prior to start of installation, inspect existing conditions to ensure surfaces are suitable for installation of roofing underlayment. Verify flashing has been installed. Starting work indicates installers acceptance of existing conditions.



### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation: Install roofing underlayment on sloped surfaces at locations indicated on the Drawings, but not less than at hips, ridges, eaves, valleys, sidewalls and chimneys, and surfaces over interior space within 36 inches (914 mm) from the inside face of the exterior wall. Strictly comply with manufacturer's installation instructions including but not limited to the following:
1. Schedule installation such that underlayment is covered by roofing within the published exposure limit of the underlayment.
  2. Do not install underlayment on wet or frozen substrates.
  3. Install when surface temperature of substrate is a minimum of 40 degrees F (5 degrees C) and rising.
  4. Remove dust, dirt, loose materials and protrusions from deck surface.
  5. Install membrane on clean, dry, continuous structural deck. Fill voids and damaged or unsupported areas prior to installation.
  6. Prime concrete and masonry surfaces using specified primer at a rate of 500-600 square feet per gallon (12-15 sqm/L). Priming is not required for other suitable clean and dry surfaces.
  7. Install membrane such that all laps shed water. Work from the low point to the high point of the roof at all times. Apply the membrane in valleys before the membrane is applied to the eaves. Following placement along the eaves, continue application of the membrane up the roof. Membrane may be installed either vertically or horizontally after the first horizontal course.
  8. Side laps minimum 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) and end laps minimum 6 inches (152 mm) following lap lines marked on underlayment.
  9. Patch penetrations and damage using manufacturer's recommended methods.

### 3.03 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protection: Protect from damage during construction operations and installation of roofing materials. Promptly repair any damaged or deteriorated surfaces.
- B. Repair minor damage to eliminate all evidence of repair. Remove and replace work which cannot be satisfactorily repaired in the opinion of the Architect.
- C. Provide temporary protection to ensure work being without damage or deterioration at time of final acceptance. Remove protective film and reclean as necessary immediately before final acceptance.

END OF SECTION 073010

SECTION 073113

ROOFING SHINGLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Shingle roofing.
- B. Flexible sheet membranes for eave protection, underlayment, valley protection, and ridge protection.
- C. Associated metal flashings and accessories.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 073010 - Roofing Underlayment.
- B. Section 076200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Edge and cap flashings.
- C. Section 077123 - Manufactured Gutters and Downspouts.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM D1970/D1970M - Standard Specification for Self-Adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection.
- B. ASTM D3161 - Standard Test Method for Wind-Resistance of Steep Slope Roofing Products (Fan-Induced Method).
- C. ASTM D3161/D3161M - Standard Test Method for Wind-Resistance of Steep Slope Roofing Products (Fan-Induced Method).
- D. ASTM D3462/D3462M - Standard Specification for Asphalt Shingles Made From Glass Felt and Surfaced with Mineral Granules.
- E. ASTM D3909/D3909M - Standard Specification for Asphalt Roll Roofing (Glass Felt) Surfaced with Mineral Granules.
- F. ASTM D4586/D4586M - Standard Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos-Free.
- G. ASTM D4869/D4869M - Standard Specification for Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt Underlayment Used in Steep Slope Roofing.
- H. ASTM E108 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings.
- I. Miami (APD) - Approved Products Directory; Miami-Dade County.
- J. NRCA (RM) - The NRCA Roofing Manual.
- K. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide data indicating material characteristics.
- B. Samples: Submit two samples of each shingle color indicating color range and finish texture/pattern .
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate installation criteria and procedures.

- D. Warranty Documentation: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- E. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 016000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
  - 2. Extra Shingles: 100 sq ft of each type and color.

#### 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Products are Required to Comply with Fire Resistance Criteria: UL (DIR) listed and labeled.

#### 1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install shingles or eave protection membrane when surface temperatures are below 45 degrees F.

#### 1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Furnish shingle manufacturer's 30 year material replacement warranty.
- B. 3Star Coverage (20 years) material and labor costs for repair or replacement
- C. Wind Warranty: 10 year 90 mph wind warranty.
- D. Warranty Supplement: Provide manufacturer's supplemental warranty to cover labor and materials in the event of a material defect for the first three years after completion of application of shingles.
- E. Warranty Transferability Clause: Make available to Owner shingle manufacturer's standard option for transferring warranty to a new owner.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 SHINGLES (BASE BID)

- A. Manufacturer:
  - 1. Certaineed; XT 30 IR.
  - 2. GAF; Royal Sovereign.
  - 3. Owens Corning; Supreme.
  - 4. TAMKO Building Products; Elite Glass-Seal.
  - 5. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

#### 2.02 SHINGLES (ALTERNATE)

- A. Manufacturer:
  - 1. Certaineed; Landmark Pro.
  - 2. GAF; Timberline American Harvest.
  - 3. Owens Corning; Oakridge.
  - 4. TAMKO Building Products; Heritage Premium.
  - 5. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

#### 2.03 ASPHALT SHINGLES (BASE BID)

- A. Fiberglass Shingles: Asphalt-coated glass felt, mineral granule surfaced, complying with ASTM D 3462; Class A fire resistance.
  - 1. Fire Resistance: Class A, conforming to ASTM E108.

2. Wind Resistance: Class F, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3161.
3. Warranted Wind Speed: 90 mph.
4. Algae Resistant.
5. Weight: 240 lb/100 sq ft.
6. Self-sealing or interlocking type with five inch exposure.
7. Style: Square.
8. Color: As selected by the Architect from Manufacturer's standard colors.

#### 2.04 ASPHALT SHINGLES (ALTERNATE)

- A. Fiberglass Shingles: Asphalt-coated glass felt, mineral granule surfaced, complying with ASTM D 3462; Class A fire resistance.
  1. Fire Resistance: Class A, conforming to ASTM E108.
  2. Wind Resistance: Class F, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3161.
  3. Warranted Wind Speed: 110 mph.
  4. Miami-Dade County approved.
  5. Algae Resistant.
  6. Weight: 250 lb/100 sq ft.
  7. Self-sealing type with five inch exposure.
  8. Style: Laminated overlay.
  9. Color: As selected by the Architect from manufacturer's full lines.

#### 2.05 SHEET MATERIALS

- A. Ridge and Eave Protection Membrane: Self-adhering polymer-modified asphalt sheet complying with ASTM D1970/D1970M; 40 mil total thickness; with strippable treated release paper and polyethylene sheet top surface.
- B. Underlayment: See Section 073010.

#### 2.06 ACCESSORIES

- A. Nails: Standard round wire shingle type, of hot-dipped zinc coated steel, 10 wire gage, 0.1019 inch shank diameter, 3/8 inch head diameter, of sufficient length to penetrate through roof sheathing or 3/4 inch into roof sheathing or decking.
- B. Plastic Cement: ASTM D4586/D4586M, asphalt roof cement.
- C. Lap Cement: Fibrated cutback asphalt type, recommended for use in application of underlayment, free of toxic solvents .
- D. Ridge Vents: Plastic, extruded with vent openings that do not permit direct water or weather entry; flanged to receive shingles; 9 Inch Ridge Master Plus manufactured by Mid-America Building Products.
- E. Sealants: As specified in Section 079200.

#### 2.07 METAL FLASHINGS

- A. Metal Flashings: Provide sheet metal eave edge, gable edge, and other flashing indicated.
  1. Form flashings to profiles indicated on Drawings and, where not shown, in accordance with cureent edition of SMACNA details.
  2. Form sections square and accurate to profile, in maximum possible lengths, free from distortion or defects detrimental to appearance or performance.

3. Hem exposed edges of flashings minimum 1/4 inch on underside.
  4. Coat concealed surfaces of flashings with bituminous paint.
- B. Sheet Metal: As specified in Section 076200.
- C. Bituminous Paint: Acid and alkali resistant type; black color.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions prior to beginning work.
- B. Verify that deck is of sufficient thickness to accept fasteners and sheathing has proper clips and spacers.
- C. Verify that roof penetrations and plumbing stacks are in place and flashed to deck surface.
- D. Verify roof openings are correctly framed.
- E. Verify deck surfaces are dry, free of ridges, warps, or voids.

#### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Seal roof deck joints wider than 1/16 inch as recommended by shingle manufacturer.
- B. At areas where eave protection membrane is to be adhered to substrate, fill knot holes and surface cracks with latex filler.
- C. Broom clean deck surfaces before installing underlayment or eave protection.

#### 3.03 INSTALLATION - EAVE PROTECTION MEMBRANE

- A. Install eave protection membrane from eave edge to minimum 4 ft up-slope beyond interior face of exterior wall.

#### 3.04 INSTALLATION - RIDGE PROTECTION

- A. Install one ply of self-adhering membrane, minimum 36 inches wide, centered over valleys and ridges.

#### 3.05 INSTALLATION - METAL FLASHING AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Install flashings in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NRCA (RM) applicable requirements.
- B. Weather lap joints minimum 3 inches and seal weather tight with plastic cement.
- C. Secure in place with nails at 6 inches on center. Conceal fastenings.
- D. Items Projecting Through or Mounted on Roofing: Flash and seal weather tight with plastic cement.

#### 3.06 INSTALLATION - SHINGLES

- A. Install shingles in accordance with manufacturer's instructions manufacturer's instructions and NRCA (RM) applicable requirements.
  1. Fasten individual shingles using two nails per shingle, or as required by code, whichever is greater.
  2. Fasten strip shingles using four nails per strip, or as required by code, whichever is greater.

- B. Place shingles in straight coursing pattern with 5 inch weather exposure to produce double thickness over full roof area. Provide double course of shingles at eaves.
- C. Project first course of shingles 3/4 inch beyond fascia boards.
- D. Extend shingles 1/2 inch beyond face of gable edge fascia boards.
- E. Cap hips and ridges with individual shingles, maintaining 5 inch weather exposure. Place to avoid exposed nails.
- F. Coordinate installation of roof mounted components or work projecting through roof with weather tight placement of counterflashings.
- G. Complete installation to provide weather tight service.

### 3.07 CLEAN-UP AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean up roofing debris and accessories upon completion of work.
- B. Do not permit traffic over finished roof surface.

END OF SECTION 073113

SECTION 074646

FIBER CEMENT SIDING AND TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Wood-fiber cement siding and trim.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 072500 - Weather Barriers: Weather barrier under siding.
- B. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between siding and adjacent construction and fixtures.
- C. Section 099113 - Exterior Painting: Field painting.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C1186 - Standard Specification for Flat Fiber Cement Sheets.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
  - 1. Manufacturer's requirements for related materials to be installed by others.
  - 2. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - 3. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  - 4. Installation methods, including nail patterns.
- B. Warranty: Submit copy of manufacturer's warranty, made out in Owner's name, showing that it has been registered with manufacturer.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products under waterproof cover and elevated above grade, on a flat surface.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SIDING

- A. Panel Siding: Vertically oriented panels made of cement and cellulose fiber formed under high pressure with integral surface texture, complying with ASTM C1186 Type A Grade II; with machined edges, for nail attachment.
  - 1. Texture: Smooth.
  - 2. Length (Height): 96 inches, nominal.
  - 3. Width: 48 inches.
  - 4. Thickness: 5/16 inch, nominal.
  - 5. Finish: Factory applied primer.
  - 6. Warranty: 50 year limited; transferable.
  - 7. Panel Siding Manufacturers:
    - a. Allura, a division of Plycem USA, Inc : [www.allurausa.com](http://www.allurausa.com).
    - b. James Hardie Building Products, Inc: [www.jameshardie.com/#sle](http://www.jameshardie.com/#sle). (Basis of Design)
    - c. Nichiha USA, Inc: [www.nichiha.com/#sle](http://www.nichiha.com/#sle).

- d. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Soffit Panels: Perforated panels made of cement and cellulose fiber formed under high pressure with integral surface texture, complying with ASTM C 1186 Type A Grade II; with machined edges, for nail attachment.
  - 1. Texture: Smooth.
  - 2. Length: 96 inches, nominal.
  - 3. Width: 48 inches.
  - 4. Thickness: 5/16 inch, nominal.
  - 5. Finish: Factory applied primer.

## 2.02 ACCESSORIES

- A. Flashing: .019 inch aluminum with factory finish selected by Architect from manufacturer's full line.
- B. Trim: Same material and texture as siding.
- C. Fasteners: Galvanized or corrosion resistant; length as required to penetrate minimum 1-1/4 inch.
- D. Sealant: Elastomeric, polyurethane or silyl-terminated polyether/polyurethane, and capable of being painted.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrate and clean and repair as required to eliminate conditions that would be detrimental to proper installation.
- B. Verify that weather barrier has been installed over substrate completely and correctly.
- C. Do not begin until unacceptable conditions have been corrected.
- D. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Install sheet metal flashing:
  - 1. Above door and window trim and casings.
  - 2. Above horizontal trim in field of siding.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.
  - 1. Read warranty and comply with all terms necessary to maintain warranty coverage.
  - 2. Use trim details indicated on drawings.
  - 3. Touch up all field cut edges before installing.
  - 4. Pre-drill nail holes if necessary to prevent breakage.
- B. Over Steel Studs: Use hot-dipped galvanized self-tapping screws, with the points of at least 3 screws penetrating each stud the panel crosses and at panel ends.
- C. Joints in Vertical Siding: Install Z-flashing in horizontal joints between successive courses of vertical siding.



- D. Do not install siding less than 6 inches from surface of ground nor closer than 1 inch to roofs, patios, porches, and other surfaces where water may collect.
- E. After installation, seal all joints. Seal around all penetrations. Paint all exposed cut edges.
- F. Finish Painting: Specified in Section 099113.

3.04 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Final Acceptance.

END OF SECTION 074646

SECTION 076200

SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fabricated sheet metal items, including flashings and counterflashings.
- B. Sealants for joints within sheet metal fabrications.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 073113 - Roofing Shingles: Non-metallic flashings associated with shingle roofing.
- B. Section 077123 - Manufactured Gutters and Downspouts.
- C. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing non-lap joints between sheet metal fabrications and adjacent construction.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.
- B. ASTM B370 - Standard Specification for Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction.
- C. ASTM B749 - Standard Specification for Lead and Lead Alloy Strip, Sheet, and Plate Products.
- D. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
- E. ASTM D4586/D4586M - Standard Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos-Free.
- F. SMACNA (ASMM) - Architectural Sheet Metal Manual.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Indicate material profile, jointing pattern, jointing details, fastening methods, flashings, terminations, and installation details. Show joints and terminations in isometric detail.
- B. Samples: Submit two samples, 6 by 6 inch in size illustrating material of typical standing seam.
- C. Samples: Submit two samples 6 by 6 inch in size illustrating metal finish color.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work in accordance with SMACNA Architectural Sheet Metal Manual requirements and standard details or NRCA Manual, except as otherwise indicated.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack material to prevent twisting, bending, and abrasion, and to provide ventilation. Slope metal sheets to ensure drainage.
- B. Prevent contact with materials that could cause discoloration or staining.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 SHEET MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Steel (Unexposed Flashing/Counterflashing): ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G90/Z275 zinc coating; minimum 0.02 inch thick base metal.
- B. Pre-Finished Aluminum (Exposed Flashing): ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M); 0.032 inch thick; plain finish shop pre coated with fluoropolymer coating of color as selected.
  - 1. Fluoropolymer Coating: High Performance Organic Finish, AAMA 2604; multiple coat, thermally cured fluoropolymer finish system; color as selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
- C. Copper (Exposed Flashing): ASTM B370, cold rolled 16 oz/sq ft (24 gage) (0.0216 inch) thick; natural finish.

### 2.02 FABRICATION

- A. Form sections true to shape, accurate in size, square, and free from distortion or defects.
- B. Form pieces in longest possible lengths.
- C. Hem exposed edges on underside 1/2 inch; miter and seam corners.
- D. Form material with flat lock seams, except where otherwise indicated; at moving joints, use sealed lapped, bayonet-type or interlocking hooked seams.
- E. Fabricate corners from one piece with minimum 18 inch long legs; seam for rigidity, seal with sealant.
- F. Fabricate vertical faces with bottom edge formed outward 1/4 inch and hemmed to form drip.

### 2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Same material and finish as flashing metal, with soft neoprene washers.
- B. Primer: Zinc chromate type.
- C. Concealed Sealants: Non-curing butyl sealant.
- D. Exposed Sealants: ASTM C920; elastomeric sealant, with minimum movement capability as recommended by manufacturer for substrates to be sealed; color to match adjacent material.
- E. Plastic Cement: ASTM D4586/D4586M, Type I.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify roof openings, curbs, pipes, sleeves, ducts, and vents through roof are solidly set, reglets in place, and nailing strips located.
- B. Verify roofing termination and base flashings are in place, sealed, and secure.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Install starter and edge strips, and cleats before starting installation.
- B. Install surface mounted reglets true to lines and levels, and seal top of reglets with sealant.
- C. Back paint concealed metal surfaces with protective backing paint to a minimum dry film thickness of 15 mil.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Secure flashings in place using concealed fasteners. Use exposed fasteners only where permitted.
- B. Apply plastic cement compound between metal flashings and felt flashings.
- C. Fit flashings tight in place; make corners square, surfaces true and straight in planes, and lines accurate to profiles.
- D. Seal metal joints watertight.
- E. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by fabricator or manufacturers of dissimilar metals.

END OF SECTION 076200

SECTION 077123

MANUFACTURED GUTTERS AND DOWNSPOUTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Pre-finished galvanized steel gutters and downspouts.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 076200 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM B209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate.
- B. ASTM B209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric).

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Indicate locations, configurations, jointing methods, fastening methods, locations, and installation details.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack material to prevent twisting, bending, or abrasion, and to provide ventilation. Slope to drain.
- B. Prevent contact with materials that could cause discoloration, staining, or damage.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Pre-Finished Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M); 0.032 inch thick.
  - 1. Finish: Plain, shop pre-coated with PVDF (polyvinylidene fluoride) coating.
  - 2. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard colors.

2.02 COMPONENTS

- A. Gutters: Profile as indicated.
- B. Downspouts: Profile as indicated.
- C. Anchors and Supports: Profiled to suit collection boxes and downspouts.
  - 1. Anchoring Devices: In accordance with SMACNA requirements.
  - 2. Gutter Supports: Straps.
  - 3. Downspout Supports: Straps.
- D. Fasteners: Aluminum, with soft neoprene washers.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Downspout Boots: Cast iron; ASTM A48.

## 2.04 FABRICATION

- A. Form gutters and downspouts of profiles and size indicated.
- B. Fabricate with required connection pieces.
- C. Form sections square, true, and accurate in size, in maximum possible lengths, free of distortion or defects detrimental to appearance or performance.
- D. Hem exposed edges of metal.
- E. Fabricate scuppers and downspout accessories; seal watertight.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install gutters, downspouts, and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Sheet Metal: Join lengths with formed seams sealed watertight. Flash and seal gutters to downspouts and accessories.
- C. Slope gutters 1/4 inch per foot, 2 percent minimum.
- D. Solder metal joints for full metal surface contact. After soldering, wash metal clean with neutralizing solution and rinse with water.
- E. Connect downspouts to foundation drainage system. Seal connection watertight.

END OF SECTION 077123

SECTION 079200

JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Nonsag gunnable joint sealants.
- B. Joint backings and accessories.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 088000 - Glazing: Glazing sealants and accessories.
- B. Section 092116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Sealing acoustical and sound-rated walls and ceilings.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C661 - Standard Test Method for Indentation Hardness of Elastomeric-Type Sealants by Means of a Durometer.
- B. ASTM C794 - Standard Test Method for Adhesion-In-Peel of Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
- C. ASTM C834 - Standard Specification for Latex Sealants.
- D. ASTM C919 - Standard Practice for Use of Sealants in Acoustical Applications.
- E. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
- F. ASTM C1087 - Standard Test Method for Determining Compatibility of Liquid-Applied Sealants with Accessories Used in Structural Glazing Systems.
- G. ASTM C1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants.
- H. ASTM C1248 - Standard Test Method for Staining of Porous Substrate by Joint Sealants.
- I. ASTM C1330 - Standard Specification for Cylindrical Sealant Backing for Use with Cold Liquid-Applied Sealants.
- J. ASTM C1521 - Standard Practice for Evaluating Adhesion of Installed Weatherproofing Sealant Joints.
- K. SCAQMD 1168 - Adhesive and Sealant Applications.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data for Sealants: Submit manufacturer's technical data sheets for each product to be used, that includes the following.
  - 1. Physical characteristics, including movement capability, VOC content, hardness, cure time, and color availability.
  - 2. List of backing materials approved for use with the specific product.
  - 3. Substrates that product is known to satisfactorily adhere to and with which it is compatible.
  - 4. Substrates the product should not be used on.
  - 5. Substrates for which use of primer is required.

- B. Color Cards for Selection: Where sealant color is not specified, submit manufacturer's color cards showing standard colors available for selection.
- C. Samples for Verification: Where custom sealant color is specified, obtain directions from Architect and submit at least two physical samples for verification of color of each required sealant.
- D. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Reports: Submit at least four weeks prior to start of installation.
- E. Installation Plan: Submit at least four weeks prior to start of installation.
- F. Installation Log: Submit filled out log for each length or instance of sealant installed.

#### 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Preconstruction Laboratory Testing: Arrange for sealant manufacturer(s) to test each combination of sealant, substrate, backing, and accessories.
  - 1. Adhesion Testing: In accordance with ASTM C794.
  - 2. Compatibility Testing: In accordance with ASTM C1087.
  - 3. Allow sufficient time for testing to avoid delaying the work.
  - 4. Deliver to manufacturer sufficient samples for testing.
  - 5. Report manufacturer's recommended corrective measures, if any, including primers or techniques not indicated in product data submittals.
  - 6. Testing is not required if sealant manufacturer provides data showing previous testing, not older than 24 months, that shows satisfactory adhesion, lack of staining, and compatibility.
- B. Installation Plan: Include schedule of sealed joints, including the following.
  - 1. Installation Log Form: Include the following data fields, with known information filled out.
    - a. Location on project.
    - b. Substrates.
    - c. Sealant used.
    - d. Primer to be used, or indicate as "No primer" used.
    - e. Date of installation.
    - f. Name of installer.
    - g. Actual joint width; provide space to indicate maximum and minimum width.
    - h. Actual joint depth to face of backing material at centerline of joint.
    - i. Air temperature.
- C. Field Adhesion Test Procedures:
  - 1. Allow sealants to fully cure as recommended by manufacturer before testing.
  - 2. Have a copy of the test method document available during tests.
  - 3. Record the type of failure that occurred, other information required by test method, and the information required on the Field Quality Control Log.
  - 4. If any combination of sealant type and substrate does not show evidence of minimum adhesion or shows cohesion failure before minimum adhesion, report results to Architect.
- D. Non-Destructive Field Adhesion Test: Test for adhesion in accordance with ASTM C1521, using Nondestructive Spot Method.
  - 1. Record results on Field Quality Control Log.
  - 2. Repair failed portions of joints.
- E. Field Adhesion Tests of Joints: Test for adhesion using most appropriate method in accordance with ASTM C1521, or other applicable method as recommended by manufacturer.



## 1.06 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Correct defective work within a five year period after Date of Final Acceptance.
- C. Warranty: Include coverage for installed sealants and accessories that fail to achieve watertight seal, exhibit loss of adhesion or cohesion, or do not cure.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 JOINT SEALANT APPLICATIONS

- A. Scope:
  - 1. Exterior Joints: Seal open joints, whether or not the joint is indicated on drawings, unless specifically indicated not to be sealed. Exterior joints to be sealed include, but are not limited to, the following items.
    - a. Wall control joints.
    - b. Joints between door, window, and other frames and adjacent construction.
    - c. Joints between different exposed materials.
  - 2. Interior Joints: Do not seal interior joints unless specifically indicated to be sealed. Interior joints to be sealed include, but are not limited to, the following items.
    - a. Joints between door, window, and other frames and adjacent construction.
  - 3. Do not seal the following types of joints.
    - a. Joints where installation of sealant is specified in another section.
- B. Exterior Joints: Use nonsag non-staining silicone and polyurethane sealant, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Interior Joints: Use non-sag polyurethane sealant, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Wall and Ceiling Joints in Non-Wet Areas: Acrylic emulsion latex sealant.
  - 2. Joints between Fixtures in Wet Areas and Floors, Walls, and Ceilings: Mildew-resistant silicone sealant; white.
  - 3. In Sound-Rated Assemblies: Acrylic emulsion latex sealant.
- D. Interior Wet Areas: restrooms; fixtures in wet areas include plumbing fixtures and countertops.
- E. Sound-Rated Assemblies: Walls and ceilings identified as "STC-rated", "sound-rated", or "acoustical".

### 2.02 JOINT SEALANTS - GENERAL

- A. Sealants and Primers: Provide products having lower volatile organic compound (VOC) content than indicated in SCAQMD 1168.

### 2.03 NONSAG JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Non-Staining Silicone Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade NS, Uses M and A; not expected to withstand continuous water immersion or traffic.
  - 1. Movement Capability: Plus/Minus 25 percent, minimum.
  - 2. Non-Staining To Porous Stone: Non-staining to light-colored natural stone when tested in accordance with ASTM C1248.
  - 3. Dirt Pick-Up: Reduced dirt pick-up compared to other silicone sealants.
  - 4. Hardness Range: 15 to 35, Shore A, when tested in accordance with ASTM C661.
  - 5. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

6. Cure Type: Single-component, neutral moisture curing.
7. Manufacturers:
  - a. Pecora Corporation; 890FTS Field Tintable Ultra Low Modulus Architectural Silicone Sealant - Class 100: [www.pecora.com](http://www.pecora.com).
  - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Polyurethane Sealant: ASTM C920, Grade NS, Uses M and A; single or multi-component; not expected to withstand continuous water immersion or traffic.
  1. Movement Capability: Plus and minus 25 percent, minimum.
  2. Hardness Range: 20 to 35, Shore A, when tested in accordance with ASTM C661.
  3. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  4. Manufacturers:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; DynaTrol II General Purpose Two Part Polyurethane Sealant: [www.pecora.com](http://www.pecora.com).
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- C. Acrylic Emulsion Latex: Water-based; ASTM C834, single component, non-staining, non-bleeding, non-sagging; not intended for exterior use.
  1. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  2. Manufacturers:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 + Silicone Acrylic Latex Caulking Compound: [www.pecora.com](http://www.pecora.com).
    - b. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant: [www.pecora.com](http://www.pecora.com).
    - c. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## 2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Backer Rod: Cylindrical cellular foam rod with surface that sealant will not adhere to, compatible with specific sealant used, and recommended by backing and sealant manufacturers for specific application.
  1. Type for Joints Not Subject to Pedestrian or Vehicular Traffic: ASTM C1330; Type O - Open Cell Polyurethane.
  2. Open Cell: 40 to 50 percent larger in diameter than joint width.
- B. Backing Tape: Self-adhesive polyethylene tape with surface that sealant will not adhere to and recommended by tape and sealant manufacturers for specific application.
- C. Masking Tape: Self-adhesive, nonabsorbent, non-staining, removable without adhesive residue, and compatible with surfaces adjacent to joints and sealants.
- D. Joint Cleaner: Non-corrosive and non-staining type, type recommended by sealant manufacturer; compatible with joint forming materials.
- E. Primers: Type recommended by sealant manufacturer to suit application; non-staining.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that joints are ready to receive work.
- B. Verify that backing materials are compatible with sealants.
- C. Verify that backer rods are of the correct size.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Remove loose materials and foreign matter that could impair adhesion of sealant.
- B. Clean joints, and prime as necessary, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Perform preparation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and ASTM C1193.
- D. Mask elements and surfaces adjacent to joints from damage and disfigurement due to sealant work; be aware that sealant drips and smears may not be completely removable.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Perform work in accordance with sealant manufacturer's requirements for preparation of surfaces and material installation instructions.
- B. Perform installation in accordance with ASTM C1193.
- C. Perform acoustical sealant application work in accordance with ASTM C919.
- D. Measure joint dimensions and size joint backers to achieve width-to-depth ratio, neck dimension, and surface bond area as recommended by manufacturer, except where specific dimensions are indicated.
- E. Install bond breaker backing tape where backer rod cannot be used.
- F. Install sealant free of air pockets, foreign embedded matter, ridges, and sags, and without getting sealant on adjacent surfaces.
- G. Do not install sealant when ambient temperature is outside manufacturer's recommended temperature range, or will be outside that range during the entire curing period, unless manufacturer's approval is obtained and instructions are followed.
- H. Nonsag Sealants: Tool surface concave, unless otherwise indicated; remove masking tape immediately after tooling sealant surface.

### 3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform field quality control inspection/testing as specified in PART 1 under QUALITY ASSURANCE article.
- B. Non-Destructive Adhesion Testing: If there are any failures in first 100 linear feet, notify Architect immediately.
- C. Remove and replace failed portions of sealants using same materials and procedures as indicated for original installation.

### 3.05 POST-OCCUPANCY

- A. Post-Occupancy Inspection: Perform visual inspection of entire length of project sealant joints at a time that joints have opened to their greatest width; i.e. at low temperature in thermal cycle. Report failures immediately and repair.

END OF SECTION 079200

SECTION 080671

DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

HARDWARE SETS

HW SET # 1.0

Hinge	T4A3386 x NRP	US32D	MK
1 Rim Exit Device	ED5200 K157	630	RU
1 Cylinder	AS REQUIRED	626	RU
1 Door Pull	BF111 x MTG 12HD	US32D	RO
1 Door Closer	DC6210 A4	689	RU
1 Threshold	2005AT		PE
1 Set Weatherstrip	303AS		PE
1 Door Bottom Sweep	3452CNB		PE

HW SET # 2.0

Hinge	T4A3386 x NRP	US32D	MK
1 Rim Exit Device	ED5200 K157	630	RU
2 Cylinder	AS REQUIRED	626	RU
1 Door Pull	BF111 x MTG 12HD	US32D	RO
1 Automatic Operator	6060/6070	689	NO
1 Threshold	2005AT		PE
1 Set Weatherstrip	303AS		PE
1 Door Bottom Sweep	3452CNB		PE
2 Door Switch	506		NO
1 Keyswitch	MKA		SU

OPERATION: DOOR SWITCH FROM EITHER SIDE OF OPENING ACTIVATES AUTOMATIC OPERATOR ALLOWING INGRESS AND EGRESS WHEN EXIT DEVICE PUSH BAR IS IN THE DOGGED POSITION.

NOTE: KEYSWITCH TURNS OFF DOOR SWITCH AFTER HOURS.

HW SET # 3.0

Hinge	T4A3386	US32D	MK
1 Deadlock	ML2012	630	RU
1 Push Bar & Pull	11147-2 x MTG T1HD	US32D	RO
1 Door Closer	DC6200	689	RU
1 Door Stop	483	US26D	RO
1 Threshold	171A		PE
1 Set Weatherstrip	303AS		PE
1 Door Bottom	222APK		PE

HW SET # 4.0

Hinge	TA2714	US26D	MK
1 Privacy Set w/Indicator	ML2060 LWA M34 M19V	630	RU
1 Door Closer	DC6210 A4	689	RU
1 Mop Plate	K1050 6" CSK 3BE	US32D	RO
1 Kick Plate	K1050 8" CSK 3BE	US32D	RO
1 Set Door Seals/Silencers	S88D/608 AS REQUIRED		PE

HW SET # 5.0

Hinge	TA2714	US26D	MK
1 Storeroom Lock	ML2057 LWA	630	RU
1 Door Closer	DC6200	689	RU
1 Kick Plate	K1050 8" CSK 3BE	US32D	RO
1 Door Stop	406/441CU	32D/26D	RO
1 Set Door Seals/Silencers	S88D/608 AS REQUIRED		PE

HW SET # 6.0

Hinge	TA2714	US26D	MK
1 Storeroom Lock	ML2057 LWA	630	RU
1 Door Closer	DC6210	689	RU
1 Kick Plate	K1050 8" CSK 3BE	US32D	RO
1 Wall Stop	406	US32D	RO
1 Set Door Seals/Silencers	S88D/608 AS REQUIRED		PE

HW SET # 7.0

Hinge	T4A3786	US26D	MK
1 Push Bar & Pull	11147-2 x MTG T1HD	US32D	RO
1 Door Closer	DC6210 A4	689	RU
1 Kick Plate	K1050 8" CSK 3BE	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

HW SET # 8.0

1 Cylinder	AS REQUIRED	626	RU
------------	-------------	-----	----

NOTE: ALUMINUM AUTOMATIC SLIDER - BALANCE OF HARDWARE FURNISHED IN OTHER SECTION BY DOOR MANUFACTURER.

HW SET # 9.0

NOTE: ALUMINUM AUTOMATIC SLIDER - ALL HARDWARE FURNISHED IN OTHER SECTION BY DOOR MANUFACTURER.

HW SET # 10.0

2 Door Closer DC6210 A11 x BRKTS REQUIRED 689 RU

NOTE: BALANCE OF EXISTING HARDWARE TO REMAIN.

NOTE: INSTALL DOOR CLOSERS TO SWING NOT MORE THAN 90 DEGREES.

GENERAL NOTE FOR EXISTING FRAMES:

NOTE: IT IS THE RESPONSIBILITY OF THE HARDWARE SUPPLIER TO FIELD VERIFY THAT ALL NEW HARDWARE SPECIFIED ON EXISTING OPENINGS WILL WORK WITH EXISTING FRAME PREPS. PROVIDE ADAPTER PLATES AS REQUIRED TO COVER EXISTING CUT-OUTS THAT ARE NOT USED.

MANUFACTURERS ABBREVIATIONS:

1. MK - McKinney
2. RU - Corbin Russwin
3. RO - Rockwood
4. NO - Norton
5. PE - Pemko
6. SU - Securitron
7. OT - OTHER

END OF SECTION 08 06 71

SECTION 081113

HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Non-fire-rated hollow metal doors and frames.
- B. Hollow metal frames for wood doors.
- C. Thermally insulated hollow metal doors with frames.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 081416 - Flush Wood Doors.
- B. Section 087100 - Door Hardware.
- C. Section 099113 - Exterior Painting: Field painting.
- D. Section 099123 - Interior Painting: Field painting.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ADA Standards - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Standards for Accessible Design.
- B. ANSI/SDI A250.4 - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Physical Endurance for Steel Doors, Frames and Frame Anchors.
- C. ANSI/SDI A250.8 - Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames (SDI-100).
- D. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.
- E. ASTM A1008/A1008M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable.
- F. ASTM A1011/A1011M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength.
- G. ICC A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities.
- H. NAAMM HMMA 840 - Guide Specifications for Installation and Storage of Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.
- I. NAAMM HMMA 860 - Guide Specifications for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings of all items specified herein. Obtain approval of Drawings prior to proceeding with manufacturing. Shop drawings shall indicate following: elevations of each door type; details of each frame type, location in building for each item; conditions at openings with various wall thicknesses and materials; typical and special details of construction; methods of assembling sections; location and installation requirements for hardware; size, shape and thickness of materials; anchorage; joints and connections; and any additional pertinent information.

## 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with NAAMM HMMA 840 or ANSI/SDI A250.8 (SDI-100) in accordance with specified requirements.
- B. Protect with resilient packaging; avoid humidity build-up under coverings; prevent corrosion and adverse effects on factory applied painted finish.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Hollow Metal Doors and Frames:
  - 1. Ceco Door, an Assa Abloy Group company: [www.assaabloydss.com](http://www.assaabloydss.com).
  - 2. Curries, an Assa Abloy Group company: [www.assaabloydss.com](http://www.assaabloydss.com).
  - 3. Fleming Door Products, an Assa Abloy Group company: [www.assaabloydss.com](http://www.assaabloydss.com).
  - 4. Steelcraft, an Allegion brand: [www.allegion.com/sle](http://www.allegion.com/sle).
  - 5. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

### 2.02 DESIGN CRITERIA

- A. Requirements for Hollow Metal Doors and Frames:
  - 1. Steel used for fabrication of doors and frames shall comply with one or more of the following requirements; Galvannealed steel conforming to ASTM A653/A653M, cold-rolled steel conforming to ASTM A1008/A1008M, or hot-rolled pickled and oiled (HRPO) steel conforming to ASTM A1011/A1011M, Commercial Steel (CS) Type B for each.
  - 2. Accessibility: Comply with ICC A117.1 and ADA Standards.
  - 3. Exterior Door Top Closures: Flush end closure channel, with top and door faces aligned.
  - 4. Door Edge Profile: Manufacturers standard for application indicated.
  - 5. Typical Door Face Sheets: Flush.
  - 6. Zinc Coating for Typical Exterior Locations: Provide metal components zinc-coated (galvanized) and/or zinc-iron alloy-coated (galvannealed) by the hot-dip process in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, with manufacturer's standard coating thickness, unless noted otherwise for specific hollow metal doors and frames.
    - a. Based on NAAMM HMMA Custom Guidelines: Provide at least A25/ZF75 (galvannealed) for interior applications, and at least A60/ZF180 (galvannealed) or G60/Z180 (galvanized) for corrosive locations.
- B. Combined Requirements: If a particular door and frame unit is indicated to comply with more than one type of requirement, comply with the specified requirements for each type; for instance, an exterior door that is also indicated as being sound-rated must comply with the requirements specified for exterior doors and for sound-rated doors; where two requirements conflict, comply with the most stringent.

### 2.03 HOLLOW METAL DOORS

- A. Exterior Doors: Thermally insulated.
  - 1. Based on SDI Standards: ANSI/SDI A250.8 (SDI-100).
    - a. Level 3 - Extra Heavy-duty.
    - b. Physical Performance Level A, 1,000,000 cycles; in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.4.



- c. Model 3 - Stile and Rail.
- d. Door Face Metal Thickness: 16 gage, 0.053 inch, minimum.
- 2. Door Core Material: Manufacturers standard core material/construction and in compliance with requirements.
- 3. Door Thermal Resistance: R-Value of 6.0 minimum, for installed thickness of polystyrene.
- 4. Door Thickness: 1-3/4 inch, nominal.
- 5. Weatherstripping: Refer to Section 087100.
- 6. Door Finish: Factory primed and field finished.

#### 2.04 HOLLOW METAL FRAMES

- A. Comply with standards and/or custom guidelines as indicated for corresponding door in accordance with applicable door frame requirements.
- B. Frame Finish: Factory primed and field finished.
- C. Exterior Door Frames: Fully welded.
  - 1. Galvanizing: Components hot-dipped zinc-iron alloy-coated (galvannealed) in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, with A40/ZF120 coating.
  - 2. Weatherstripping: Separate, see Section 087100.
- D. Interior Door Frames, Non-Fire Rated: Knock-down type.
- E. Frames for Wood Doors: Comply with frame requirements in accordance with corresponding door.

#### 2.05 ACCESSORIES

- A. Silencers: Resilient rubber, fitted into drilled hole; provide three on strike side of single door, three on center mullion of pairs, and two on head of pairs without center mullions.
- B. Temporary Frame Spreaders: Provide for factory- or shop-assembled frames.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.
- C. Verify that finished walls are in plane to ensure proper door alignment.

#### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install doors and frames in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and related requirements of specified door and frame standards or custom guidelines indicated.
- B. Coordinate frame anchor placement with wall construction.
- C. Install door hardware as specified in Section 087100.

#### 3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Diagonal Distortion: 1/16 inch measured with straight edge, corner to corner.

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust for smooth and balanced door movement.

3.05 SCHEDULE

- A. Refer to Door and Frame Schedule.

END OF SECTION 081113

SECTION 081416

FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Flush wood doors; flush and panel configuration; non-rated.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 081113 - Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.
- B. Section 087100 - Door Hardware.
- C. Section 088000 - Glazing.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM E90 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements.
- B. AWI (QCP) - Quality Certification Program.
- C. WDMA I.S. 1A - Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Indicate door core materials and construction; veneer species, type and characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show doors and frames, elevations, sizes, types, swings, undercuts, beveling, blocking for hardware, factory machining, factory finishing, cutouts for glazing and other details.
- C. Samples: Submit two samples of door construction, 6 x 6 inch in size cut from top corner of each type of door. For factory finished doors provide samples illustrating wood grain, stain color and sheen.
- D. Warranty, executed in Owner's name.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Package, deliver and store doors in accordance with specified quality standard.
- B. Accept doors on site in manufacturer's packaging. Inspect for damage.
- C. Protect doors with resilient packaging sealed with heat shrunk plastic. Do not store in damp or wet areas; or in areas where sunlight might bleach veneer. Seal top and bottom edges with tinted sealer if stored more than one week. Break seal on site to permit ventilation.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Interior Doors: Provide manufacturer's warranty for the life of the installation.
- C. Include coverage for delamination of veneer, warping beyond specified installation tolerances, defective materials, and telegraphing core construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Wood Veneer Faced Doors:
  - 1. Eggers Industries.
  - 2. Marshfield DoorSystems, Inc.
  - 3. Oshkosh Architectural Door Company
  - 4. VT Industries, Inc.
  - 5. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

### 2.02 DOORS

- A. Doors: Refer to drawings for locations and additional requirements.
  - 1. Quality Standard: Premium Grade, Heavy Duty performance, in accordance with WDMA I.S. 1A.
  - 2. Wood Veneer Faced Doors: 5-ply unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Interior Doors: 1-3/4 inches thick unless otherwise indicated; flush construction.
  - 1. Provide solid core doors at each location.

### 2.03 DOOR AND PANEL CORES

- A. Non-Rated Solid Core Doors: Type particleboard core (PC), plies and faces as indicated above.

### 2.04 DOOR FACINGS

- A. Veneer Facing for Transparent Finish: Red oak, HPVA Grade AA, plain sliced, with book between leaves of veneer, running of spliced veneer leaves assembled on door or panel face.
  - 1. Vertical Edges: Same species as face veneer.
  - 2. "Running Match" each pair of doors and doors in close proximity to each other.

### 2.05 DOOR CONSTRUCTION

- A. Fabricate doors in accordance with AWI Quality Standards, Section 1300 requirements.
- B. Cores Constructed with Stiles and Rails.
- C. Provide solid blocks at lock edge and top of door for closer for hardware reinforcement.
  - 1. Provide solid blocking for other throughbolted hardware.
- D. Fit door edge trim to edge of stiles after applying veneer facing.
- E. Glazed Openings: Non-removable stops on non-secure side; sizes and configurations as indicated on drawings.
- F. Factory machine doors for hardware other than surface-mounted hardware, in accordance with hardware requirements and dimensions.
- G. Factory fit doors for frame opening dimensions identified on shop drawings, with edge clearances in accordance with specified quality standard.
- H. Provide edge clearances in accordance with the quality standard specified.

## 2.06 FACTORY FINISHING - WOOD VENEER DOORS

- A. Finish work in accordance with WDMA I.S. 1A for grade specified and as follows:
  - 1. Transparent:
    - a. System - TR-4, Conversion Varnish.
    - b. Stain: As selected by Architect.
    - c. Sheen: Satin.
- B. Seal door top edge with color sealer to match door facing.

## 2.07 ACCESSORIES

- A. Hollow Metal Door Frames: As specified in Section 081113.
- B. Glazing: As specified in Section 088000.
- C. Glazing Stops: Wood, of same species as door facing, butted corners; prepared for countersink style tamper proof screws.
- D. Door Hardware: As specified in Section 087100.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify that opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.
- C. Do not install doors in frame openings that are not plumb or are out-of-tolerance for size or alignment.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install doors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and specified quality standard.
- B. Factory-Finished Doors: Do not field cut or trim; if fit or clearance is not correct, replace door.
- C. Clearances:
  - 1. Provide clearances of 1/8 inch at sides and top; lock edge shall have required bevel to clear frame. Provide at the bottom, for specific locations, the minimum adequate clearance of the finish floor coverings and/or thresholds, not to exceed 3/4 inch.
  - 2. Trim equal amounts of wood from each stile and rail when fitting doors.
- D. Use machine tools to cut or drill for hardware.
- E. Coordinate installation of doors with installation of frames and hardware.
- F. Coordinate installation of glazing.

### 3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Conform to specified quality standard for fit and clearance tolerances.
- B. Conform to specified quality standard for telegraphing, warp, and squareness.

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors for smooth and balanced door movement.
- B. Adjust closers for full closure.

3.05 SCHEDULE - SEE DRAWINGS

END OF SECTION 081416

SECTION 083100

ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Ceiling access door and frame units.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 092116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Openings in ceilings.
- B. Section 099123 - Interior Painting: Field paint finish.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide sizes, types, finishes, hardware, scheduled locations, and details of adjoining work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 CEILING UNITS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. ACUDOR Products Inc: [www.acudor.com/#sle](http://www.acudor.com/#sle).
  - 2. Babcock-Davis: [www.babcockdavis.com](http://www.babcockdavis.com).
  - 3. Best Access Doors: [www.bestaccessdoors.com](http://www.bestaccessdoors.com).
  - 4. Cendrex, Inc: [www.cendrex.com/#sle](http://www.cendrex.com/#sle).
  - 5. Karp Associates, Inc: [www.karpinc.com](http://www.karpinc.com).
  - 6. Milcor by Commercial Products Group of Hart & Cooley, Inc; Model DW: [www.milcorinc.com](http://www.milcorinc.com). (Basis of Design)
  - 7. Nystrom, Inc: [www.nystrom.com/#sle](http://www.nystrom.com/#sle).
  - 8. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Units: Factory fabricated door and frame, fully assembled units with corner joints welded, filled and ground flush; square and without rack or warp; coordinate requirements with type of installation assembly being used for each unit.
  - 1. Material: Steel.
  - 2. Style: Exposed frame with door surface flush with frame surface.
    - a. Gypsum Board Mounting Criteria: Use drywall bead type frame.
  - 3. Door Style: Single thickness with rolled or turned in edges.
  - 4. Frames: 16 gage, 0.0598 inch, minimum thickness.
  - 5. Steel Finish: Primed.
  - 6. Sizes:
    - a. Gypsum Ceilings (Non-Rated): 16 x 16 inches unless otherwise indicated or required..
  - 7. Hardware:
    - a. Hinges for Non-Fire-Rated Units: Continuous piano hinge.
    - b. Latch/Lock: Screw driver slot for quarter turn cam latch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that rough openings are correctly sized and located.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install frames plumb and level in openings, and secure units rigidly in place.
- C. Position units to provide convenient access to concealed equipment when necessary.

END OF SECTION 083100



SECTION 084229

AUTOMATIC ENTRANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Packaged power-operated door assemblies of following types:
  - 1. Sliding type.
- B. Automatic sliding doors, with frames.
- C. Controllers, actuators and safety devices.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants.
- B. Section 084313 - Aluminum-Framed Storefronts.
- C. Section 087100 - Door Hardware.
- D. Section 088000 - Glazing.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ADA Standards - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Standards for Accessible Design.
- B. ASTM E283 - Standard Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen.
- C. BHMA A156.10 - American National Standard for Power Operated Pedestrian Doors.
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- E. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code.
- F. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Indicate layout and dimensions; head, jamb, and sill conditions; elevations; components, anchorage, recesses, materials, and finishes, electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
  - 2. Identify installation tolerances required, assembly conditions, routing of service lines and conduit, and locations of operating components and boxes.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on system components, sizes, features, and finishes.
- C. Maintenance Contract.
- D. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of concealed equipment, services, and conduit.
- E. Maintenance Data: Include manufacturer's parts list and maintenance instructions for each type of hardware and operating component.
- F. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

- G. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 016000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
  - 2. Wrenches and other tools required for maintenance of equipment.

#### 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories Inc., as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least three years documented experience.

#### 1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Correct defective Work within a one year period after Date of Final Acceptance.
- B. Provide one year manufacturer warranty for operating unit.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Sliding Automatic Entrance Door Assemblies:
  - 1. ASSA ABLOY Entrance Solutions; Besam SL500: [www.besam-usa.com/#sle](http://www.besam-usa.com/#sle).
  - 2. Horton Automatics; Series 2000 Linear Drive: [www.hortondoors.com](http://www.hortondoors.com).
  - 3. record-usa; 5100 Series: [www.record-usa.com/#sle](http://www.record-usa.com/#sle).
  - 4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

#### 2.02 POWER OPERATED DOORS

- A. Power Operated Doors: Provide products that comply with NFPA 101 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction; provide equipment selected for actual door weight and for light pedestrian traffic, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Sliding and Folding Door Operators: In the event of power failure, provide for manual open, close, and break-away operation of door leaves.
  - 2. Packaged Door Assemblies: Provide components by single manufacturer, factory-assembled, including doors, frames, operators, actuators, and safeties.
    - a. Finish exposed equipment components to match door and frame finish.
  - 3. Air Leakage: Maximum of 1.0 cu ft/min/sq ft of wall area, when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at 1.57 lbs/sq ft pressure differential across assembly.
- B. Sliding and Folding Doors with Full Power Operators: Comply with BHMA A156.10; safeties required; provide break-away operation unless otherwise indicated; in the event of break-away operation, interrupt power operation.
  - 1. Force Required to Swing Break-Away Panel: 50 pound-force, maximum, measured at 1 inch from the latch edge of the door at any point in the closing cycle.
- C. Operators:
  - 1. Electric Operators: 1/8 hp minimum, self-contained.

#### 2.03 AUTOMATIC ENTRANCE DOOR ASSEMBLIES

- A. Comply with ADA Standards for egress requirements.

- B. Framing and Transom Members: Provide manufacturer's standard extruded aluminum framing, reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
  - 1. Nominal Sizes:
    - a. Single Slide and Bi-Parting Sliding Doors: 1-3/4 inch wide by 4-1/2 inch deep.
  - 2. Transoms: Provide flush glazed transom with framing that is integral with automatic entrance framing system.
- C. Door and Sidelight Construction: Heavy duty interlocked extruded aluminum tubular stile and rail sections, through-rod bolted construction with steel corner support at hinge stile of carrier-suspended swinging panels or mechanically fastened corners with welded reinforcing brackets to reduce sag in sliding or breakout mode.
  - 1. Door Thickness: 1-3/4 inch, nominal.
  - 2. Stile Design:
    - a. Medium stile, 3-1/2 inch, nominal width.
  - 3. Top Rail Height: 3-1/2 inches, nominal.
  - 4. Bottom Rail Height: 8 inch, nominal.
  - 5. Glazing Stops: Manufacturer's standard snap-on extruded aluminum square stops with preformed resilient glazing gaskets.
  - 6. Glazing Stop Width: Manufacturers standard.
  - 7. Glazing Thickness: 1 inch insulated glass. See Section 088000.
- D. Automatic Sliding Door : Bi-parting double leaf track-mounted, electric operation, extruded aluminum door, with frame, and operator concealed overhead.
  - 1. Operation: Power open, power boost operation.
  - 2. Exterior-Side Actuator/Safety: Motion sensor.
  - 3. Interior-Side Actuator/Safety: Motion sensor.
  - 4. Door and Frame Finish: Anodized, dark bronze to match storefront wall finish.

#### 2.04 ACTUATORS AND SENSORS

- A. Controller: Provide microprocessor operated controller for each door.
- B. Comply with BHMA A156.10 for actuator and safety types and zones.
- C. Combined Activation and Safety Sensor System: Shall be 24 VDC, class II circuit; and shall be adjusted and installed in accordance with ANSI/BHMA A156.10. The installation shall be performed by an AAADM Certified Technician with a minimum of one (1) year in the service related field.
  - 1. Hold-Open Beams: Two infrared photoelectric beams to be mounted in vertical rails of the sidelite or in the vertical jamb, with the photoelectric beams wired directly to the micro processor. The photo eye beams are mounted at 24 and 48 inches respectively above finished floor. Breaking either beam will cause a closing door to re-open and remain open until the path between the emitters and receivers is cleared. Once cleared, the signal is reinstated and the door will close and be fully functional. In the full closed position, the beams will not open the door.
- D. Push Plate Actuator: Standard wall mounted, surface mounted momentary contact type; satin stainless steel plate; 6 inches diameter; labeled PUSH.

## 2.05 ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS AND COMPONENTS

- A. Electrical Characteristics:
  - 1. 1/8 hp.
- B. Wiring Terminations: Provide terminal lugs to match branch circuit conductor quantities, sizes, and materials indicated. Enclose terminal lugs in terminal box sized to NFPA 70.
- C. Disconnect Switch: Factory mount disconnect switch in control panel.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work and dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.
- B. Verify that electric power is available and is of the correct characteristics.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install equipment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Provide for thermal expansion and contraction of door and frame units and live and dead loads that may be transmitted to operating equipment.
- C. Provide for dimensional distortion of components during operation.
- D. Coordinate installation of components with related and adjacent work; level and plumb.

### 3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust door equipment for correct function and smooth operation.

### 3.04 CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protection, clean exposed surfaces.

### 3.05 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Demonstrate operation, operating components, adjustment features, and lubrication requirements.

END OF SECTION 084229

SECTION 084313

ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Aluminum-framed storefront, with vision glass.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between frames and adjacent construction.
- B. Section 084229 - Automatic Entrances.
- C. Section 088000 - Glazing: Glass and glazing accessories.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AAMA 611 - Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum.
- B. ASTM B209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate.
- C. ASTM B209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate (Metric).
- D. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes.
- E. ASTM B221M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric).
- F. ASTM E283 - Standard Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen.
- G. ASTM E330/E330M - Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Doors, Skylights and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
- H. ASTM E331 - Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
- I. ASTM E1105 - Standard Test Method for Field Determination of Water Penetration of Installed Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls, by Uniform or Cyclic Static Air Pressure Difference.
- J. SSPC-Paint 20 - Zinc-Rich Primers (Type I, "Inorganic," and Type II, "Organic").

1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate with installation of other components that comprise the exterior enclosure.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Indicate system dimensions, framed opening requirements and tolerances, affected related Work, expansion and contraction joint location and details, project specific conditions at surrounding construction, and field welding required.
- B. Samples: Submit two samples 12 by 12 inches in size illustrating finished aluminum surface, glass, glazing materials.

- C. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

#### 1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finished aluminum surfaces with strippable coating. Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings that bond to aluminum when exposed to sunlight or weather.

#### 1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Correct defective Work within a five year period after the Date of Final Acceptance.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 BASIS OF DESIGN -- FRAMING FOR INSULATING GLAZING

- A. Front-Set Style, Thermally-Broken:
  - 1. Basis of Design: Kawneer Trifab VersaGlaze 451T.
  - 2. Vertical Mullion Dimensions: 2 inches wide by 4-1/2 inches deep.
- B. Other Manufacturers: Provide either the product identified as "Basis of Design" or an equivalent product of one of the manufacturers listed below:
  - 1. C.R. Laurence Company, Inc; U.S. Aluminum: [www.crl-arch.com/sle](http://www.crl-arch.com/sle).
  - 2. EFCO, a Pella Company: [www.efcocorp.com/sle](http://www.efcocorp.com/sle).
  - 3. Tubelite Inc.: [www.tubeliteinc.com](http://www.tubeliteinc.com).
  - 4. Trulite Glass & Aluminum Solutions, LLC: [www.trulite.com](http://www.trulite.com).
  - 5. YKK AP America Inc: [www.ykkap.com](http://www.ykkap.com).
- C. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
  - 1. For any product not identified as "Basis of Design", submit information as specified for substitutions.

#### 2.02 EXTERIOR STOREFRONT

- A. Aluminum-Framed Storefront: Factory fabricated, factory finished aluminum framing members with infill, and related flashings, anchorage and attachment devices.
  - 1. Unitized, shop assembly.
  - 2. Glazing Rabbet: For 1 inch insulating glazing.
  - 3. Finish: Class II color anodized.
    - a. Factory finish all surfaces that will be exposed in completed assemblies.
  - 4. Finish Color: Dark bronze.
  - 5. Fabrication: Joints and corners flush, hairline, and weatherproof, accurately fitted and secured; prepared to receive anchors and hardware; fasteners and attachments concealed from view; reinforced as required for imposed loads.
  - 6. Construction: Eliminate noises caused by wind and thermal movement, prevent vibration harmonics, and prevent "stack effect" in internal spaces.
  - 7. System Internal Drainage: Drain to the exterior by means of a weep drainage network any water entering joints, condensation occurring in glazing channel, and migrating moisture occurring within system.
  - 8. Expansion/Contraction: Provide for expansion and contraction within system components caused by cycling temperature range of 170 degrees F over a 12 hour period without causing detrimental effect to system components, anchorages, and other building elements.

9. Movement: Allow for movement between storefront and adjacent construction, without damage to components or deterioration of seals.
  10. Perimeter Clearance: Minimize space between framing members and adjacent construction while allowing expected movement.
  11. Air and Vapor Seal: Maintain continuous air barrier and vapor retarder throughout assembly, primarily in line with inside pane of glazing and inner sheet of infill panel and heel bead of glazing compound.
- B. Performance Requirements:
1. Wind Loads: Design and size components to withstand the specified load requirements without damage or permanent set, when tested in accordance with ASTM E330/E330M, using loads 1.5 times the design wind loads and 10 second duration of maximum load.
    - a. Design Wind Loads: Comply with requirements of applicable code.
    - b. Member Deflection: Limit member deflection to flexure limit of glass in any direction, with full recovery of glazing materials.
  2. Water Penetration Resistance: No uncontrolled water on interior face, when tested in accordance with ASTM E331 at pressure differential of 8 psf.
  3. Air Leakage: Maximum of 0.06 cu ft/min sq ft of wall area, when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at 6.27 psf pressure differential across assembly.

## 2.03 COMPONENTS

- A. Aluminum Framing Members: Tubular aluminum sections.
1. Framing members for interior applications need not be thermally broken.
  2. Glazing Stops: Flush.
- B. Glazing: As specified in Section 088000.

## 2.04 MATERIALS

- A. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M).
- B. Sheet Aluminum: ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M).
- C. Fasteners: Stainless steel.
- D. Concealed Flashings: Sheet aluminum, 26 gage, 0.017 inch minimum thickness.
- E. Glazing Gaskets: Type to suit application to achieve weather, moisture, and air infiltration requirements.
- F. Glazing Accessories: As specified in Section 088000.

## 2.05 FINISHES

- A. Class II Color Anodized Finish: AAMA 611 AA-M12C22A34 Electrolytically deposited colored anodic coating not less than 0.4 mils thick.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify dimensions, tolerances, and method of attachment with other work.
- B. Verify that wall openings and adjoining air and vapor seal materials are ready to receive work of this section.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install storefront door in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Attach to structure to permit sufficient adjustment to accommodate construction tolerances and other irregularities.
- C. Provide alignment attachments and shims to permanently fasten system to building structure.
- D. Align assembly plumb and level, free of warp or twist. Maintain assembly dimensional tolerances, aligning with adjacent work.
- E. Provide thermal isolation where components penetrate or disrupt building insulation.
- F. Install sill flashings. Turn up ends and edges; seal to adjacent work to form water tight dam.
- G. Where fasteners penetrate sill flashings, make watertight by seating and sealing fastener heads to sill flashing.
- H. Pack fibrous insulation in shim spaces at perimeter of assembly to maintain continuity of thermal barrier.
- I. Install glass in accordance with Section 088000, using glazing method required to achieve performance criteria.
- J. Touch-up minor damage to factory applied finish; replace components that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

### 3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 0.06 inch per 3 feet non-cumulative or 0.06 inch per 10 feet, whichever is less.
- B. Maximum Misalignment of Two Adjoining Members Abutting in Plane: 1/32 inch.

### 3.04 CLEANING

- A. Remove protective material from pre-finished aluminum surfaces.
- B. Wash down surfaces with a solution of mild detergent in warm water, applied with soft, clean wiping cloths. Take care to remove dirt from corners. Wipe surfaces clean.

### 3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage until Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 084313



SECTION 085200

WOOD WINDOWS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Factory fabricated wood windows.
- B. Glazing.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 072500 - Weather Barriers: Sealing frames to weather barrier installed on adjacent construction.
- B. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between frames and adjacent construction.
- C. Section 088000 - Glazing.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/1.S.2/A440 - North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for windows, doors, and skylights.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Show component dimensions, anchorage and fasteners, glass, and internal drainage details.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate opening dimensions, framed opening tolerances, affected related work, and installation requirements.
- C. Submit two samples 12 by 12 inches in size illustrating window frame section, factory finished surfaces, glazing, and glazing materials.
- D. Submit two samples of each type of operating hardware.
- E. Grade Substantiation: Prior to submitting shop drawings or starting fabrication, submit one of the following showing compliance with specified grade:
  - 1. Evidence of AAMA Certification; label or other documentation.
  - 2. Evidence of WDMA Certification.
  - 3. Evidence of CSA Certification.
  - 4. Test report(s) by independent testing agency itemizing compliance and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect factory finished surfaces with wrapping. Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings that bond when exposed to sunlight or weather.

1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install sealants when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F.

## 1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Correct defective Work within a five year period after Date of Final Acceptance.
- B. Provide five year manufacturer warranty for insulated glass units from seal failure, interpane dusting or misting, and replacement of same.
- C. Warranty: Include coverage for the following:
  - 1. Degradation of color finish.
  - 2. Delamination or separation of finish cladding from window member.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Vinyl Clad Wood Windows:
  - 1. Andersen Windows, Inc: [www.andersenwindows.com/#sle](http://www.andersenwindows.com/#sle).
  - 2. Jeld-Wen: [www.jeld-wen.com](http://www.jeld-wen.com).
  - 3. Marvin: [www.marvin.com](http://www.marvin.com)
  - 4. Pella Corp: [www.pellacommercial.com/#sle](http://www.pellacommercial.com/#sle).
  - 5. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

### 2.02 WOOD WINDOWS

- A. Wood Windows: Wood frame and sash, factory fabricated and assembled.
  - 1. Exterior Finish: Plastic clad.
  - 2. Interior Finish: Same as exterior.
  - 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 4. Configuration: Fixed, non-operable.
  - 5. Window Product Types: FW - Fixed window, in accordance with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.
  - 6. Factory glazed; dry glazing method.
  - 7. Wood Species: Clear pine, preservative treated using treatment type suitable for required finish.
  - 8. Frame and Sash Members: Mortise and tenon joints. Glue and steel pin joints to hairline fit, weather tight.
  - 9. Vinyl Cladding: Extruded PVC, low sheen surface, factory fit to profile of wood members.
  - 10. Weather Stop Flange: Continuous at perimeter of unit.
  - 11. Clearances and Shim Spacing: Minimum required for installation and dynamic movement of perimeter seal.
  - 12. Fasteners: Concealed from view.
  - 13. Internal Drainage of Glazing Spaces to Exterior: Weep holes.
  - 14. Operable Units: Double weatherstripped.

### 2.03 COMPONENTS

- A. Glazing: Double glazed, clear, Low-E coated, argon filled, with glass thicknesses as recommended by manufacturer for specified wind conditions.
- B. Frames: 4 inch wide by 1-5/8 inch deep profile; flush extruded PVC glass stops to match cladding of screw fastened type, sloped for wash.
- C. Fasteners: Stainless steel.

- D. Sealant and Backing Materials: As specified in Section 079200 of types as indicated.
  - 1. Perimeter Sealant: Appropriate for application.
  - 2. Sealant Used Within System (Not Used for Glazing): Appropriate for application.
- E. Accessories: Provide related flashings, and anchorage and attachment devices.

#### 2.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 requirements for the specific window type in accordance with the following:
  - 1. Performance Class (PC): LC.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify wall openings and adjoining air and vapor seal materials are ready to receive work of this section.

#### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install windows in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Attach window frame and shims to perimeter opening to accommodate construction tolerances and other irregularities.
- C. Align window plumb and level, free of warp or twist. Maintain dimensional tolerances and alignment with adjacent work.
- D. Set sill members and sill flashing in continuous bead of sealant.
- E. Install glass in accordance with Section 088000.

#### 3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from Level or Plumb: 1/16 inch per 3 ft non-cumulative or 1/8 inch per 10 ft, whichever is less.

#### 3.04 CLEANING

- A. Remove protective material from factory finished surfaces.
- B. Wash surfaces by method recommended and acceptable to window manufacturer; rinse and wipe surfaces clean.
- C. Remove excess glazing sealant by moderate use of mineral spirits or other solvent acceptable to sealant manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 085200

SECTION 088000

GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Insulating glass units.
- B. Glazing units.
- C. Glazing compounds and accessories.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 072500 - Weather Barriers.
- B. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealants for other than glazing purposes.
- C. Section 081416 - Flush Wood Doors: Glazed lites in doors.
- D. Section 085200 - Wood Windows: Glazing furnished by window manufacturer.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASCE 7 - Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures.
- B. ASTM C864 - Standard Specification for Dense Elastomeric Compression Seal Gaskets, Setting Blocks, and Spacers.
- C. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
- D. ASTM C1036 - Standard Specification for Flat Glass.
- E. ASTM C1048 - Standard Specification for Heat-Strengthened and Fully Tempered Flat Glass.
- F. ASTM C1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants.
- G. ASTM E1300 - Standard Practice for Determining Load Resistance of Glass in Buildings.
- H. GANA (SM) - GANA Sealant Manual.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data on Insulating Glass Unit and Glazing Unit Glazing Types: Provide structural, physical and environmental characteristics, size limitations, special handling and installation requirements.
- B. Product Data on Glazing Compounds and Accessories: Provide chemical, functional, and environmental characteristics, limitations, special application requirements. Identify available colors.
- C. Samples: Submit two samples 12 by 12 inch in size of glass units.
- D. Samples: Submit 6 inch long bead of glazing sealant, color as selected.
- E. Warranty Documentation: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install glazing when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F.

## 1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Insulating Glass Units: Provide a ten (10) year manufacturer warranty to include coverage for seal failure, interpane dusting or misting, including replacement of failed units.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS - EXTERIOR GLAZING ASSEMBLIES

- A. Provide type and thickness of exterior glazing assemblies to support assembly dead loads, and to withstand live loads caused by positive and negative wind pressure acting normal to plane of glass.
  - 1. Design Pressure: Calculated in accordance with ASCE 7.
  - 2. Comply with ASTM E1300 for design load resistance of glass type, thickness, dimensions, and maximum lateral deflection of supported glass.
  - 3. Provide glass edge support system sufficiently stiff to limit the lateral deflection of supported glass edges to less than 1/175 of their lengths under specified design load.
  - 4. Glass thicknesses listed are minimum.

### 2.02 GLASS MATERIALS

- A. Float Glass: Provide float glass based glazing unless noted otherwise.
  - 1. Annealed Type: ASTM C1036, Type I - Transparent Flat, Class 1 - Clear, Quality-Q3.
  - 2. Heat-Strengthened and Fully Tempered Types: ASTM C1048, Kind HS and FT.

### 2.03 INSULATING GLASS UNITS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. AGC Glass North America, Inc: [www.agc-yourglass.com/#sle](http://www.agc-yourglass.com/#sle).
  - 2. Cardinal Glass Industries: [www.cardinalcorp.com/#sle](http://www.cardinalcorp.com/#sle).
  - 3. Guardian Glass, LLC: [www.guardianglass.com/#sle](http://www.guardianglass.com/#sle).
  - 4. Pilkington North America Inc: [www.pilkington.com/na/#sle](http://www.pilkington.com/na/#sle).Pilkington North America Inc: [www.pilkington.com/na/#sle](http://www.pilkington.com/na/#sle).
  - 5. Viracon, Apogee Enterprises, Inc: [www.viracon.com/#sle](http://www.viracon.com/#sle).
  - 6. Vitro Architectural Glass (formerly PPG Glass): [www.vitroglazings.com/#sle](http://www.vitroglazings.com/#sle). (Basis of Design)
  - 7. Substitutions: Refer to Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

### 2.04 BASIS OF DESIGN - INSULATING CLEAR LOW-E GLASS UNITS

- A. Insulating Glass Units: Vision glazing, with Low-E coating.
  - 1. Applications: Exterior insulating glass glazing unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Space between lites filled with air.
  - 3. Total Thickness: 7/8 inch.
  - 4. Thermal Transmittance (U-Value), Summer - Center of Glass: 0.26, nominal.
  - 5. Visible Light Transmittance (VLT): 64 percent, nominal.
  - 6. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): 0.27, nominal.
  - 7. Visible Light Reflectance, Outside: 12 percent, nominal.
  - 8. Basis of Design - Vitro Architectural Glass (formerly PPG Glass): [www.vitroglazings.com/#sle](http://www.vitroglazings.com/#sle).

9. Outboard Lite: Annealed or fully tempered float glass, 1/4 inch thick, minimum.
  - a. Low-E Coating: Vitro Architectural Glass (formerly PPG Glass) Solarban 70XL on #2 surface.
10. Inboard Lite: Annealed or fully tempered float glass, 1/4 inch thick.
  - a. Coating: No coating on inboard lite.

## 2.05 INSULATING OBSCURE GLASS UNITS

- A. Applications: Exterior insulating glass glazing unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Space between lites filled with air.
- C. Total Thickness: 7/8 inch at windows and 1 inch at storefront inch.
- D. Thermal Transmittance (U-Value), Summer - Center of Glass: 0.26, nominal.
- E. Visible Light Transmittance (VLT): 64 percent, nominal.
- F. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): 0.27, nominal.
- G. Visible Light Reflectance, Outside: 12 percent, nominal.
- H. Basis of Design - Vitro Architectural Glass (formerly PPG Glass):  
[www.vitroglazings.com/#sle](http://www.vitroglazings.com/#sle).
- I. Outboard Lite: Annealed or fully tempered obscure float glass, 1/4 inch thick, minimum.
  1. Obscure Glass: As selected by the Architect.
- J. Inboard Lite: Annealed or fully tempered float glass, 1/4 inch thick.
  1. Coating: No coating on inboard lite.

## 2.06 GLAZING UNITS

- A. Monolithic Interior Vision Glazing:
  1. Applications: Interior glazing unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Glass Type: Fully tempered float glass.
  3. Tint: Clear.
  4. Thickness: 1/4 inch, nominal.

## 2.07 GLAZING COMPOUNDS

- A. Glazing Putty: Polymer modified latex recommended by manufacturer for outdoor use, knife grade consistency; grey color.
- B. Butyl Sealant: Single component; ASTM C920, Grade NS, Class 12-1/2, Uses M and A, Shore A hardness of 10 to 20; black color.
- C. Silicone Sealant: Single component; neutral curing; capable of water immersion without loss of properties; non-bleeding, non-staining; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses M, A, and G; with cured Shore A hardness range of 15 to 25; selected color.

## 2.08 ACCESSORIES

- A. Setting Blocks: Silicone, with 80 to 90 Shore A durometer hardness; ASTM C864 Option II. Length of 0.1 inch for each square foot of glazing or minimum 4 inch x width of glazing rabbet space minus 1/16 inch x height to suit glazing method and pane weight and area.

- B. Glazing Tape, Back Bedding Mastic Type: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids compound with integral resilient spacer rod applicable to application indicated; 5 to 30 cured Shore A durometer hardness; coiled on release paper; black color.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Pecora Corporation: [www.pecora.com](http://www.pecora.com).
    - b. Substitutions: Refer to Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- C. Glazing Gaskets: Resilient silicone extruded shape to suit glazing channel retaining slot; ASTM C864 Option II; color black.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.01 VERIFICATION OF CONDITIONS

- A. Verify that openings for glazing are correctly sized and within tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
- B. Verify that surfaces of glazing channels or recesses are clean, free of obstructions that may impede moisture movement, weeps are clear, and support framing is ready to receive glazing system.

#### 3.02 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install glazing in compliance with written instructions of glass, gaskets, and other glazing material manufacturers, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in glazing referenced standards.
- B. Install glazing sealants in accordance with ASTM C1193, GANA (SM), and in accordance with window and door manufacturer's instructions.

#### 3.03 INSTALLATION - DRY GLAZING METHOD (GASKET GLAZING)

- A. Application - Exterior and/or Interior Glazed: Set glazing infills from either the exterior or the interior of the building.
- B. Place setting blocks at 1/4 points with edge block no more than 6 inch from corners.
- C. Rest glazing on setting blocks and push against fixed stop with sufficient pressure on gasket to attain full contact.
- D. Install removable stops without displacing glazing gasket; exert pressure for full continuous contact.

#### 3.04 INSTALLATION - WET/DRY GLAZING METHOD (PREFORMED TAPE AND SEALANT)

- A. Application - Exterior Glazed: Set glazing infills from the exterior of the building.
- B. Cut glazing tape to length and set against permanent stops, 3/16 inch below sight line. Seal corners by butting tape and dabbing with butyl sealant.
- C. Apply heel bead of butyl sealant along intersection of permanent stop with frame ensuring full perimeter seal between glass and frame to complete the continuity of the air and vapor seal.
- D. Place setting blocks at 1/4 points with edge block no more than 6 inch from corners.
- E. Rest glazing on setting blocks and push against tape and heel bead of sealant with sufficient pressure to attain full contact at perimeter of pane or glass unit.

- F. Install removable stops, with spacer strips inserted between glazing and applied stops 1/4 inch below sight lines.
  - 1. Place glazing tape on glazing pane of unit with tape flush with sight line.
- G. Fill gap between glazing and stop with required type sealant to depth equal to bite of frame on glazing, but not more than 3/8 inch below sight line.
- H. Apply cap bead of required type sealant along void between the stop and the glazing, to uniform line, flush with sight line. Tool or wipe sealant surface smooth.

### 3.05 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess glazing materials from finish surfaces immediately after application using solvents or cleaners recommended by manufacturers.
- B. Remove non-permanent labels immediately after glazing installation is complete.
- C. Clean glass and adjacent surfaces after sealants are fully cured.
- D. Clean glass on both exposed surfaces not more than 4 days prior to Date of Substantial Completion in accordance with glass manufacturer's written recommendations.

END OF SECTION 088000



SECTION 092116

GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Metal channel ceiling framing.
- B. Gypsum wallboard.
- C. Joint treatment and accessories.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C475/C475M - Standard Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Board.
- B. ASTM C557 - Standard Specification for Adhesives for Fastening Gypsum Wallboard to Wood Framing.
- C. ASTM C645 - Standard Specification for Nonstructural Steel Framing Members.
- D. ASTM C754 - Standard Specification for Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-Attached Gypsum Panel Products.
- E. ASTM C840 - Standard Specification for Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board.
- F. ASTM C954 - Standard Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs From 0.033 in. (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness.
- G. ASTM C1002 - Standard Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs.
- H. ASTM C1047 - Standard Specification for Accessories For Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base.
- I. ASTM C1177/C1177M - Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing.
- J. ASTM C1396/C1396M - Standard Specification for Gypsum Board.
- K. ASTM C1658/C1658M - Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Panels.
- L. GA-216 - Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board.
- M. GA-600 - Fire Resistance Design Manual.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide data on metal framing, gypsum board, accessories, and joint finishing system.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain gypsum board products, joint treatment products, and textured coatings from a single manufacturer.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES

- A. Provide completed assemblies complying with ASTM C840 and GA-216.

### 2.02 METAL FRAMING MATERIALS

- A. Manufacturers - Metal Framing, Connectors, and Accessories:
  - 1. Clarkwestern Dietrich Building Systems LLC: [www.clarkdietrich.com](http://www.clarkdietrich.com).
  - 2. Marino: [www.marinoware.com](http://www.marinoware.com).
  - 3. Steel Construction Systems: [www.steelconsystems.com/#sle](http://www.steelconsystems.com/#sle).
  - 4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Non-Loadbearing Framing System Components: ASTM C645; galvanized sheet steel, of size and properties necessary to comply with ASTM C754 for the spacing indicated, with maximum deflection of framing of L/240 at 5 psf.
  - 1. Ceiling Channels: C-shaped.
- C. Ceiling Hangers: Type and size as specified in ASTM C754 for spacing required.

### 2.03 BOARD MATERIALS

- A. Manufacturers - Gypsum-Based Board:
  - 1. CertainTeed Corporation: [www.certainteed.com](http://www.certainteed.com).
  - 2. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum: [www.gpgypsum.com](http://www.gpgypsum.com).
  - 3. National Gypsum Company: [www.nationalgypsum.com](http://www.nationalgypsum.com).
  - 4. USG Corporation: [www.usg.com](http://www.usg.com).
  - 5. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Gypsum Wallboard: Paper-faced gypsum panels as defined in ASTM C1396/C1396M; sizes to minimize joints in place; ends square cut.
  - 1. Application: Use for ceilings, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Thickness:
    - a. Vertical Surfaces: 5/8 inch.
    - b. Ceilings: 1/2 inch.
    - c. Multi-Layer Assemblies: Thicknesses as indicated on drawings.
- C. Backing Board For Non-Wet Areas: Water-resistant gypsum backing board as defined in ASTM C1396/C1396M; sizes to minimum joints in place; ends square cut.
  - 1. Application: Vertical surfaces behind thinset tile, except in wet areas.
  - 2. Type: Regular, in locations indicated.
  - 3. Regular Board Thickness: 1/2 inch.
  - 4. Edges: Tapered.
- D. Ceiling Board: Special sag resistant gypsum ceiling board as defined in ASTM C1396/C1396M; sizes to minimize joints in place; ends square cut.
  - 1. Application: Ceilings, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
  - 3. Edges: Tapered.

## 2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Finishing Accessories: ASTM C1047, galvanized steel or rolled zinc, unless noted otherwise.
  - 1. Types: As detailed or required for finished appearance.
  - 2. Corner Beads: Galvanized steel.
  - 3. Edge Trim: Bead type(s) as detailed.
- B. Joint Materials: ASTM C475/C475M and as recommended by gypsum board manufacturer for project conditions.
  - 1. Tape: 2 inch wide, creased paper tape for joints and corners, except as otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Ready-mixed vinyl-based joint compound.
- C. Screws for Fastening of Gypsum Panel Products to Cold-Formed Steel Studs Less than 0.033 inch in Thickness and Wood Members: ASTM C1002; self-piercing tapping screws, corrosion resistant.
- D. Screws for Attachment to Steel Members From 0.033 to 0.112 Inch in Thickness: ASTM C 954; steel drill screws for application of gypsum board to non-loadbearing steel studs.
- E. Anchorage to Substrate: Tie wire, nails, screws, and other metal supports, of type and size to suit application; to rigidly secure materials in place.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that project conditions are appropriate for work of this section to commence.

### 3.02 FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Framing: Install in accordance with ASTM C754 and manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Suspended Ceilings and Soffits: Space framing and furring members as indicated, or if not indicated, as follows:
  - 1. Hanger Wire: Hanger wire shall be anchored securely to structural steel frame, or to approved anchors in concrete slabs. Space hangers not over 4 feet o.c. in direction of main runner channels, and as specified for runner spacing at right angles to main runners. Provide hanger within 6 inches of ends of main runner runs and of boundary walls, girders or similar interruption of ceiling continuity.
  - 2. Main Runners: Main runners shall be properly positioned and leveled, and hangers shall be saddle-tied along runner. Place main runners not over 4 feet o.c. Hangers shall be attached directly to building structural system and/or floor or roof deck above. In no case will hanging from building mechanical systems, duct, piping, conduit, etc., be permitted. Where interference from building systems does not permit proper attachment of hangers to the building, provide bridging under such items to support hangers at proper spacing. For spaces up to 5 feet, use 2 inch cold-rolled channels as bridging; for spaces over 5 feet, use 20 gage metal studs sized as appropriate for the required space.
  - 3. Level ceiling system to a tolerance of 1/600.
  - 4. Install bracing as required at exterior locations to resist wind uplift.

### 3.03 BOARD INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with ASTM C840, GA-216, and manufacturer's instructions. Install to minimize butt end joints, especially in highly visible locations.
- B. Single-Layer Non-Rated: Install gypsum board parallel to framing, with ends and edges occurring over firm bearing.
  - 1. Exception: Tapered edges to receive joint treatment at right angles to framing.
- C. Installation on Metal Framing: Use screws for attachment of gypsum board.

### 3.04 INSTALLATION OF TRIM AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Control Joints: Place control joints consistent with lines of building spaces and as directed.
  - 1. Not more than 30 feet apart on ceilings over 50 feet long.
- B. Corner Beads: Install at external corners, using longest practical lengths.
- C. Edge Trim: Install at locations where gypsum board abuts dissimilar materials.

### 3.05 JOINT TREATMENT

- A. Paper Faced Gypsum Board: Use paper joint tape, bedded with ready-mixed vinyl-based joint compound and finished with ready-mixed vinyl-based joint compound.
- B. Finish gypsum board in accordance with levels defined in ASTM C840, as follows:
  - 1. Level 4: Walls and ceilings to receive paint finish or wall coverings, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Tape, fill, and sand exposed joints, edges, and corners to produce smooth surface ready to receive finishes.
  - 1. Feather coats of joint compound so that camber is maximum 1/32 inch.

### 3.06 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation of Finished Gypsum Board Surface from True Flatness: 1/8 inch in 10 feet in any direction.

END OF SECTION 092116

SECTION 093000

TILING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Tile for floor applications.
- B. Tile for wall applications.
- C. Ceramic accessories.
- D. Non-ceramic trim.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between tile work and adjacent construction and fixtures.
- B. Section 092116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Moisture-resistant board.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI A108.1a - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-Set Method, with Portland Cement Mortar.
- B. ANSI A108.1b - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-Set or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar.
- C. ANSI A108.1c - Specifications for Contractors Option: Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-Set Method with Portland Cement Mortar or Installation of Ceramic Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Bed with Dry-Set or Latex-Portland Cement.
- D. ANSI A108.4 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Organic Adhesives or Water Cleanable Tile-Setting Epoxy Adhesive.
- E. ANSI A108.5 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar.
- F. ANSI A108.6 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and -Grouting Epoxy.
- G. ANSI A108.8 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical Resistant Furan Resin Mortar and Grout.
- H. ANSI A108.9 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Modified Epoxy Emulsion Mortar/Grout.
- I. ANSI A108.10 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Grout in Tilework.
- J. ANSI A108.12 - American National Standard for Installation of Ceramic Tile with EGP (Exterior Glue Plywood) Latex-Portland Cement Mortar.
- K. ANSI A108.13 - American National Standard for Installation of Load Bearing, Bonded, Waterproof Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone.

- L. ANSI A118.3 - American National Standard Specifications for Chemical Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and -Grouting Epoxy and Water Cleanable Tile-Setting Epoxy Adhesive.
- M. ANSI A118.12 - American National Standard Specifications for Crack Isolation Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone Installation.
- N. ANSI A118.15 - American National Standard Specifications for Improved Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar.
- O. ANSI A137.1 - American National Standard Specifications for Ceramic Tile.
- P. ANSI A137.2 - American National Standard Specifications for Glass Tile.
- Q. ASTM C373 - Standard Test Methods for Determination of Water Absorption and Associated Properties by Vacuum Method for Pressed Ceramic Tiles and Glass Tiles and Boil Method for Extruded Ceramic Tiles and Non-tile Fired Ceramic Whiteware Products.
- R. TCNA (HB) - Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation.

#### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide manufacturers' data sheets on tile, mortar, grout, and accessories. Include instructions for using grouts and adhesives.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate tile layout, patterns, color arrangement, perimeter conditions, junctions with dissimilar materials, control and expansion joints, ceramic accessories, and setting details.
- C. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 016000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
  - 2. Extra Tile: 5 percent of each size, color, and surface finish combination.

#### 1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install solvent-based products in an unventilated environment.
- B. Maintain ambient and substrate temperature of 50 degrees F during installation of mortar materials.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 TILE

- A. Manufacturers: All products by the same manufacturer.
  - 1. American Olean Corporation: [www.americanolean.com/#sle](http://www.americanolean.com/#sle).
  - 2. Crossville Ceramics: [www.crossville-ceramics.com](http://www.crossville-ceramics.com).
  - 3. Dal-Tile Corporation: [www.daltile.com/#sle](http://www.daltile.com/#sle). (Basis of Design)
  - 4. Gio Tile: [www.giotile.com](http://www.giotile.com)
  - 5. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Floor Tile: ANSI A137.1, standard grade.
  - 1. Moisture Absorption: 0 to 0.5 percent as tested in accordance with ASTM C373.
  - 2. Size: See Finish Schedule.
  - 3. Color(s): See Finish Schedule.
  - 4. Trim Units: Matching bead, cove, and surface bullnose shapes in sizes coordinated with field tile.

- C. Wall Tile: ANSI A137.1, standard grade.
  - 1. Moisture Absorption: 7.0 to 20.0 percent as tested in accordance with ASTM C373.
  - 2. Sizes: As indicated on the Drawings.
  - 3. Edges: Cushioned.
  - 4. Surface Finish: See Finish Schedule.
  - 5. Color(s): See Finish Schedule.
  - 6. Trim Units: Matching bead, bullnose, and cove shapes in sizes coordinated with field tile.
- D. Glass Tile: ANSI A137.2, standard grade.
  - 1. Mosaic Tiles:
    - a. Size: Linear blend tiles on 12 x 12 inch, nominal, mesh backing.
    - b. Thickness: 5/16 inch.
  - 2. Moisture Absorption: 0 to 0.5 percent as tested in accordance with ASTM C373.
  - 3. Opacity: Opaque as defined in ANSI A137.2.
  - 4. Color: See Finish Schedule.

## 2.02 TRIM AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Ceramic Accessories: Glazed finish, same color and finish as adjacent field tile; same manufacturer as tile.
- B. Non-Ceramic Trim: Satin brass anodized extruded aluminum, style and dimensions to suit application, for setting using tile mortar or adhesive.
  - 1. Applications:
    - a. Open edges of wall tile.
    - b. Open edges of floor tile.
    - c. Wall corners, outside and inside.
    - d. Expansion and control joints, wall.

## 2.03 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Improved Latex-Portland Cement Mortar Bond Coat: ANSI A118.15.
  - 1. Applications: Use this type of bond coat where indicated and where no other type of bond coat is indicated.
- B. Polymer-Enhanced Mortars: Where indicated on the Drawings, and elsewhere as required for setting tile as specified by ANSI A108.5 or A108.12, Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar or Latex Portland Cement Mortar, over substrates prepared accordingly.
  - 1. For installing large format ceramic tile, utilizing a medium bed mortar system.

## 2.04 GROUTS

- A. Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3 chemical resistant and water-cleanable epoxy grout.
  - 1. Color(s): See Finish Schedule.
  - 2. Products:
    - a. Custom Building Products; CEG-Lite 100% Solids Commercial Epoxy Grout: [www.custombuildingproducts.com/#sle](http://www.custombuildingproducts.com/#sle). (Basis of Design)
    - b. LATICRETE International, Inc: [www.laticrete.com/#sle](http://www.laticrete.com/#sle).
    - c. Merkrete, by Parex USA, Inc: [www.merkrete.com/#sle](http://www.merkrete.com/#sle).
    - d. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## 2.05 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Concrete Floor Slab Crack Isolation Membrane: Material complying with ANSI A118.12; not intended as waterproofing.
  - 1. Thickness: 20 mils, maximum.
  - 2. Crack Resistance: No failure at 1/16 inch gap, minimum.
  - 3. Products:
    - a. LATICRETE International, Inc; LATICRETE Blue 92 Anti-Fracture Membrane: [www.laticrete.com/#sle](http://www.laticrete.com/#sle).
    - b. Merkrete, by Parex USA, Inc; Merkrete Fracture Guard: [www.merkrete.com/#sle](http://www.merkrete.com/#sle).
    - c. Proflex Products, Inc; Maxxim Sim-40: [www.proflex.us/#sle](http://www.proflex.us/#sle).
    - d. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work and are ready to receive tile.
- B. Verify that wall surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work, are dust-free, and are ready to receive tile.
- C. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are dust-free and free of substances that could impair bonding of setting materials to sub-floor surfaces.
- D. Verify that concrete sub-floor surfaces are ready for tile installation by testing for moisture emission rate and alkalinity; obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by tile manufacturer and setting materials manufacturer.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Protect surrounding work from damage.
- B. Vacuum clean surfaces .
- C. Seal substrate surface cracks with filler. Level existing substrate surfaces to acceptable flatness tolerances.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Install tile and grout in accordance with applicable requirements of ANSI A108.1a through ANSI A108.13, manufacturer's instructions, and TCNA (HB) recommendations.
- B. Lay tile to pattern indicated. Do not interrupt tile pattern through openings.
- C. Cut and fit tile to penetrations through tile, leaving sealant joint space. Form corners and bases neatly.
- D. Place tile joints uniform in width, subject to variance in tolerance allowed in tile size. Make grout joints without voids, cracks, excess mortar or excess grout, or too little grout.
- E. Form internal angles square and external angles square.
- F. Install ceramic accessories rigidly in prepared openings.
- G. Install non-ceramic trim in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- H. Sound tile after setting. Replace hollow sounding units.
- I. Keep control and expansion joints free of mortar, grout, and adhesive.



- J. Prior to grouting, allow installation to completely cure; minimum of 48 hours.
- K. Grout tile joints unless otherwise indicated.
- L. At changes in plane and tile-to-tile control joints, use tile sealant instead of grout, with either bond breaker tape or backer rod as appropriate to prevent three-sided bonding.

#### 3.04 INSTALLATION - FLOORS - THIN-SET METHODS

- A. Over interior concrete substrates, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F113, dry-set or latex-Portland cement bond coat, with standard grout, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Where epoxy grout is indicated, but not epoxy bond coat, install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method F115.

#### 3.05 INSTALLATION - WALL TILE

- A. Over gypsum wallboard on wood or metal studs install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method W243, thin-set with dry-set or latex-Portland cement bond coat, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. For gauged thin tile over gypsum wallboard on wood or metal studs install in accordance with TCNA (HB) Method W244C, unless otherwise indicated.

#### 3.06 CLEANING

- A. Clean tile and grout surfaces.

END OF SECTION 093000

SECTION 096513

RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Resilient base.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated and for each color, texture, and pattern required in manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 12 inches (300 mm) long.
- C. Product Schedule: For resilient base and accessory products. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.03 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet (3 linear m) for every 500 linear feet (150 linear m) or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) or more than 90 deg F (32 deg C).

1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F (21 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C), in spaces to receive resilient products during the following time periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Project Acceptance, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F (13 deg C) or more than 95 deg F (35 deg C).

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 THERMOPLASTIC-RUBBER BASE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Burke Mercer Flooring Products, Division of Burke Industries Inc.
  - 3. Flexco.
  - 4. Johnsonite; A Tarkett Company. (Basis of Design)
  - 5. Nora Systems, Inc .
  - 6. Roppe Corporation, USA .
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TP (rubber, thermoplastic).
  - 1. Group: I (solid, homogeneous).
  - 2. Style and Location:
    - a. Style B, Cove: Provide in areas with resilient flooring.
- C. Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
- D. Height: 4 inches (102 mm).
- E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- F. Outside Corners: Job formed.
- G. Inside Corners: Job formed.
- H. Colors: See Finish Schedule.

### 2.02 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Do not install resilient products until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.

- C. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

### 3.03 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. Job-Formed Corners:
  - 1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in length.
    - a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
  - 2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches (76 mm).
    - a. Miter corners to minimize open joints.

### 3.04 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.

END OF SECTION 096513

SECTION 096623

RESINOUS MATRIX TERRAZZO FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Epoxy matrix terrazzo with ground and polished finish.
- B. Divider strips.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM F710 - Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring.
- B. ASTM F1869 - Standard Test Method for Measuring Moisture Vapor Emission Rate of Concrete Subfloor Using Anhydrous Calcium Chloride.
- C. ASTM F2170 - Standard Test Method for Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete Floor Slabs Using in situ Probes.
- D. NTMA (GRAD) - Aggregate Gradation Standards.
- E. NTMA (EPOXY) - Epoxy Terrazzo Specifications.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide data for divider strips, control joint strips, expansion joints, and sealer; include printed copy of current NTMA recommendations for type of terrazzo specified.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate divider strip and control and expansion joint layout, and details of adjacent components. For precast units, detail profile and anchorage requirements.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work in accordance with NTMA recommendations as posted at their web site at [www.ntma.com](http://www.ntma.com).
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified in this section.
  - 1. Approved by matrix manufacturer.

1.05 MOCK-UP

- A. Construct mock-up of terrazzo illustrating appearance of finished work in each configuration required. Size mock-up to be not less than 3 by 3 feet.
- B. Locate where directed.
- C. Mock-up may not remain as part of the work.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store terrazzo materials in a dry, secure area.
- B. Maintain minimum temperature of 60 degrees F.
- C. Keep products away from fire or open flame.

## 1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install terrazzo when temperature is below 50 degrees F or above 90 degrees F.
- B. Maintain temperature within specified range 24 hours before, during, and 72 hours after installation of flooring.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design - Resinous Matrix Terrazzo Flooring: Terrazzo & Marble Supply Companies; Terroxy Resin Systems: [www.tmsupply.com/#sle](http://www.tmsupply.com/#sle).
- B. Other Acceptable Manufacturers - Resinous Matrix Terrazzo Flooring:
  - 1. David Allen Company: [www.davidallen.com](http://www.davidallen.com).
  - 2. Doyle Dickerson: [www.doyledickersonterrazzo.com](http://www.doyledickersonterrazzo.com).
  - 3. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

### 2.02 EPOXY MATRIX TERRAZZO APPLICATIONS

- A. Floors:
  - 1. Thickness: 3/8 inch, nominal.
  - 2. Color(s): As indicated on drawings.
  - 3. Aggregate Type: Marble chips.
  - 4. Aggregate Size: No. 2.

### 2.03 MATERIALS

- A. Epoxy Matrix Terrazzo: Aggregate and matrix mix applied to substrate, troweled flat, and ground smooth.
  - 1. Mix Proportions: As required to achieve appearance specified.
  - 2. Mix Proportions: Three parts aggregate chip; one part aggregate dust; one part matrix.
- B. Matrix: Two component resin and epoxy hardener with mineral filler and color pigment, non-volatile, thermo-setting.
- C. Aggregate: Type as indicated; sized in accordance with NTMA aggregate gradation standards; color(s) as indicated, uniform in color.
- D. Finishing Grout: Epoxy, color to match terrazzo matrix.

### 2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Divider Strips: 1/8 inch thick zinc exposed top strip, zinc coated steel concealed bottom strip, with anchoring features.
- B. Divider and Control Joint Strip Height: To suit thickness of terrazzo topping, with allowance for grinding.
- C. Sealer: Colorless, non-yellowing, penetrating liquid type to completely seal matrix surface; not detrimental to terrazzo components.
- D. Primer: As recommended by terrazzo manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work and are ready to receive terrazzo.
- B. Verify that sub-floor surfaces are dust-free and free of substances that could impair bonding of materials to sub-floor surfaces.
- C. Verify that concrete sub-floor surfaces are ready for terrazzo installation by testing for moisture vapor emission, internal relative humidity, and alkalinity; obtain instructions if test results are not within the following limits:
  - 1. Moisture Vapor Emission: Not greater than 3 lb per 1000 sq ft per 24 hours, tested according to ASTM F1869.
  - 2. Internal Relative Humidity: Maximum of 75 percent, tested according to ASTM F2170.
  - 3. Alkalinity: pH range of 5 to 9, tested according to ASTM F710.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of foreign matter.
- B. Prepare concrete subfloor by mechanically abrading surface in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Apply primer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install divider and control joint strips straight and flat to locations indicated.
- B. Place terrazzo mix over substrate to thickness indicated.

### 3.04 FINISHING

- A. Finish terrazzo to NTMA requirements.
- B. Grind terrazzo surfaces with power disc machine; sequence with coarse to fine grit abrasive, using a wet method or using a dry grinder with vacuum to control dust.
- C. Apply grout to fill voids exposed from grinding.
- D. Remove grout coat by grinding, using a fine grit abrasive.

### 3.05 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from Flat Surface: 1/4 inch in 10 feet.

### 3.06 CLEANING

- A. Scrub and clean terrazzo surfaces with neutral pH cleaner in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Let dry.
- B. Immediately after terrazzo has dried, apply sealer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Polish surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.07 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finished terrazzo from damage due to subsequent construction until Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096623



SECTION 099113

EXTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Surface preparation.
- B. Field application of paints, stains, and varnishes.
- C. Scope: Finish exterior surfaces exposed to view, unless fully factory-finished and unless otherwise indicated, including the following:
  - 1. Exposed surfaces of steel lintels and ledge angles.
  - 2. Mechanical and Electrical:
    - a. On the roof and outdoors, paint equipment that is exposed to weather or to view, including factory-finished materials.
- D. Do Not Paint or Finish the Following Items:
  - 1. Items factory-finished unless otherwise indicated; materials and products having factory-applied primers are not considered factory finished.
  - 2. Items indicated to receive other finishes.
  - 3. Items indicated to remain unfinished.
  - 4. Fire rating labels, equipment serial number and capacity labels, and operating parts of equipment.
  - 5. Floors, unless specifically indicated.
  - 6. Glass.
  - 7. Concealed pipes, ducts, and conduits.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 099123 - Interior Painting.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. MPI (APSM) - Master Painters Institute Architectural Painting Specification Manual.
- B. SSPC-SP 1 - Solvent Cleaning.
- C. SSPC-SP 6 - Commercial Blast Cleaning.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide complete list of products to be used, with the following information for each:
  - 1. Manufacturer's name, product name and/or catalog number, and general product category (e.g. "alkyd enamel").
  - 2. MPI product number (e.g. MPI #47).
  - 3. Cross-reference to specified paint system(s) product is to be used in; include description of each system.
- B. Samples: Submit two paper chip samples, 6 by 6 inch in size illustrating range of colors and textures available for each surface finishing product scheduled.

- C. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 016000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
  - 2. Extra Paint and Finish Materials: Five gallons of each color; from the same product run, store where directed.
  - 3. Label each container with color in addition to the manufacturer's label.

#### 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products to site in sealed and labeled containers; inspect to verify acceptability.
- B. Container Label: Include manufacturer's name, type of paint, brand name, lot number, brand code, coverage, surface preparation, drying time, cleanup requirements, color designation, and instructions for mixing and reducing.
- C. Paint Materials: Store at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F and a maximum of 90 degrees F, in ventilated area, and as required by manufacturer's instructions.

#### 1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not apply materials when surface and ambient temperatures are outside the temperature ranges required by the paint product manufacturer.
- B. Follow manufacturer's recommended procedures for producing best results, including testing of substrates, moisture in substrates, and humidity and temperature limitations.
- C. Do not apply exterior paint and finishes during rain or snow, or when relative humidity is outside the humidity ranges required by the paint product manufacturer.
- D. Minimum Application Temperatures for Latex Paints: 50 degrees F for exterior; unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Minimum Application Temperature for Varnish Finishes: 65 degrees F for exterior, unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Provide paints and finishes from the same manufacturer to the greatest extent possible.
  - 1. In the event that a single manufacturer cannot provide specified products, minor exceptions will be permitted provided approval by Architect is obtained using the specified procedures for substitutions.
  - 2. Substitution of MPI-approved products by a different manufacturer is preferred over substitution of unapproved products by the same manufacturer.
- B. Paints:
  - 1. Base Manufacturer: PPG Paints: [www.ppgpaints.com](http://www.ppgpaints.com).
  - 2. Other Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Pratt & Lambert Paints: [www.prattandlambert.com/#sle](http://www.prattandlambert.com/#sle).
    - b. Sherwin-Williams Company: [www.sherwin-williams.com/#sle](http://www.sherwin-williams.com/#sle).
- C. Transparent Finishes:
  - 1. Base Manufacturer: PPG Paints: [www.ppgpaints.com](http://www.ppgpaints.com).
  - 2. Behr Process Corporation: [www.behr.com/#sle](http://www.behr.com/#sle).
  - 3. Sherwin-Williams Company: [www.sherwin-williams.com/#sle](http://www.sherwin-williams.com/#sle).

D. Stains:

1. Base Manufacturer: PPG Paints: [www.ppgpaints.com](http://www.ppgpaints.com).
2. Behr Process Corporation: [www.behr.com/#sle](http://www.behr.com/#sle).
3. Sherwin-Williams Company: [www.sherwin-williams.com/#sle](http://www.sherwin-williams.com/#sle).

E. Primer Sealers: Same manufacturer as top coats.

F. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## 2.02 PAINTS AND FINISHES - GENERAL

A. Paints and Finishes: Ready mixed, unless required to be a field-catalyzed paint.

1. Provide paints and finishes of a soft paste consistency, capable of being readily and uniformly dispersed to a homogeneous coating, with good flow and brushing properties, and capable of drying or curing free of streaks or sags.
2. Provide materials that are compatible with one another and the substrates indicated under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. For opaque finishes, tint each coat including primer coat and intermediate coats, one-half shade lighter than succeeding coat, with final finish coat as base color.
4. Supply each paint material in quantity required to complete entire project's work from a single production run.
5. Do not reduce, thin, or dilute paint or finishes or add materials unless such procedure is specifically described in manufacturer's product instructions.

B. Sheens: Provide the sheens specified; where sheen is not specified, sheen will be selected later by Architect from the manufacturer's full line.

C. Colors: To be selected from manufacturer's full range of available colors.

1. Selection to be made by Architect after award of contract.

## 2.03 PAINT SYSTEMS - EXTERIOR

A. Ferrous and Non-Ferrous Metals:

1. Primer is not required on shop-primed items.
2. Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a rust-inhibitive primer.
  - a. Semi-Gloss Finish:
    - 1) Primer (if required): PPG Paints; 90-912 Pitt-Tech Plus Interior/Exterior Primer Finish DTM Industrial Enamel.
      - (a) Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.
    - 2) Semi-Gloss Finish: PPG Paints; 90-1210 Pitt-Tech Plus Semi-Gloss Interior/Exterior DTM Industrial Enamel.
      - (a) Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.

B. Fiber Cement Siding and Trim:

1. Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer.
  - a. Semi-Gloss Finish:
    - 1) Semi-Gloss Finish: PPG Paints; 6-900XI Series SpeedHide Exterior House and Trim Semi-Gloss Acrylic Latex Paint.
      - (a) Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.4 mils.

C. Wood, Semi-Transparent Stain: PPG indicated on the Finish Schedule.

1. 1st Coat: Semi-Transparent Stain, A15T5
2. 2nd Coat: Semi-Transparent Stain(100-350 sq ft/gal)

## 2.04 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Accessory Materials: Provide primers, sealers, cleaning agents, cleaning cloths, sanding materials, and clean-up materials as required for final completion of painted surfaces.
- B. Patching Material: Latex filler.
- C. Fastener Head Cover Material: Latex filler.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin application of paints and finishes until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work as instructed by the product manufacturer.
- C. Examine surfaces scheduled to be finished prior to commencement of work. Report any condition that may potentially effect proper application.
- D. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.
- E. Test shop-applied primer for compatibility with subsequent cover materials.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly and correct defects prior to application.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.
- C. Remove or mask surface appurtenances, including electrical plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings, prior to preparing surfaces for finishing.
- D. Seal surfaces that might cause bleed through or staining of topcoat.
- E. Remove mildew from impervious surfaces by scrubbing with solution of tetra-sodium phosphate and bleach. Rinse with clean water and allow surface to dry.
- F. Fiber Cement Siding: Remove dirt, dust and other foreign matter with a stiff fiber brush. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be coated exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Ferrous Metal:
  - 1. Solvent clean according to SSPC-SP 1.
  - 2. Shop-Primed Surfaces: Sand and scrape to remove loose primer and rust. Feather edges to make touch-up patches inconspicuous. Clean surfaces with solvent. Prime bare steel surfaces. Re-prime entire shop-primed item.
  - 3. Remove rust, loose mill scale, and other foreign substances using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer and blast cleaning according to SSPC-SP 6 "Commercial Blast Cleaning". Protect from corrosion until coated.
- H. Exterior Wood to Receive Transparent Finish: Remove dust, grit, and foreign matter; seal knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections with sealer. Fill nail holes with tinted exterior calking compound after sealer has been applied. Prime concealed surfaces.
- I. Metal Doors to be Painted: Prime metal door top and bottom edge surfaces.

### 3.03 APPLICATION

- A. Apply products in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual".
- B. Do not apply finishes to surfaces that are not dry. Allow applied coats to dry before next coat is applied.
- C. Apply each coat to uniform appearance.
- D. Sand wood and metal surfaces lightly between coats to achieve required finish.
- E. Vacuum clean surfaces of loose particles. Use tack cloth to remove dust and particles just prior to applying next coat.
- F. Wood to Receive Transparent Finishes: Tint fillers to match wood. Work fillers into the grain before set. Wipe excess from surface.

### 3.04 CLEANING

- A. Collect waste material that could constitute a fire hazard, place in closed metal containers, and remove daily from site.

### 3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up damaged finishes after Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 099113

SECTION 099123

INTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Surface preparation.
- B. Field application of paints.
- C. Scope: Finish interior surfaces exposed to view, unless fully factory-finished and unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Both sides and edges of plywood backboards for electrical and telecom equipment before installing equipment.
  - 2. Elevator pit ladders.
  - 3. Mechanical and Electrical:
    - a. In finished areas, paint insulated and exposed pipes, conduit, boxes, insulated and exposed ducts, hangers, brackets, collars and supports, mechanical equipment, and electrical equipment, unless otherwise indicated.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 099113 - Exterior Painting.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. 40 CFR 59, Subpart D - National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.
- B. MPI (APSM) - Master Painters Institute Architectural Painting Specification Manual.
- C. SSPC-SP 1 - Solvent Cleaning.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide complete list of products to be used, with the following information for each:
  - 1. Manufacturer's name, product name and/or catalog number, and general product category (e.g. "alkyd enamel").
  - 2. MPI product number (e.g. MPI #47).
  - 3. Cross-reference to specified paint system(s) product is to be used in; include description of each system.
- C. Samples: Submit two paper chip samples, 6 by 6 inch in size illustrating range of colors and stain finishes available for each surface finishing product scheduled.
- D. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 016000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
  - 2. Extra Paint and Finish Materials: Five gallons of each color; from the same product run, store where directed.
  - 3. Label each container with color in addition to the manufacturer's label.

### 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products to site in sealed and labeled containers; inspect to verify acceptability.
- B. Container Label: Include manufacturer's name, type of paint, brand name, lot number, brand code, coverage, surface preparation, drying time, cleanup requirements, color designation, and instructions for mixing and reducing.
- C. Paint Materials: Store at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F and a maximum of 90 degrees F, in ventilated area, and as required by manufacturer's instructions.

### 1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not apply materials when surface and ambient temperatures are outside the temperature ranges required by the paint product manufacturer.
- B. Follow manufacturer's recommended procedures for producing best results, including testing of substrates, moisture in substrates, and humidity and temperature limitations.
- C. Minimum Application Temperatures for Paints: 50 degrees F for interiors unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Minimum Application Temperature for Varnish Finishes: 65 degrees F for interior, unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Provide lighting level of 80 ft candles measured mid-height at substrate surface.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Provide paints and finishes from the same manufacturer to the greatest extent possible.
  - 1. In the event that a single manufacturer cannot provide specified products, minor exceptions will be permitted provided approval by Architect is obtained using the specified procedures for substitutions.
  - 2. Substitution of other products by the same manufacturer is preferred over substitution of products by a different manufacturer.
  - 3. Substitution of a different paint system using MPI-approved products by the same manufacturer will be considered.
- B. Paints:
  - 1. Base Manufacturer: PPG Paints: [www.ppgpaints.com](http://www.ppgpaints.com).
    - a. Behr Process Corporation: [www.behr.com/#sle](http://www.behr.com/#sle).
    - b. Pratt & Lambert Paints: [www.prattandlambert.com/#sle](http://www.prattandlambert.com/#sle).
    - c. Sherwin-Williams Company: [www.sherwin-williams.com/#sle](http://www.sherwin-williams.com/#sle).
- C. Primer Sealers: Same manufacturer as top coats.
- D. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

### 2.02 PAINTS AND FINISHES - GENERAL

- A. Paints and Finishes: Ready mixed, unless intended to be a field-catalyzed paint.
  - 1. Provide paints and finishes of a soft paste consistency, capable of being readily and uniformly dispersed to a homogeneous coating, with good flow and brushing properties, and capable of drying or curing free of streaks or sags.
  - 2. Supply each paint material in quantity required to complete entire project's work from a single production run.

3. Do not reduce, thin, or dilute paint or finishes or add materials unless such procedure is specifically described in manufacturer's product instructions.
- B. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content:
  1. Provide paints and finishes that comply with the most stringent requirements specified in the following:
    - a. 40 CFR 59, Subpart D--National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings.
    - b. Ozone Transport Commission (OTC) Model Rule, Architectural, Industrial, and Maintenance Coatings; [www.otcair.org](http://www.otcair.org); specifically:
      - 1) Opaque, Flat: 50 g/L, maximum.
      - 2) Opaque, Nonflat: 150 g/L, maximum.
      - 3) Opaque, High Gloss: 250 g/L, maximum.
      - 4) Varnishes: 350 g/L, maximum.
  2. Determination of VOC Content: Testing and calculation in accordance with 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), exclusive of colorants added to a tint base and water added at project site; or other method acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Sheens: Provide the sheens specified; where sheen is not specified, sheen will be selected later by Architect from the manufacturer's full line.
- D. Colors: To be selected from manufacturer's full range of available colors.
  1. Selection to be made by Architect after award of contract.
  2. In finished areas, finish pipes, ducts, conduit, and equipment the same color as the wall/ceiling they are mounted on/under.

## 2.03 PAINT SYSTEMS - INTERIOR

- A. Ferrous Metal Doors, Frames, and Miscellaneous Metals:
  1. Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer.
    - a. Semi-Gloss Finish:
      - 1) Primer: PPG Paints; 90-912 Series Pitt-Tech Plus Interior/Exterior DTM Industrial Primer.
        - (a) Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.
      - 2) Semi-Gloss Finish: PPG Paints; 90-1210 Series Pitt-Tech Plus Interior/Exterior Semi-Gloss DTM Industrial Enamel.
        - (a) Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.
- B. Gypsum Board Walls:
  1. Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer.
    - a. Eggshell Finish:
      - 1) Primer: PPG Paints; 9-900 Series Pure Performance Interior Latex Primer.
        - (a) Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.4 mils.
      - 2) Eggshell Finish: PPG Paints; 9-300XI Series Pure Performance Interior Latex Semi-Gloss.
        - (a) Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.4 mils.
- C. Gypsum Board Ceilings:
  - a. Flat Finish:
    - 1) Primer: PPG Paints; 9-900 Series Pure Performance Interior Latex Primer.
      - (a) Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.4 mils.
    - 2) Flat Finish: PPG Paints; 9-100 Series Pure Performance Interior Latex Flat.
      - (a) Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.



D. Gypsum Board Walls - Epoxy Finish:

1. Acrylic Pre-Catalyzed Epoxy Finish: Two finish coats over a primer.
  - a. Eggshell Finish:
    - 1) Primer: PPG Paints; 6-4900XI Series SpeedHide zero Interior Latex Sealer.
      - (a) Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.4 mils.
    - 2) Eggshell Finish: PPG Paints; 16-310 Series Pitt-Glaze WB1 Interior Eggshell Pre-Catalyzed Water-Borne Acrylic Epoxy.
      - (a) Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.

2.04 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Accessory Materials: Provide primers, sealers, cleaning agents, cleaning cloths, sanding materials, and clean-up materials as required for final completion of painted surfaces.
- B. Patching Material: Latex filler.
- C. Fastener Head Cover Material: Latex filler.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work as instructed by the product manufacturer.
- B. Examine surfaces scheduled to be finished prior to commencement of work. Report any condition that may potentially effect proper application.
- C. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.
- D. Test shop-applied primer for compatibility with subsequent cover materials.
- E. Measure moisture content of surfaces using an electronic moisture meter. Do not apply finishes unless moisture content of surfaces are below the following maximums:
  1. Gypsum Wallboard: 12 percent.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly and correct defects prior to application.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.
- C. Remove or repair existing paints or finishes that exhibit surface defects.
- D. Remove or mask surface appurtenances, including electrical plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings, prior to preparing surfaces or finishing.
- E. Seal surfaces that might cause bleed through or staining of topcoat.
- F. Gypsum Board: Fill minor defects with filler compound. Spot prime defects after repair.
- G. Ferrous Metal:
  1. Solvent clean according to SSPC-SP 1.
  2. Shop-Primed Surfaces: Sand and scrape to remove loose primer and rust. Feather edges to make touch-up patches inconspicuous. Clean surfaces with solvent. Prime bare steel surfaces.
- H. Metal Doors to be Painted: Prime metal door top and bottom edge surfaces.

### 3.03 APPLICATION

- A. Apply products in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual".
- B. Do not apply paint to surfaces that are not dry. Allow applied coats to dry before next coat is applied.
- C. Apply each coat to uniform appearance in thicknesses specified by manufacturer.
- D. Sand metal surfaces lightly between coats to achieve required finish.
- E. Vacuum clean surfaces of loose particles. Use tack cloth to remove dust and particles just prior to applying next coat.
- F. Reinstall electrical cover plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings removed prior to finishing.

### 3.04 CLEANING

- A. Collect waste material that could constitute a fire hazard, place in closed metal containers, and remove daily from site.

### 3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up damaged finishes after Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 099123

SECTION 101419

DIMENSIONAL LETTER SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Dimensional characters (letters and numbers) for exterior use.
  - 2. Signage accessories.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit product data for specified products. Include material details for each sign specified.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing layout, profiles, and product components, including dimensions, anchorage, and accessories.
- C. Samples: Submit supplier's standard color chart for selection purposes and selected colors for verification purposes.
- D. Installation: Submit supplier's installation instructions.
- E. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Submit operation and maintenance data for installed products, including precautions against harmful cleaning materials and methods.
  - 2. Submit warranty documents specified herein.

1.03 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead time requirements to avoid construction delays.
- B. Deliver products in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- C. Store products protected from weather, temperature, and other harmful conditions as recommended by supplier.
- D. Handle products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

1.04 WARRANTY

- A. Project Warranty: Comply with requirements of Section 017839 - Project Record Documents.
- B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit manufacturer's standard warranty document executed by authorized company official.
  - 1. Warranty Period: One year from product ship date. Warranty specifically excludes letter mounting substrate.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Dimensional Letter Signs:
  - 1. Poblocki Sign Company, LLC (Scott Muller: [smuller@poblocki.com](mailto:smuller@poblocki.com)).
  - 2. Other Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Cosco Industries: [www.coscoarchitecturalsigns.com](http://www.coscoarchitecturalsigns.com).
    - b. InPro Corporation : [www.inprocorp.com](http://www.inprocorp.com).
  - 3. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

### 2.02 DIMENSIONAL CHARACTERS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than the strength and durability properties of 6063-T5.
- B. Cutout Characters: Cut characters from solid plate of thickness and metal indicated. Produce precisely cut characters with square cut, smooth edges. Comply with requirements indicated for finish, style, and size.
  - 1. Metal: Aluminum.
- C. Fabricated Characters: Fabricate letters and numbers to required sizes and styles, using metals and thicknesses indicated. Form exposed faces and sides of characters to produce surfaces free from warp and distortion. Include internal bracing for stability and attachment of mounting accessories. Comply with requirements indicated for finish, style, and size.
  - 1. Aluminum Sheet: Not less than 0.090 inch thick.
  - 2. Character Height: 6 inches.
  - 3. Character Depth: 1/2 inch.
  - 4. Character Style: Arial.

### 2.03 FABRICATION - GENERAL

- A. General: Comply with requirements indicated for materials, thicknesses, finishes, colors, designs, shapes, sizes, and details of construction.
- B. Design, fabricate, and install sign assemblies to prevent buckling, opening up of joints, and over-stressing of welds and fasteners.
- C. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form joints exposed to the weather to exclude water penetration.
- D. Create signage to required sizes and layout. Comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, finish, color, and details of construction.

### 2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Mounting Methods: Use concealed fasteners fabricated from materials that are not corrosive to sign material and mounting surface.
- B. Anchors and Inserts: Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts for exterior installations. Use toothed steel or lead expansion-bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Furnish inserts, as required, to be set into concrete or masonry work.

### 2.05 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish: Clear and dark bronze anodized.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Site Verification of Conditions: Verify installation conditions previously established under other sections are acceptable for product installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Scheduling of installation by Owner or it's representative implies that substrate and conditions are prepared and ready for product installation. Proceeding with installation implies installer's acceptance of substrate and conditions.

#### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install product in accordance with supplier's instructions.
- B. Install product in locations indicated using mounting methods recommended by sign manufacturer and free from distortion, warp, or defect adversely affecting appearance.
- C. Install product level, plumb, and at heights indicated.
- D. Install signs within the following tolerances and in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations:
  - 1. Exterior Signs: Within 1 inch vertically and horizontally of intended location.

#### 3.03 CLEANING, PROTECTION, AND REPAIR

- A. Repair scratches and other damage which might have occurred during installation. Replace components where repairs were made but are still visible to the unaided eye from a distance of 10 feet.
- B. Remove temporary coverings and protection to adjacent work areas. Clean installed products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions prior to Owner's acceptance. Remove construction debris from project in accordance with provisions in Division 1.

#### 3.04 SIGN SCHEDULE

- A. Schedule: Refer to signage schedule and Drawings for sizes, locations, and layout of signage types, sign text copy, and graphics.

END OF SECTION 101419

SECTION 102113.23

SOLID PHENOLIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Solid phenolic toilet compartments.
- B. Solid phenolic urinal screens.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 102800 - Toilet and Bath Accessories.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show layout of partitions, screens, and compartments.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's catalog data on panels, pilasters, doors, hardware and fastening.
- C. Color Charts: Manufacturer's complete range of colors.
- D. Samples:
  - 1. Actual panel material, not less than 6 inches square.
  - 2. Actual hardware.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURER

- A. Solid Phenolic Toilet Compartments:
  - 1. ASI Accurate Partitions: [www.accuratepartitions.com](http://www.accuratepartitions.com)
  - 2. Bradley Corporation: [www.bradleycorp.com](http://www.bradleycorp.com).
  - 3. Columbia Lockers: [www.columbialockers.com](http://www.columbialockers.com). (Basis of Design)
- B. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 COMPARTMENTS AND SCREENS

- A. Toilet Compartments: Solid phenolic.
  - 1. Floor mounted, overhead braced.
- B. Urinal Screens: Solid phenolic.
  - 1. Wall hung.

2.03 SOLID PHENOLIC MATERIALS

- A. Panels: Solid phenolic core material, compression molded, single piece construction with integral melamine surface and uniformly machined edges; no two-piece construction.
  - 1. Color: As selected by the Architect from manufacturer's full line.
  - 2. Panel Size: Nominal 1/2 inch thick by 58 inches high, of required depth.
- B. Doors: Same design and construction as specified for panels; nominal 3/4 inch thick by 58 inches high.

- C. Pilasters: Same design and construction as specified for panels and doors; nominal 3/4 inch thick.
- D. Urinal Screens: Same design and construction as specified for panels; nominal 1/2 inch thick.
  - 1. Height: 42 inches.
  - 2. Depth: 18 inches.
- E. Panel Anchors: Type 304 stainless steel, brush finish.
  - 1. Panels to Pilasters: Three U-brackets.
  - 2. Panels to Wall: Three double ear brackets.
  - 3. Pilasters to Wall: Continuous single ear bracket (panel height).
- F. Overhead Braced: 80 inch high pilasters.
  - 1. Pilaster Floor Anchors: To mount pilasters 2 inches above finish floor; Type 304 stainless steel; 12 gage angle and two 5/16 inch threaded rods with leveling nuts and washers and lead double expansion shields.
  - 2. Top Bracing: Brite anodized aluminum channel 1-1/2 inch by 1 inch of anti-grip design to cap top of pilasters and secured on inside of compartment.
  - 3. Headrail Brackets: 18 gage stainless steel.
  - 4. Conceal floor fasteners with 4 inch high one-piece 20 gage Type 304 stainless steel floor shoe.
- G. Urinal Screen Anchors:
  - 1. To Wall: One full length double ear bracket, fastened with 8 wall fasteners.

#### 2.04 HARDWARE

- A. Hardware: Provide all hardware and fasteners for a complete installation.
- B. Door Hinges: Surface-mounted continuous piano hinge, made of 14 gage Type 304 stainless steel.
  - 1. Guide Pin: 1/4 inch stainless steel.
  - 2. Fasteners: Six one-way head stainless steel machine screws per leaf on both door and pilaster, into threaded brass inserts or thru-bolted; inserts independent laboratory-tested to pull-out of 5,000 lb.
  - 3. Gravity Cam: On out-swing doors return door to closed; on in-swing doors return to 20 degrees open.
- C. Strike-Keeper and Throw Latch: 16 gage formed Type 304 stainless steel strike-keeper with rubber stop and cast stainless steel slide bar and knob that does not require gripping or turning, brushed finish.
- D. Coat Hook and Wall Bumper: Heavy chrome-plated Zamac fastened with 5/8 inch stainless steel tamper-proof screws.
- E. Fasteners:
  - 1. Tamper-Proof.
  - 2. Floor and wall fasteners: No. 14 by 1-3/4 inch tamper-proof screws with conical plastic anchors.
  - 3. All other fasteners: 5/8 inch stainless steel tamper-proof screws or chrome plated brass tamper-proof brass thru-bolts.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install partitions rigid, straight, plumb and level in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Set units with not more than 1/2 inch between pilasters and panels and not more than 3/4 inch between panels and walls.
- C. Overhead-Braced: Secure to structural concrete floor.
- D. Adjust and lubricate hardware for proper operation after installation.
  - 1. Set hinges on in-swing doors to hold doors in the open or closed position when unlatched as shown on drawings.
  - 2. Set hinges on out-swing doors to return to the fully closed position.
  - 3. Remove protective plastic coating.

END OF SECTION 102113.23



SECTION 102800

TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Commercial toilet accessories.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry: Concealed supports for accessories, including in wall framing and plates.
- B. Section 102113.23 - Solid Phenolic Toilet Compartments.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A269/A269M - Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service.
- B. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.
- C. ASTM A666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar.
- D. ASTM B456 - Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Copper Plus Nickel Plus Chromium and Nickel Plus Chromium.
- E. ASTM C1036 - Standard Specification for Flat Glass.
- F. ASTM C1503 - Standard Specification for Silvered Flat Glass Mirror.
- G. GSA CID A-A-3002 - Mirrors, Glass; U.S. General Services Administration.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit data on accessories describing size, finish, details of function, and attachment methods.
- B. Samples: Submit two samples of each accessory, illustrating color and finish.

1.05 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the work with the placement of internal wall reinforcement and reinforcement of toilet partitions to receive anchor attachments.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Commercial Toilet Accessories:
  - 1. American Specialties, Inc: [www.americanspecialties.com](http://www.americanspecialties.com).
  - 2. Bobrick: [www.bobrick.com](http://www.bobrick.com).
  - 3. Bradley Corporation: [www.bradleycorp.com](http://www.bradleycorp.com).
  - 4. Gamco: [www.gamco.com](http://www.gamco.com).

- B. Substitutions: Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- C. Provide products of each category type by single manufacturer.

## 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Accessories - General: Shop assembled, free of dents and scratches and packaged complete with anchors and fittings, steel anchor plates, adapters, and anchor components for installation.
  - 1. Grind welded joints smooth.
  - 2. Fabricate units made of metal sheet of seamless sheets, with flat surfaces.
- B. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A666, Type 304.
- C. Stainless Steel Tubing: ASTM A269/A269M, Grade TP304 or TP316.
- D. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Hot-dipped galvanized steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, with G90/Z275 coating.
- E. Mirror Glass: Annealed float glass, ASTM C1036 Type I, Class 1, Quality Q2, with silvering, protective and physical characteristics complying with ASTM C1503.
- F. Fasteners, Screws, and Bolts: Hot dip galvanized; tamper-proof; security type.

## 2.03 FINISHES

- A. Stainless Steel: Satin finish, unless otherwise noted.
- B. Chrome/Nickel Plating: ASTM B456, SC 2, polished finish, unless otherwise noted.
- C. Baked Enamel: Pretreat to clean condition, apply one coat primer and minimum two coats epoxy baked enamel.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verify exact location of accessories for installation.
- C. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on drawings.
- D. See Section 061000 for installation of blocking, reinforcing plates, and concealed anchors in walls.

## 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Deliver inserts and rough-in frames to site for timely installation.
- B. Provide templates and rough-in measurements as required.

## 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturers' instructions in locations indicated on drawings.
- B. Install plumb and level, securely and rigidly anchored to substrate.
- C. Mounting Heights: As required by accessibility regulations, unless otherwise indicated.

3.04 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed accessories from damage due to subsequent construction operations.

3.05 SCHEDULE (SEE DRAWINGS)

END OF SECTION 102800

SECTION 123600

COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Wall-hung counters and vanity tops.

1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS) - Architectural Woodwork Standards.
- B. ISFA 2-01 - Classification and Standards for Solid Surfacing Material.
- C. NEMA LD 3 - High-Pressure Decorative Laminates.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Complete details of materials and installation.
- B. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, minimum size 6 inches square, representing actual product, color, and patterns.
- C. Test Reports: Chemical resistance testing, showing compliance with specified requirements.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified in this section, with not less than three years of documented experience.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Store and dispose of solvent-based materials, and materials used with solvent-based materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 COUNTERTOPS

- A. Solid Surfacing Countertops: Solid surfacing sheet or plastic resin casting over continuous substrate.
  - 1. Flat Sheet Thickness: 3/4 inch, minimum.
  - 2. Solid Surfacing Sheet and Plastic Resin Castings: Complying with ISFA 2-01 and NEMA LD 3; acrylic or polyester resin, mineral filler, and pigments; homogenous, non-porous and capable of being worked and repaired using standard woodworking tools; no surface coating; color and pattern consistent throughout thickness.

- a. Manufacturers:
  - 1) Avonite Surfaces: [www.avonitesurfaces.com](http://www.avonitesurfaces.com).
  - 2) Dupont: [www.corian.com](http://www.corian.com). (Basis of Design)
  - 3) Formica Corporation: [www.formica.com](http://www.formica.com).
  - 4) Wilsonart: [www.wilsonart.com](http://www.wilsonart.com).
  - 5) Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- b. Finish on Exposed Surfaces: See Finish Schedule.
- c. Color and Pattern: See Finish Schedule.
3. Other Components Thickness: 3/4 inch, minimum.
4. Exposed Edge Treatment: As indicated on the Drawings.
5. Back and End Splashes: Same sheet material, square top; minimum 4 inches high.
6. Skirts: As indicated on drawings.
7. Fabricate in accordance with AWI/AWMAC/WI (AWS), Section 11 - Countertops, Premium Grade.

## 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives: Chemical resistant waterproof adhesive as recommended by manufacturer of materials being joined.
- B. Joint Sealant: Mildew-resistant silicone sealant, clear.

## 2.03 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate tops and splashes in the largest sections practicable, with top surface of joints flush.
  1. Join lengths of tops using best method recommended by manufacturer.
  2. Fabricate to overhang fronts and ends of cabinets 1 inch except where top butts against cabinet or wall.
  3. Prepare all cutouts accurately to size; replace tops having improperly dimensioned or unnecessary cutouts or fixture holes.
- B. Provide back/end splash wherever counter edge abuts vertical surface unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Secure to countertop with concealed fasteners and with contact surfaces set in waterproof glue.
  2. Height: 4 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solid Surfacing: Fabricate tops up to 144 inches long in one piece; join pieces with adhesive sealant in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and instructions.
- D. Wall-Mounted Counters: Provide skirts, aprons, brackets, and braces as indicated on drawings, finished to match.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.
- C. Verify that wall surfaces have been finished and mechanical and electrical services and outlets are installed in proper locations.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Securely attach countertops to cabinets using concealed fasteners. Make flat surfaces level; shim where required.
- B. Seal joint between back/end splashes and vertical surfaces.
  - 1. Where applied cove molding is not indicated use specified sealant.

### 3.04 TOLERANCES

- A. Variation From Horizontal: 1/8 inch in 10 feet, maximum.
- B. Offset From Wall, Countertops: 1/8 inch maximum; 1/16 inch minimum.
- C. Field Joints: 1/8 inch wide, maximum.

### 3.05 CLEANING

- A. Clean countertops surfaces thoroughly.

### 3.06 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 123600

SECTION 220001

GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING WORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Requirements of this Section apply to work in every Section of Division 22 equally as if incorporated therein.

**1.2 WORK INCLUDED**

- A. Work included in Division 22 - Plumbing: Materials, equipment, fabrication, installation and tests in conformity with applicable codes and authorities having jurisdiction for Plumbing Work covered by all sections within this Division.
  - 1. A general description of the Plumbing Work includes the following, but is not limited to:
    - a. Domestic Water, Sanitary Waste Piping, and Vent piping.

**1.3 SCOPE**

- A. Division of the Specification into sections is for the purpose of simplification alone. Examine all drawings and read all applicable parts of the project manual in order to insure complete execution of all work in this Division, coordinating where required with other trades in order to avoid conflicts.
- B. These specifications and accompanying drawings are intended to cover the furnishing of all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary for the complete installation and acceptable performance of the plumbing systems. Small items of material, equipment and appurtenances not mentioned in detail or shown on the drawings, but necessary for complete and operating systems, shall be provided by this contractor without additional charge to the Owner and shall be included under this contract.
- C. The Contractor shall carefully examine the drawings and specifications before accepting the contract. He shall call attention to any changes or additions which, in his opinion, are necessary to make possible the fulfillment of any guarantee called for by these specifications; failing which, it shall be deemed that he has accepted full responsibility for all such guarantees.
- D. The contractor shall put his work in place as fast as is reasonably possible. He shall, at all times, keep a competent foreman in charge of the work, to make decisions necessary for the diligent advancement of the work. The Contractor shall facilitate the inspection of the work by the Owner's Representative.
- E. The Contractor shall coordinate all work in the building in order to facilitate intelligent execution of the work. He shall also remove any rubbish as expeditiously as possible.
- F. Materials or products specified herein and/or indicated on the drawings by trades names, manufacturer's names or catalog numbers establish the quality of materials or products to be furnished.

- G. Points of connection or continuation of work under this contract are so marked on drawings or herein specified. In case of any doubt as to the required exact location of such points, the Owner's Representative shall decide and direct.
- H. The plumbing contractor shall provide water services to within two (2) feet of HVAC equipment requiring same, and shall terminate service with a shutoff valve. The mechanical contractor shall make the final connection to the mechanical equipment.

#### **1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS, CODES AND REGULATIONS**

- A. Requirements of Regulatory Agencies:
  - 1. Nothing contained in these specifications or shown on the drawings shall be construed to conflict with any State or local laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, the UL and NFPA regulations. The Contractor shall make all changes required by the enforcing authorities. Where alterations to and / or deviations from the Contract Documents are required by the authorities having jurisdiction, report the requirements to the Engineer and secure acceptance before work is started. All such changes shall be made in a manner acceptable to the Engineer and shall be made without cost to the Owner.
  - 2. When drawings or specifications exceed requirements of applicable laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, comply with documents establishing the more stringent requirement. All work shall be done in full conformity with the requirements of all authorities having jurisdiction. Installation shall be made in compliance with all applicable regulations, and utility company rules, all of which shall be considered a part of this specification and shall take precedence in the order of listing.
  - 3. It is not the intent of drawings or specifications to repeat requirements of codes except where necessary for completeness in individual sections.
  - 4. Applicable codes as listed below, in addition to others specified in individual sections:
    - a. 2012 North Carolina Plumbing Code.
    - b. Generally Accepted Standards, Part 1250 Subchapter G, Codes, Rules and Regulations, Department of State.
    - d. 2012 North Carolina Energy Code.
    - e. North Carolina Amendments.
  - 5. If any of above requirements are in conflict with one another, or with specifications' requirements, the most stringent requirements shall govern.
- B. Published specifications, standards, tests or recommended method of trade, industry or governmental organizations as listed below apply to all work in this Division, in addition to other standards which may be specified in individual sections:
  - 1. AGA American Gas Association
  - 2. ANSI American National Standards Institute
  - 3. ASME American Society of Mechanical Engineers
  - 4. ASTM American Society for Testing and Materials
  - 5. CISPI Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute
  - 6. ETL ETL Testing Laboratories
  - 7. FMS Factory Mutual Engineering and Research Corporation
  - 8. NEMA National Electrical Manufacturer's Association
  - 9. NFPA National Fire Protection Association
  - 10. NEC National Electric Code
  - 11. OSHA Occupational Safety and Health Administration
  - 12. PDI Plumbing Drainage Institute
  - 13. UL Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.



- C. Furnish and file with the proper authorities, all drawings required by them in connection with the work. Contractor shall secure and obtain all approvals, permits, licenses and inspections and pay all legal and proper fees and charges in this connection, before commencing work in order to avoid delays during construction. Contractor shall deliver the official records of the granting of the permits, etc., to the Owner's Representative.

## **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. All equipment and accessories to be the product of a manufacturer regularly engaged in its manufacture.
- B. Supply all equipment and accessories new and free from defects.
- C. Supply all equipment and accessories in compliance with the applicable standards listed in this section with all applicable national, state and local codes.
- D. All items of a given type shall be the product of same manufacturer.

## **1.6 DESCRIPTION OF BID DOCUMENTS**

- A. Specifications:
1. Specifications, in general, describe quality and character of materials and equipment.
  2. Specifications are of simplified form and include incomplete sentences.
  3. Words or phrases such as "The Contractor shall", "shall be", "furnish", "provide", "a", "an", "the", and "all" may have been omitted for brevity.
- B. Drawings: Plumbing drawings under this contract are made a part of these specifications. Deviations from these specifications as noted below must have the approval of the Engineer or Construction Superintendent and at no increase contract price.
1. The drawings shall be considered as being diagrammatic and for bidding purposes only. Intention is to show size, capacity, approximate location, direction and general relationship of one work phase to another, but not exact detail or arrangement. The attention of the contractor is called to the fact that while these drawings are generally to scale and are made as accurately as the scale will permit, all critical dimensions shall be determined in the field. They are not to be considered as erection drawings.
  2. They do not indicate every fitting, elbow, offset, valve, etc. which is required to complete the job. Contractor shall prepare field erection drawings as required for the use of his mechanics to insure proper installation.
  3. Scaled and figured dimensions are approximate and are for estimating purposes only. Indicated dimensions are limiting dimensions.
  4. Before proceeding with work check and verify all dimensions in field.
  5. Assume all responsibility for fitting of materials and equipment to other parts of equipment and structure.
  6. Make adjustments that may be necessary or requested in order to resolve space problems, preserve headroom, and avoid architectural openings, structural members and work of other trades.
  7. For exact locations of building elements, refer to dimensional Architectural/Structural drawings.
  8. Description of systems: Provide all materials to provide functioning systems in compliance with performance requirements specified, and any modifications resulting from reviewed shop drawings and field coordinated drawings.
  9. Installation of all systems and equipment is subject to clarification as indicated in reviewed shop drawings and field coordination drawings.

- C. Do not use equipment exceeding dimensions indicated or equipment or arrangements that reduce required clearances or exceed specified maximum dimensions.
- D. If any part of Specifications, or Drawings appears unclear or contradictory, apply to Architect for his interpretation and decision as early as possible, including during bidding period.
  - 1. Do not proceed with work without Engineer's decision.

### **1.7 EQUIPMENT MANUFACTURERS**

- A. The first named manufacturer is used as the basis of design. Other named manufacturers are identified as equivalent manufacturers, not equivalent products. Naming other manufacturers does not necessarily imply conformance of any specific product with the written specifications.
- B. The contractor is required to verify that equipment and material to be used on the project meets the requirements of the specifications and will physically fit the available space, clearance and service requirements of the particular piece of equipment and include all pertinent information when he submits material for acceptance. Contractor shall also be responsible for and bear the cost of any modifications to openings available or anticipated as being available for rigging equipment to its final installation place. This shall include s openings in exterior envelope, walls and roofs, interior walls, corridors, passage ways or door openings. Any on site dismantling and any reassembly of equipment made necessary by impediment to the rigging of said equipment shall be the sole responsibility of the contractor.
- C. Contract document indicates power and physical requirements based on the equipment manufacturer's data as first named. If equipment requiring more system capacity is furnished or provided the contractor shall be responsible for the cost associated with modifying the design and installation of associated services, including any redesign costs associated with the engineer's review.

### **1.8 DEFINITIONS**

- A. "Provide": To supply, furnish, install and connect up complete and ready safe and regular operation of particular work referred to unless specifically noted.
- B. "Install": To erect, mount and connect complete with related accessories.
- C. "Supply", "Furnish": To purchase, procure, acquire and deliver complete with related accessories.
- D. "Work": Labor, materials, equipment, apparatus, controls, accessories, and other items required for proper and complete installation.
- E. "Piping": Pipe, tube, fittings, flanges, valves, controls, strainers, hangers, supports, unions, traps, drains, insulation, and related items.
- F. "Wiring": Raceway, fittings, wire, boxes and related items.
- G. "Concealed": Items referred to as hidden from normal sight, embedded in masonry or other construction, installed in furred spaces, within double partitions or hung ceilings, in trenches, in crawl spaces, or in enclosures.
- H. "Indicated", "Shown", or "Noted": Ss indicated, shown or noted on drawings or specifications.
- I. "Directed": Directed by Engineer.
- J. "Similar" or "Equal": Of base bid manufacture, equal in materials, weight, size, design, and efficiency of specified product.

- K. "Reviewed", "Satisfactory", or "Directed": As reviewed, satisfactory, or directed by or to Engineer.
- L. "Motor Controllers": Manual or magnetic starters (with or without switches), individual pushbuttons or hand-off-automatic (HOA) switches controlling the operation of motors.
- M. "Control or Actuating Devices": Automatic sensing and switching devices such as thermostats, pressure, float, electro-pneumatic switches and electrodes controlling operation of equipment.
- N. "Replace": Remove existing and provide an equivalent product or material as specified.
- O. "Extract (and Reinstall) ": Carefully disassemble, dismantle existing, save or store where directed by the Owner, in such a manner as to preserve the existing condition and reinstall as indicated on the drawings or as described in the specifications.
- P. Where any device or piece of equipment is referred to in the singular number, such reference shall be deemed to apply to as many devices as are required to complete the installation.

## **1.9 JOB CONDITIONS**

- A. This contractor shall investigate all conditions affecting his work and shall provide such offsets, fittings, valves, sheet metal work, etc., as may be required to meet conditions at the building.
- B. The contractor shall verify all measurements at the building site and shall be responsible for the correctness of same before ordering materials or before starting work of any Section.
  - 1. Report to Architect, in writing, conditions which will prevent proper provision of this work.
  - 2. Beginning work of any Section without reporting unsuitable conditions to Architect constitutes acceptance of conditions by Contractor.
  - 3. Perform any required removal, repair or replacement of this work caused by unsuitable conditions at no additional cost to Owner.
- C. Piping and ductwork shall be concealed or run behind furring in finished spaces unless otherwise noted to be run exposed.
- D. Horizontal piping and ductwork not run below slabs on grade shall be run as close as possible to underside of roof or floor slab above and parallel to building lines. Maintain maximum headroom in all areas.
- E. Determine possible interference between trades before the work is fabricated or installed. The contractor must coordinate his work to insure that erection will proceed without such interference. Coordination is of paramount importance and no request for additional payment will be considered where such request is based upon interference between trades.
- F. Connections to Existing Work:
  - 1. Install new work and connect to existing work with minimum of interference to existing facilities.
  - 2. Temporary shutdowns of existing services:
    - a. At no additional charges
    - b. At times not to interfere with normal operation of existing facilities.
    - c. Only with written consent of Owner.
  - 3. Maintain continuous operation of existing facilities as required with necessary temporary connections between new and existing work.
  - 4. Restore existing disturbed work to original condition.
- G. Removal, extraction and relocation of existing work.

1. The work includes demolition or removal of all construction indicated or specified. All materials resulting from demolition work, except as indicated or specified otherwise, shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be removed from the site. Rubbish and debris shall be removed from the site daily unless otherwise directed so as to not allow accumulation inside or outside the building. Materials that cannot be removed daily shall be stored in areas specified by the Owner.
2. Title to all materials and equipment to be demolished, excepting Owner salvage and historical items, is vested in the Contractor upon receipt of notice to proceed. The Owner will not be responsible for the condition, loss or damage to such property after notice to proceed.
3. The Owner reserves the "Right of First Refusal" on all material for salvage. Material for salvage shall be stored as approved by the Owner. Salvage materials shall be removed from the site before completion of the Contract. Material for salvage shall not be sold on the site.
4. Property of the Owner: Salvaged items remaining the property of the Owner shall be removed in a manner to prevent damage and packed or crated to protect the items from damage while in storage or during shipment and relocated by the contractor at no cost, to the Owners designated storage facility on the site. Containers shall be properly identified as to contents.
5. Damaged Items: Items damaged during removal or storage shall be repaired or replaced to match existing.
6. Disconnect, remove or relocate material, equipment, plumbing fixtures, piping and other work noted and required by removal or changes in existing conditions.
7. Where existing pipes, conduits and/or ducts which are to remain prevent installation of new work as indicated, relocate, or arrange for relocation, of existing pipes, conduits, and/or ducts.
8. Provide new material and equipment required for relocated equipment.
9. Plug or cap active piping or ductwork behind or below finish.
10. Do not leave long dead-end branches.
  - a. Cap or plug as close as possible to active line.
11. Remove unused piping, ductwork and equipment.
12. Dispose of unusable piping, ductwork and material.

#### **1.10 CLEARANCE FROM ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT**

**A. Piping or ductwork:**

1. Prohibited, except as noted, in:
  - a. Electric rooms and closets.
  - b. Telephone rooms and closets.
  - c. Elevator machine rooms.
  - d. Electric switchboard room.
2. Prohibited, except as noted, over or within 5 ft. of:
  - a. Transformers.
  - b. Substations.
  - c. Switchboards.
  - d. Motor control centers.
  - e. Standby power plant.
  - f. Bus ducts.
  - g. Electrical panels.
3. Drip pans under piping:
  - a. Only where unavoidable and approved.

- b. 18 gauge galvanized steel.
  - 1) With bituminous paint coating.
- c. Reinforced and supported.
- d. Watertight.
- e. With 1-1/4 inch drain outlet piped to floor drain or service sink.

#### **1.11 TEMPORARY FACILITIES**

- A. Temporary facilities are not included within this Section.

#### **1.12 SPECIAL TOOLS**

- A. Furnish to Owner at completion of work:
  - 1. One set of any special tools required to operate, adjust, dismantle or repair equipment furnished under any section of the Division.
  - 2. "Special tools": those not normally found in possession of mechanics or maintenance personnel.
  - 3. One pressure grease gun for each type of grease required.
    - a. With adapters to fit all lubricating fittings on equipment.
    - b. Include lubricant for lubricate plug valves.

#### **1.13 PRODUCT DELIVERY, HANDING AND STORAGE**

- A. Provide adequate and secure storage facilities for materials and equipment during the progress of the work.
- B. Contractor shall be responsible for the condition of all materials and equipment employed in the mechanical installation until final acceptance by the Owner. Protect same from any cause whatsoever.
- C. Where necessary, ship in crated sections of size to permit passing through available space.
- D. Ship equipment in original packages, to prevent damaging or entrance of foreign matter.
- E. Handle and ship in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- F. Provide protective coverings during construction.
- G. Replace at no expense to Owner, equipment or material damaged during storage or handling, as directed by Engineer.
- H. Include packing and shipping lists.
- I. Special requirements as specified in individual sections.

#### **1.14 PROTECTION OF MATERIALS**

- A. Protect from damage, water, dust, etc., material, equipment and apparatus provided under this Division, both in storage and installed, until Notice of Completion has been filed.
- B. Provide temporary storage facilities for materials and equipment.
- C. Material, equipment or apparatus damaged because of improper storage or protection will be rejected.
  - 1. Remove from site and provide new, duplicate, material, equipment or apparatus in replacement of that rejected.

- D. Cover motors and other moving machinery to protect from dirt and water during construction. Rotate moving equipment, shafts, bearings, motors etc to prevent corrosion and to circulate lubricants.
- E. Protect premises and work of other Divisions from damage arising out of installation of work of this Division.
  - 1. Contractor shall be responsible for the replacement of all damaged or defective work, materials or equipment. Do not install sensitive or delicate equipment until major construction work is completed.
  - 2. Remove replaced parts from premises.
- F. Do not leave any mechanical work in a hazardous condition, even temporarily.

#### **1.15 REVIEW OF CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Work may be reviewed at any time by representative of the Engineer.
- B. Advise Architect and Engineer that work is ready for review at following times:
  - 1. Prior to backfilling buried work.
  - 2. Prior to concealment of work in walls and above ceilings.
  - 3. When all requirements of Contract have been completed.
- C. Neither backfill nor conceal work without Engineer's consent.

#### **1.16 SCHEDULE OF WORK**

- A. Arrange work to conform to schedule of construction established or required to comply with Contract Documents.
- B. In scheduling, anticipate means of installing equipment through available openings in structure.
- C. Confirm in writing to Architect and Engineer, within 30 days of signing of contract, anticipated number of days required to perform test, balance, and acceptance testing of mechanical systems.
  - 1. This phase must occur after completion of mechanical systems, including all control calibration and adjustment, and requires substantial completion of the building, including closure, ceilings, lighting, partitioning, etc.
  - 2. Submit for approval at this time, names and qualifications of test and balancing agencies to be used.
- D. Arrange with Owner schedule for work in each area.
- E. Unless otherwise directed by Owner perform work during normal working hours.
- F. Work delays:
  - 1. In case noisy work interferes with Owner's operations, Owner may require work to be stopped and performed at some other time, or after normal working hours.

#### **1.17 ACCESS TO PLUMBING WORK**

- A. Access doors in walls and ceilings.
- B. Access Units Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where fire-resistance rating is indicated for construction penetrated by access units, provide UL listed-and-labeled units, except for units which are smaller than minimum size requiring ratings as recognized by governing authority.
- C. Product Data, Access Units: Submit manufacturer's technical data and installation instructions for each type of access door assembly, including setting drawings, templates, instructions and directions for installation of anchorage devices.

### **1.18 CONCRETE FOR PLUMBING WORK**

- A. Concrete for Plumbing Work
  - 1. Basins and curbs for mechanical equipment.
  - 2. Mechanical equipment foundations and housekeeping pads.
  - 3. Inertia bases for isolation of mechanical work.
  - 4. Rough grouting in and around mechanical work.
  - 5. Patching concrete cut to accommodate mechanical work.
- B. Quality control testing for concrete is required as work of this section.
- C. Concrete Work Codes and Standards:
  - 1. Comply with governing regulations and, where not otherwise indicated, comply with the following industry standards, whichever is the most stringent in its application to work in each instance.
    - ACI 301 "Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings"
    - ACI 311 "Recommended Practice for Concrete Inspection"
    - ACI 318 "Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete"
    - ACI 347 "Recommended Practice for Concrete Form work"
    - ACI 304 "Recommended Practice for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting and Placing Concrete"
- D. Submittals: Shop Drawing: Submit shop drawings for structural type concrete work, showing dimensions of formed shapes of concrete; bending, placement, sizes and spacing of reinforcing steel; location of anchors, isolation units, hangers and similar devices to be integrated with concrete work; and piping penetrations, access openings, inlets and other accessories and work to be accommodated by concrete work.
- E. Laboratory Test Reports: Submit laboratory test reports for concrete work materials, and for tested samples of placed concrete (where required as work of this section).

### **1.19 NOISE REDUCTION**

- A. Cooperate in reducing objectionable noise or vibration caused by mechanical systems.
  - 1. To extent of adjustments to specified and installed equipment and appurtenances.
- B. Correct noise problems caused by failure to install work in accordance with Contract Documents.
  - 1. Include labor and materials required as result of such failure.

### **1.20 CUTTING AND PATCHING**

- A. Provide all carpentry, cutting and patching required for proper installation of material and equipment specified.
- B. Do not cut or drill structural members without consent of Architect.

### **1.21 COORDINATION DRAWINGS**

- A. Layout Shop Drawings Required:
  - 1. Prepare layout shop drawings for all areas; minimum 3/8-inch scale.
  - 2. Individual coordinated trade layout drawings are to be prepared for all areas.
  - 3. General Contractor is to assure that each trade has coordinated work with other trades, prior to submittal where submittal is required.
    - a. Include stamp on each submittal indicating that layout shop drawing has been coordinated.

4. No layout shop drawing will be reviewed without stamped and signed coordinated assurance by General Contractor.
5. All changes shall be clearly marked on each submitted layout drawing.
6. Drawings shall show work of all trades including but not limited to:
  - a. Ductwork.
  - b. Piping: All Trades.
  - c. Mechanical Equipment.
  - d. Electrical Equipment.
  - e. Main Electrical conduits and bus ducts.
  - f. Equipment supports and suspension devices.
  - g. Structural and architectural constraints.
  - h. Show location of:
    - 1) Valves
    - 2) Piping specialties
    - 3) Dampers
    - 4) Access Doors
    - 5) Control and electrical panels
    - 6) Disconnect switches
7. Drawings shall indicate coordination with work in other Divisions, which must be incorporated in mechanical spaces, including, but not limited to:
  - a. Elevator equipment.
  - b. Cable trays not furnished under Division 16.
  - c. Computer equipment.
8. Submission of drawings:
  - a. Prepare reproducible drawings.
  - b. Submit to other trades for review of space allocated to all trades.
  - c. Revise drawings to compensate for requirements of existing conditions and conditions created by other trades.
  - d. Review revisions and other trades.
  - e. Submit one reproducible and one blueline print to Engineer for review.
9. Final prepared drawings shall show that other trades affected have made reviews and signed, by each trade, at completions of coordination.
  - a. General Contractor
  - b. Include stamp on each submittal indicating that layout shop drawing has been coordinated.

## **1.22 GUARANTEE**

- A. Furnish guarantee covering all work in accordance with general requirements of the contract for minimum period of one year. This personal guarantee shall exist for a period of one (1) year from the date of final acceptance of the work and shall apply to defects in materials and to defective workmanship of any kind.
- B. For factory-assembled equipment and devices on which the manufacturers furnish standard published guarantees as regular trade practice, obtain such guarantees and replace any such equipment, which proves defective during the life of these guarantees.
- C. Guarantee all work for which materials are furnished, fabricated or field erected by the contractor, all factory-assembled equipment for which no specific manufacturer's guarantee is furnished, and all work in connection with installing manufacturer's guarantee is furnished, and all work in connection with installing manufacturer's guaranteed equipment.



- D. In the event of failure of any work, equipment or device during the life of the guarantee, repair or replace the equipment or defective work. Remove, replace or restore, at no cost to the Owner, any part of the structure or building which may be damaged either as the direct result of the defective work or in the course of the contractor's making replacement of the defective work or materials. Work shall be done at a time and in a manner as to cause no undue inconvenience to the Owner. Provide new materials, equipment, apparatus and labor to replace that determined by Engineer to be defective or faulty.
- E. This guarantee also applies to services including Instructions, Adjusting, Testing, Noise, Balancing, etc.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT QUALITY**

- A. Material and equipment furnished under this Division of specification shall be new. Defective or inferior materials must be replaced by contractor at no cost to Owner regardless of the stage of construction. Inferior material shall be defined as material or equipment of a quality or performance less than that specified as determined by the Owner's Representative.
- B. Provide each item of equipment with manufacturer's identification tag, which is readily accessible and clearly shows model and size.

### **2.2 ACCESS TO PLUMBING WORK**

- A. Access Doors:
  - 1. General: Where walls and ceilings must be penetrated for access to mechanical work, provide types of access doors indicated. Furnish sizes indicated or, where not otherwise indicated, furnish adequate size for intended and necessary access, furnish doors with UL Fire Rating to match wall or ceiling construction. Furnish manufacturer's complete units, of type recommended for application in indicated substrate construction, in each case, complete with anchorages and hardware.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Tests:
  - 1. Perform as specified in individual sections, and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Duration as noted.
- B. Provide required labor, material, equipment, and connections.
- C. Furnish written report and certification that tests have been satisfactorily completed.
- D. Repair or replace defective work, as directed.
- E. Pay for restoring or replacing damaged work due to tests as directed.
- F. Pay for restoring or replacing damaged work of others, due to tests, as directed.

### **3.2 ACCESS TO PLUMBING WORK**

- A. Coordinate installation and placement of access doors and panels with contractor for general construction.

- B. Remove or replace panels or frames, which are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

END OF SECTION 22 00 01

## SECTION 220517

### SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
  - 4. Grout.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.

##### 2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
  - 2. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
  - 3. Josam Company; Josam Div.
- B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

##### 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Presealed Systems.

2. Holdrite.
  3. Emerson Industrial Automation.
- B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

## **2.4 GROUT**

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION**

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
  2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### **3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

### 3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
  2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Sleeve-seal fittings.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Sleeve-seal fittings.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves or PVC-pipe sleeves.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves or PVC-pipe sleeves.
  5. Interior Partitions:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves or PVC-pipe sleeves.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 22 05 17

## SECTION 220518

### ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.

##### 2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

##### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.

- d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - 2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping:
    - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.
    - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
  - D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
    - 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
    - 2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.
- 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**
- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 22 05 18

## SECTION 220519

### METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
  - 2. Thermowells.
  - 3. Dial-type pressure gages.
  - 4. Gage attachments.
  - 5. Test plugs.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

##### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.

##### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

- A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Flo Fab Inc.
    - b. Miljoco Corporation.
    - c. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
    - d. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
    - e. Terice, H. O. Co.
    - f. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
    - g. Winters Instruments - U.S.
  - 2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - 3. Case: Cast aluminum; 9-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
  - 5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid (no mercury).
  - 6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.



7. Window: Glass.
8. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
  - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

## **2.2 THERMOWELLS**

### **A. Thermowells:**

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
4. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
5. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
6. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
7. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
8. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
10. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

### **B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.**

## **2.3 PRESSURE GAGES**

### **A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
  - b. Ashcroft Inc.
  - c. Ernst Flow Industries.
  - d. Flo Fab Inc.
  - e. Marsh Bellofram.
  - f. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
  - g. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
  - h. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
  - i. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - k. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  - l. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
  - m. Winters Instruments - U.S.
2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Sealed type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.

- 10. Ring: Metal.
- 11. Accuracy: Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of scale range.

## **2.4 GAGE ATTACHMENTS**

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

## **2.5 TEST PLUGS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Flow Design, Inc.
  - 2. Miljoco Corporation.
  - 3. National Meter, Inc.
  - 4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
  - 5. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - 6. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  - 7. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 8. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
- B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- F. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending one-third of pipe diameter and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- G. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- H. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- I. Install thermometers in the following locations:
  - 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
  - 2. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.

- J. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
  - 1. Building water service entrance into building.
  - 2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
  - 3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

### **3.2 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

### **3.3 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

### **3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE**

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater and storage tank shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. Direct-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
  - 3. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
  - 4. Direct-mounted, light-activated type.
  - 5. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- B. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

### **3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE**

- A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F.

### **3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE**

- A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be the following:
  - 1. Sealed, direct-mounted, metal case.
  - 2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be the following:
  - 1. Sealed, direct-mounted, metal case.
  - 2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be the following:
  - 1. Sealed, direct-mounted, metal case.
  - 2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

### **3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE**

- A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi and 0 to 1400 kPa.

END OF SECTION 22 05 19

SECTION 220523

GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Bronze ball valves.
  - 2. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
  - 3. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
  - 4. Bronze swing check valves.
  - 5. Iron gate valves.
  - 6. Lubricated plug valves.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 22 0553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
  - 2. Section 22 1116 "Domestic Water Piping" for valves applicable only to this piping.
  - 3. Section 22 1319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for valves applicable only to this piping.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.
- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  - 2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.

- 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

## **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
  - 3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
  - 4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
  - 5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
  - 6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES**

- A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- B. Per new Federal Lead Free Law, any product designed for dispensing potable water meet both the NSF 61 and NSF 372 test standards via third-party testing and certification.
- C. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- D. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
  - 2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
  - 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller.
  - 4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
- F. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:
  - 1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
  - 2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
- G. Valve-End Connections:
  - 1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
  - 2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
  - 3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
  - 4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
- H. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

## 2.2 BRONZE BALL VALVES

- A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Valve, Inc.
    - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - d. Hammond Valve.
    - e. Lance Valves; a division of Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
    - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - g. NIBCO INC.
    - h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
    - i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Two piece.
    - e. Body Material: Bronze.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
    - h. Stem: Bronze.
    - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - j. Port: Full.

## 2.3 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
    - b. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - e. DeZurik Water Controls.
    - f. Flo Fab Inc.
    - g. Hammond Valve.
    - h. Kitz Corporation.
    - i. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - j. NIBCO INC.
    - k. Red-White Valve Corporation.
    - l. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM.
    - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

## **2.4 IRON, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES**

- A. 175 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
    - b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
    - c. Tyco Fire Products LP; Grinnell Mechanical Products.
    - d. Victaulic Company.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 175 psig.
    - c. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
    - d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
    - e. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
    - f. Seal: EPDM.

## **2.5 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES**

- A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Valve, Inc.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - e. Hammond Valve.
    - f. Kitz Corporation.
    - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - h. NIBCO INC.
    - i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
    - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded.
    - f. Disc: Bronze.

## **2.6 IRON GATE VALVES**

- A. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - d. Hammond Valve.
    - e. Kitz Corporation.
    - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - g. NIBCO INC.

- h. Powell Valves.
    - i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
    - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Flanged.
    - e. Trim: Bronze.
    - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
    - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

## **2.7 LUBRICATED PLUG VALVES**

- A. Class 125, Regular-Gland, Lubricated Plug Valves with Threaded Ends:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.
    - b. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies.
    - c. Milliken Valve Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - d. Pattern: Regular or short.
    - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.
- B. Class 125, Lubricated Plug Valves with Flanged Ends:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.
    - b. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies.
    - c. Milliken Valve Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-78, Type II.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M or ASTM A 126, cast iron with lubrication-sealing system.
    - d. Pattern: Regular or short.
    - e. Plug: Cast iron or bronze with sealant groove.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.



- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### **3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION**

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
  - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.

### **3.3 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### **3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS**

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly valves.
  - 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
  - 3. Throttling Service: ball, or butterfly valves.
  - 4. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, resilient-seat check valves.
    - c. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
  - 4. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing: Valve ends may be grooved.

### **3.5 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE**

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
  - 1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.

2. Ball Valves: Two-piece, full port, bronze with bronze trim.
  3. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
  2. Iron Ball Valves: Class 150.
  3. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
  4. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 175 CWP.
  5. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
  6. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, OS&Y.

END OF SECTION 22 05 23

## SECTION 220529

### HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  - 4. Fastener systems.
  - 5. Equipment supports.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

##### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer licensed in North Carolina, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

##### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
  - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 2. Metal framing systems.
  - 3. Pipe stands.
  - 4. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

## **1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Welding certificates.

## **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
  3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
  4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Copper Pipe Hangers:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
  2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

### **2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS**

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

### **2.3 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
  2. Clement Support Services.
  3. ERICO International Corporation.
  4. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
  5. PHS Industries, Inc.
  6. Pipe Shields, Inc.; a subsidiary of Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
  7. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
  8. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  9. Value Engineered Products, Inc.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.
- D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

- E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## **2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS**

- A. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened Portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

## **2.5 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS**

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

## **2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## **3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Pipe Stand Installation:
  - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.

2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- M. Insulated Piping:
  1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
    - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
  5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
  6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### **3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS**

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### **3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS**

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### **3.5 PAINTING**

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 09
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

### **3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE**

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- H. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 2. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
  - 3. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
  - 4. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
- I. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- J. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  - 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  - 3. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- K. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  - 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  - 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  - 4. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  - 5. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  - 6. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- L. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  - 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.



- M. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- N. Use powder-actuated fasteners instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- O. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 22 05 29

## SECTION 220553

### IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Stencils.
  - 5. Valve tags.
  - 6. Warning tags.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

##### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch, Aluminum, 0.032-inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  - 3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering

for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## **2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS**

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Yellow.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## **2.3 PIPE LABELS**

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

## **2.4 STENCILS**

- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
1. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
  2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
  3. Identification Paint: Exterior, acrylic enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

## **2.5 VALVE TAGS**

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch Stainless steel, 0.025-inch Aluminum, 0.032-inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  2. Fasteners: Brass beaded chain.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## **2.6 WARNING TAGS**

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
  2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
  3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
  4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

## **3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION**

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

## **3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION**

- A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 09.

- B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, on each piping system.
  - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
  - 1. Domestic Water Piping:
    - a. Background Color: Yellow.
    - b. Letter Color: Black.
  - 2. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
    - a. Background Color: Yellow.
    - b. Letter Color: Black.

### **3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION**

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
  - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
    - b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
  - 2. Valve-Tag Color:
    - a. Cold Water: Natural.
    - b. Hot Water: Natural.
  - 3. Letter Color:
    - a. Cold Water: Black.
    - b. Hot Water: Black.

### **3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION**

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 22 05 53

## SECTION 220719

### PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
  - 1. Domestic cold-water piping.
  - 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
  - 3. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
  - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.

##### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

##### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

- C. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

## **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## **1.7 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

## **1.8 SCHEDULING**

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

# **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

## **2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS**

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
    - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
    - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.
- G. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
  - b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
  - c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
  - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
  - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

## **2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS**

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.
    - b. Foster; Specialty Construction Brands, Inc.
    - c. P.K.'s; Quik-Cote.

## **2.3 ADHESIVES**

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; AeroSeal.
    - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
    - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- D. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
    - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
    - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
    - d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.



2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## **2.4 SEALANTS**

### **A. Joint Sealants:**

1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
  - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
  - e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
5. Color: White or gray.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## **2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS**

- ### **A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:**
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

## **2.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS**

- ### **A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.**
- ### **B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.**
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
    - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
    - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
    - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
  2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  3. Color: White.
  4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

## **2.7 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS**

- ### **A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers at ADA Lavatories :**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Engineered Brass Company.
  - b. Insul-Tect Products Co.; a subsidiary of MVG Molded Products.
  - c. McGuire Manufacturing.
  - d. Plumberex.
  - e. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
  - f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

#### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- C. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- D. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- E. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.

3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- O. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  1. Vibration-control devices.
  2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  3. Nameplates and data plates.
  4. Cleanouts.

### **3.4 PENETRATIONS**

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### **3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION**

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
  - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  - 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  - 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  - 5. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  - 6. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  - 7. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  - 8. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation

at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

### **3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION**

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
  - 1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  - 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
  - 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
  - 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  - 1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
  - 2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  - 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### **3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION**

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
  - 1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  - 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
  - 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
  - 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
  - 1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.

4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
  1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
  3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### **3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION**

- A. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

### **3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, locations of threaded valves, and locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### **3.10 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL**

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
  1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
  2. Underground piping.
  3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

### **3.11 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE**

- A. Domestic Cold Water:

1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.
    - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
  2. NPS 1-1/4 and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
    - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- B. Domestic Hot Water (all temperatures):
1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
    - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
  2. NPS 1-1/2 and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
    - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
- C. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.

### **3.12 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE**

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
1. None.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
1. PVC: 20 mils thick.

END OF SECTION 22 07 19

SECTION 221116

DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Under-building-slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, and fittings inside buildings.
  - 2. Encasement for piping.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Requirements:
  - 1. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying water. Include tapping of water mains and backflow prevention.
  - 2. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for potable-water-service piping, including materials, installation, testing, and disinfection.
- B. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- C. Per new Federal Lead Free Law, any product designed for dispensing potable water meet both the NSF 61 and NSF 372 test standards via third-party testing and certification.

**1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
  - 2. Do not interrupt water service without Owner's written permission.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61. Plastic piping components shall be marked with "NSF-pw."

### 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, annealed temper.
- C. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
- D. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
- E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- F. Copper Unions:
  - 1. MSS SP-123.
  - 2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
  - 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
  - 4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.

### 2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe:
  - 1. AWWA C151/A21.51, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
  - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
  - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111/A21.11, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- C. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, ductile or gray iron.
  - 2. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.
- D. Plain-End, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51.

### 2.4 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:
  - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.
- D. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

## **2.5 TRANSITION FITTINGS**

- A. General Requirements:
  - 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
  - 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
  - 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.
    - b. Dresser, Inc.; Piping Specialties Products.
    - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
    - d. JCM Industries.
    - e. Romac Industries, Inc.
    - f. Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
    - g. Viking Johnson.

## **2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS**

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
    - d. Jomar International.
    - e. Matco-Norca.
    - f. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - h. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
  - 3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
  - 4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Matco-Norca.
    - d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - e. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
  - 3. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.

4. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
  5. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Central Plastics Company.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  2. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
  3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
  4. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
  5. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
  6. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E. Dielectric Nipples:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Elster Perfection Corporation.
    - b. Grinnell Mechanical Products; Tyco Fire Products LP.
    - c. Matco-Norca.
    - d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    - e. Victaulic Company.
  2. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
  3. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
  4. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
  5. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
  6. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

#### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install underground ductile-iron pipe in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.

- E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- G. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- H. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- I. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- J. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- K. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- L. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- M. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- N. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- O. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- P. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- Q. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- R. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Division 22 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- S. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping near water heater.
- T. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- U. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- V. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- W. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### **3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Joint Construction for Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Cut round-bottom grooves in ends of pipe at gasket-seat dimension required for specified (flexible or rigid) joint. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

### **3.4 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
  - 1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
  - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.

### **3.5 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

### **3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
  - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.

4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.
- E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
- F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- G. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.7 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
  1. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
  2. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
  3. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

### **3.8 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

### **3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  1. Piping Inspections:
    - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:

- 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
- 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Piping Tests:
  - a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
  - b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  - e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection and test reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction. Submit all reports to Architect.

### 3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
  1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
  2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
  3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
  4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
    - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
    - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
  5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
  6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
  7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
  8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

### 3.11 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
  1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.

2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
  - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
  - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
    - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours. OR
    - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
  - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
  - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
  - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

### 3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
  1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- E. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
  1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
- F. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6, shall be the following:
  1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.

### 3.13 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
  1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated balancing valves.
  4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16



SECTION 221119

DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Vacuum breakers.
  - 2. Backflow preventers.
  - 3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
  - 4. Balancing valves.
  - 5. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
  - 6. Strainers.
  - 7. Drain valves.
  - 8. Water-hammer arresters.
  - 9. Trap-seal primer valves.
  - 10. Specialty valves.
  - 11. Flexible connectors.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.
  - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Field quality-control reports.

**1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES**

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61.
- B. Per new Federal Lead Free Law, any product designed for dispensing potable water meet both the NSF 61 and NSF 372 test standards via third-party testing and certification.

**2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS

### A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - b. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
  - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - d. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - e. Rain Bird Corporation.
  - f. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
  - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - h. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
6. Finish: Chrome plated.

### B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Arrowhead Brass Products.
  - b. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
  - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - d. Legend Valve.
  - e. MIFAB, Inc.
  - f. Prier Products, Inc.
  - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - h. Woodford Manufacturing Company; a division of WCM Industries, Inc.
  - i. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.

### C. Pressure Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - d. Flomatic Corporation.
  - e. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1020.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
5. Accessories:

- a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.

## 2.4 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

### A. Intermediate Atmospheric-Vent Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - d. Honeywell International Inc.
  - e. Legend Valve.
  - f. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - g. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1035.
3. Operation: Noncontinuous-pressure applications.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8.
6. End Connections: Threaded.
7. Finish: Rough bronze.

### B. Double-Check, Backflow-Prevention Assemblies – DC:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company. Equal to 007 series.
  - b. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - d. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - e. Flomatic Corporation.
  - f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1015.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
5. Size: as noted on plans
6. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
8. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
9. Accessories:
  - a. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
  - b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.

### C. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.

- c. Woodford Manufacturing Company; a division of WCM Industries, Inc.
2. Standard: ASSE 1052.
3. Operation: Up to 10-foot head of water back pressure.
4. Inlet Size: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4.
5. Outlet Size: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Capacity: At least 3-gpm flow.

## **2.5 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES**

### **A. Water Regulators -PRV:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.- Equal to ACV F115 series.
  - b. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
  - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - d. Honeywell International Inc.
  - e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1003.
3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
4. Size: as noted.
5. Design Flow Rate: 80 gpm peak, 12-40 gpm average intermittent flow.
6. Design Inlet Pressure: 125 psig.
7. Design Outlet Pressure Setting: 1-1/2" PRV set at 65 psig. 2 1/2" PRV set at 60 psi
8. Body: Bronze with chrome-plated finish for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
9. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.

## **2.6 BALANCING VALVES**

### **A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
  - b. Flo Fab Inc.
  - c. ITT Corporation; Bell & Gossett Div.
  - d. NIBCO Inc.
  - e. TAC.
  - f. TACO Incorporated.
  - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
2. Type: Ball or Y-pattern globe valve with two readout ports and memory-setting indicator.
3. Body: Brass or bronze.
4. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
5. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

### **B. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.**

## **2.7 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES**

### **A. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves, TMV-1:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
    - c. Leonard Valve Company.
    - d. Powers; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - e. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
    - f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1017, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve.
  3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Body: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
  5. Temperature Control: Adjustable.
  6. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.
  7. Finish: Rough or chrome-plated bronze.
  8. Tempered-Water Setting: 105 deg F.
  9. Tempered-Water Design Flow Rate: 2.5 gpm.
- B. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valves TMV-2:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
    - c. Leonard Valve Company.
    - d. Powers; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - e. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
    - f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1017, 1070.
  3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Type: Exposed-mounted, thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
  5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
  6. Connections: Threaded inlets and outlet.
  7. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
  8. Tempered-Water Setting: 120 deg F.
  9. Tempered-Water Design Flow Rate: peak 12 gpm.
  10. Selected Valve Flow Rate at 20-psig Pressure Drop: 8.5 gpm.
  11. Valve Finish: Rough bronze.
  12. Piping Finish: Copper.

## **2.8 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING**

- A. Y-Pattern Strainers:
1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, epoxy coated and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Drain: Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve.

## 2.9 WALL HYDRANTS

### A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants **NFHB**:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company. Equal to 71300
  - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - c. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - d. Watts Drainage Products.
  - e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Products.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
7. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
8. Box: Deep, flush mounted with cover.
9. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
10. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
11. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
12. Operating Keys(s): One with each wall hydrant.

## 2.10 DRAIN VALVES

### A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

### B. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for ball valves or MSS SP-80 for gate valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 200-psig minimum CWP or Class 125.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy or ASTM B 62 bronze.
5. Drain: NPS 1/8 side outlet with cap.

## 2.11 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

### A. Water-Hammer Arresters :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.

- b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - e. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - f. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - g. Watts Drainage Products.
  - h. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Products.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
  - 3. Type: Metal bellows or Copper tube with piston.
  - 4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

## **2.12 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER DEVICE**

- A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device :
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. MIFAB, Inc.
    - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
    - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    - e. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1018.
  - 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.
  - 4. Body: Bronze.
  - 5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 threaded, union, or solder joint.
  - 6. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 threaded or solder joint.
  - 7. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

## **2.13 SPECIALTY VALVES**

- A. Comply with requirements for general-duty metal valves in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

## **2.14 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
  - 2. Flexicraft Industries.
  - 3. Flex Pression, Ltd.
  - 4. Flex-Weld Incorporated.
  - 5. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
  - 6. Mercer Gasket & Shim, Inc.
  - 7. Metraflex, Inc.
  - 8. Unaflex.Universal Metal Hose; a Hyspan company.
- B. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
  - 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
  - 2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.

3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
- C. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
  1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
  2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
  3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
  2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
  3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- B. Install water-control valves with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with globe valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- C. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- D. Install temperature-actuated, water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
  1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- E. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each water pressure-reducing valve.
- F. Install water-hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- G. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for ground equipment in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
  1. Pressure vacuum breakers.
  2. Intermediate atmospheric-vent backflow preventers.
  3. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
  4. Double-check, backflow-prevention assemblies.
  5. Dual-check-valve backflow preventers.
  6. Double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventers.
  7. Water pressure-reducing valves.
  8. Calibrated balancing valves.



9. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
10. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.
11. Trap-seal primer systems.

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker, reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, double-check, backflow-prevention assembly and double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer.
  2. Complete test reports as required by NY and local DOH, include DOH-1013 form.
- B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.5 ADJUSTING**

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 22 11 19

SECTION 221316

SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
  - 2. Specialty pipe fittings.
  - 3. Encasement for underground metal piping.


**1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.
  - 2. Waste, Force-Main Piping: 100 psig.
- B. Seismic Performance: Soil, waste, and vent piping and support and installation shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Hubless Cast Iron pipe and fittings shall be manufactured from gray cast iron and shall conform to ASTM A 888 and CISPI Standard 301. All pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute  and listed by NSF<sup>®</sup> International. Hubless Couplings shall conform to CISPI Standard 310 for standard couplings and be listed by NSF<sup>®</sup> International. or ASTM C 1540 for heavy duty couplings where indicated.
- C. All Buried Plastic Piping shall be installed per ASTM D 2321.
- D. All Fabricated PVC DWV Fittings shall meet ASTM F 1866. Pipe and Fittings shall be manufactured as a system and be the product of a single manufacturer.
- E.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

### 2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class(es).
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

### 2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. Sovent Stack Fittings: ASME B16.45 or ASSE 1043, hubless, cast-iron aerator and deaerator drainage fittings.
- C. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ANACO-Husky.
    - b. Fernco Inc.
    - c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
    - d. Tyler Pipe.
  - 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
  - 3. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- D. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ANACO-Husky.
    - b. Clamp-All Corp.
    - c. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
    - d. Tyler Pipe.
  - 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
  - 3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

### 2.4 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
- B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
- C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
- D. Copper Pressure Fittings:

1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
  2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- E. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
  2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

## **2.5 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- B. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- C. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
1. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.
1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Solvent cement shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## **2.6 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS**

- A. Transition Couplings:
1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
  2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
  3. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
      - 2) PASCO Specialty & Mfg., Inc.
      - 3) Fernco Inc.
    - b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
    - c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  4. Pressure Transition Couplings:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Dresser, Inc.
    - 2) EBAA Iron, Inc.
    - 3) JCM Industries, Inc.
    - 4) Romac Industries, Inc.
    - 5) Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
    - 6) The Ford Meter Box Company, Inc.
    - 7) Viking Johnson.
  - b. Standard: AWWA C219.
  - c. Description: Metal, sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
  - d. Center-Sleeve Material: Stainless steel.
  - e. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
  - f. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
- B. Dielectric Fittings:
  - 1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
  - 2. Dielectric Unions:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
      - 2) Hart Industries International, Inc.
      - 3) Jomar International Ltd.
      - 4) Matco-Norca, Inc.
      - 5) Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
      - 6) Wilkins; a Zurn company.
    - b. Description:
      - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
      - 2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
      - 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
  - 3. Dielectric Flanges:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
      - 2) Matco-Norca, Inc.
      - 3) Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
      - 4) Wilkins; a Zurn company.
    - b. Description:
      - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
      - 2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
      - 3) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
      - 4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
  - 4. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - 2) Calpico, Inc.
    - 3) Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - b. Description:
    - 1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - 3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
    - 4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
    - 5) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
5. Dielectric Nipples:
- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Elster Perfection.
    - 2) Grinnell Mechanical Products.
    - 3) Matco-Norca, Inc.
    - 4) Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    - 5) Victaulic Company.
  - b. Description:
    - 1) Standard: IAPMO PS 66
    - 2) Electroplated steel nipple.
    - 3) Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
    - 4) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
    - 5) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

#### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- K. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- L. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
  - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
  - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- M. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
  - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- N. Install underground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- O. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- P. Install engineered soil and waste drainage and vent piping systems as follows:
  - 1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
- Q. Install copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- R. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
- S. Plumbing Specialties:
  - 1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  - 2. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- T. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- U. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

- V. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- W. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### **3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- B. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum calked joints.
- C. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- D. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
- E. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendixes.

### **3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION**

- A. Transition Couplings:
  - 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
  - 2. In Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
  - 3. In Aboveground Force Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
  - 4. In Underground Force Main Piping:
    - a. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
    - b. NPS 2 and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.
- B. Dielectric Fittings:
  - 1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
  - 2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples or unions.
  - 3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits.
  - 4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

### **3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION**

- A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Shutoff Valves:
  - 1. Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.
  - 2. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 and smaller.
  - 3. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.



### **3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
  - 2. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
  - 3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  - 4. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - 5. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - 6. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
  - 6. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- H. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 3 and NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- I. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- J. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.7 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
  - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
  - 5. Comply with requirements for cleanouts and drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  - 6. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Connect force-main piping to the following:
  - 1. Sewage Pump: To sewage pump discharge.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- F. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

### **3.8 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### **3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with

- water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
  5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- D. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Reports: Prepare inspection and test reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction. Submit all reports to Architect.

### **3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

### **3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE**

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:
  1. PVC pipes, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- C. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be the following:
  1. PVC pipes, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:
  1. PVC pipes, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- E. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:

1. PVC pipes, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- F. Underground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be the following:
1. PVC pipes, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

END OF SECTION 22 13 16

SECTION 221319

SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cleanouts.
  - 2. Floor drains.
  - 3. Area drains.
  - 4. Roof flashing assemblies.
  - 5. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
  - 6. Flashing materials.

**1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Field quality-control test reports.

**1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For drainage piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

**1.6 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 CLEANOUTS**

- A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts CO:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    - b. MIFAB, Inc.
    - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
    - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.

- f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
  3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
  4. Body Material: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
  5. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head, brass plug.
  6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
  7. Closure: Stainless-steel plug with seal.
- B. Metal Floor Cleanouts FCO:
  1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    - b. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
    - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
    - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
    - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule threaded, adjustable housing cleanout.
  3. Size: Same as connected branch.
  4. Type: Threaded, adjustable housing.
  5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
  6. Clamping Device: Required.
  7. Outlet Connection: Spigot.
  8. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
  9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with set-screws or other device.
  10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
  11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
  12. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
  13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.
  14. Standard: ASME A112.3.1.
  15. Size: Same as connected branch.
- C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts WCO:
  1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    - b. MIFAB, Inc.
    - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; d of Smith Industries, Inc.
    - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
    - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
    - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
  3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
  4. Body: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
  5. Closure: Countersunk, brass plug.
  6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
  7. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.

## 2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

- A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains FD-1, general area drain, shower floor, etc.:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Josam Company; Josam Div. Equal to 30000-A
    - b. MIFAB, Inc.
    - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
    - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
    - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
  3. Pattern: Area Floor drain.
  4. Body Material: Gray iron.
  5. Seepage Flange: Not required.
  6. Clamping Device: Required.
  7. Outlet: Bottom.
  8. Sediment Bucket: Not required.
  9. Top or Strainer Material: Nickel bronze.
  10. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze.
  11. Top Shape: Round.
  12. Dimensions of Top or Strainer: 8"
  13. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
  14. Funnel: Not required, except if accepting indirect waste discharge (i.e Ice machine) then add funnel.
  15. Trap Material: Cast iron.
  16. Trap Pattern: Deep-seal P-trap.
  17. Trap Features: Trap-seal primer valve drain connection.
- B. Cast-Iron Floor Drains FD-2, mechanical areas:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Josam Company; Josam Div. Equal to 32300-81-1
    - b. MIFAB, Inc.
    - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
    - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
    - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
  3. Pattern: Mechanical Area Floor drain.
  4. Body Material: Gray iron.
  5. Seepage Flange: Not required.
  6. Clamping Device: Required.
  7. Outlet: Bottom.
  8. Sediment Bucket: Required.
  9. Top or Strainer Material: Nickel bronze.
  10. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze.
  11. Top Shape: Round.
  12. Dimensions of Top or Strainer: 12" Super-Flo
  13. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
  14. Funnel: Not required, except if accepting indirect waste discharge (i.e Ice machine).
  15. Trap Material: Cast iron.

16. Trap Pattern: Deep-seal P-trap.
17. Trap Features: Trap-seal primer valve drain connection.

## **2.3 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Roof Flashing Assemblies:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Acorn Engineering Company; Elmdor/Stoneman Div.
    - b. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
    - c. GAF Materials Corporation.
- B. Description: Manufactured assembly made of 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch- thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 6 inches from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.
1. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.
  2. Low-Silhouette Vent Cap: With vandal-proof vent cap.
  3. Extended Vent Cap: With field-installed, vandal-proof vent cap.

## **2.4 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES**

- A. Deep-Seal Traps:
1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
  2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
    - a. NPS 2: 4-inch- minimum water seal.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch- minimum water seal.
- B. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:
1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
  2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 side inlet.
- C. Air-Gap Fittings:
1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
  2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
  3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
  4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
  5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.
- D. Sleeve Flashing Device:
1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device, that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 2 inches above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
  2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.
- E. Stack Flashing Fittings:
1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
  2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.



- F. Vent Caps:
  - 1. Description: Cast-iron body with threaded or hub inlet and vandal-proof design. Include vented hood and setscrews to secure to vent pipe.
  - 2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.
- G. Frost-Resistant Vent Terminals:
  - 1. Description: Manufactured or shop-fabricated assembly constructed of copper, lead-coated copper, or galvanized steel.
  - 2. Design: To provide 1-inch enclosed air space between outside of pipe and inside of flashing collar extension, with counterflashing.
- H. Expansion Joints:
  - 1. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M.
  - 2. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.
  - 3. End Connections: Matching connected piping.
  - 4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent piping.

## **2.5 FLASHING MATERIALS**

- A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. General Use: 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness.
  - 2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0469-inch thickness.
  - 3. Burning: 6-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness.
- B. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, of the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. General Applications: 12 oz./sq. ft..
  - 2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 8 oz./sq. ft..
- C. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- D. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- E. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.
- F. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  - 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  - 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
  - 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- B. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- C. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.

- D. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
  - 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
    - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
    - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
    - c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
  - 3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  - 4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install fixture air-admittance valves on fixture drain piping, only where indicated on plans as acceptable.
- F. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- G. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- H. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.
- I. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
  - 1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
  - 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- J. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- K. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- L. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.
- M. Install frost-resistant vent terminals on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.
- N. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.
- O. Install frost-proof vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.
- P. Install solids interceptors with cleanout immediately downstream from interceptors that do not have integral cleanout on outlet. Install trap on interceptors that do not have integral trap and are connected to sanitary drainage and vent systems.
- Q. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

### **3.2 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### **3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION**

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
  - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
  - 2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
  - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
  - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
  - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.
- G. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

### **3.5 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 22 13 19

SECTION 223300

ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Commercial, electric, storage, domestic-water heaters.
  2. Domestic-water heater accessories.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of commercial, electric, domestic-water heater, from manufacturer.
- B. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

**1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric, domestic-water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

**1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- C. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects."

## **1.7 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

## **1.8 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
    - b. Faulty operation of controls.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
  2. Warranty Periods: From date of Final Acceptance.
    - a. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
      - 1) Storage Tank: three years.
      - 2) Controls and Other Components: One year(s).

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 COMMERCIAL, ELECTRIC, STORAGE, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS**

- A. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters DWH-1:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AERCO International, Inc.
    - b. Bradford White Corporation. Equal to LD-40S3-3.
    - c. Lochinvar Corporation.
    - d. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
    - e. A.O. Smith.
    - f. State Industries.
  2. Standard: UL 1453.
  3. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel tank vertical with 125-psig minimum working-pressure rating.
  4. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - b. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
    - c. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
    - d. Jacket: Circular shaped, with stainless front panel, unless otherwise indicated.
    - e. Heating elements: Electric, screw-in or bolt on immersion type arranged in multiplies of three
    - f. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
    - g. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
    - h. Relief valve: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature and pressure relief valve. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
  5. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction
- B. Capacity and Characteristics:
1. Capacity: 40 gallon
  2. Recovery: 36 GPH at 100 deg F temperature rise.

3. Temperature Setting: 140 deg F
4. Power Demand: 9 kw.
5. Heating of Elements:
  - a. Number of elements: Two
  - b. Kilowatts Each Element: 4.5 kw
  - c. Number of Stages: One
6. Electrical Characteristics:
  - a. Volts: 208
  - b. Phase: 1
  - c. Hertz: 60.

## **2.2 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES**

- A. Domestic-Water Compression Tanks:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AMTROL Inc.
    - b. Flexcon Industries.
    - c. Honeywell International Inc.
    - d. Pentair Pump Group (The); Myers.
    - e. Smith, A. O. Water Products Co.; a division of A. O. Smith Corporation.
    - f. State Industries.
    - g. Taco, Inc.
  2. Description: Steel, pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
  3. Construction:
    - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
  4. Capacity and Characteristics:
    - a. Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - b. Capacity Acceptable: 2 gal. minimum.
    - c. Air Precharge Pressure: system pressure.
- B. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Integral factory-installed or field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2.
- C. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.2.
- D. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.

## **2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect assembled domestic-water heaters and storage tanks specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Hydrostatically test commercial domestic-water heaters and storage tanks to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.
- C. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and

reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.

- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Commercial, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Div 33.
1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
  2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
  3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
  4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  7. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  8. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Install domestic-water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- C. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- D. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in water piping for domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- E. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install thermometer on outlet piping of domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- G. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- H. Fill domestic-water heaters with water.
- I. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.

### **3.2 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Comply with requirements for domestic-water piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- C. Where installing piping adjacent to Electric, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

### **3.3 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
  - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.5 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.

END OF SECTION 22 33 00



SECTION 224213.13

COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Water closets.
  2. Toilet seats.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for water closets.
  2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

**1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flush tank to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 FLOOR-MOUNTED, BOTTOM-OUTLET WATER CLOSETS**

- A. Water Closets WC-1: Accessible Floor mounted, bottom outlet, gravity high performance siphon jet, 1.28GPF.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures. Equal to Z5555-HET-1.28
    - b. American Standard America.
    - c. Kohler Co.
    - d. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
    - e. TOTO USA, INC.
  2. Tank and Bowl:
    - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
    - b. Material: Vitreous china.
    - c. Style: Gravity siphon jet.
    - d. Height: ADA Accessible.
    - e. Rim Contour: Elongated.
    - f. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
    - g. Color: White.
  3. Bowl-to-Drain Connecting Fitting: ASTM A 1045 or ASME A112.4.3.

4. 3" Flush Valve.
  5. Toilet Seat: Open front - required.
- B. Water Closets WC-2: Floor mounted, bottom outlet, gravity high performance siphon jet, 1.28GPF.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures. Equal to Z5535-HET-1.28
    - b. American Standard America.
    - c. Kohler Co.
    - d. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
    - e. TOTO USA, INC.
  2. Tank and Bowl:
    - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
    - b. Material: Vitreous china.
    - c. Style: Gravity siphon jet.
    - d. Height: Standard.
    - e. Rim Contour: Elongated.
    - f. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
    - g. Color: White.
  3. Bowl-to-Drain Connecting Fitting: ASTM A 1045 or ASME A112.4.3.
  4. 3" Flush Valve.
  5. Toilet Seat: Open front - required.

## 2.2 TOILET SEATS

- A. Toilet Seats:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Standard America.
    - b. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
    - c. Church Seats. Equal to 293SS
    - d. Olsonite Seat Co.
    - e. TOTO USA, INC.
    - f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
  2. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.5.
  3. Material: Plastic.
  4. Type: Commercial (Heavy duty).
  5. Shape: Elongated rim, open front.
  6. Hinge: Self-sustaining.
  7. Hinge Material: Non-corroding metal.
  8. Seat Cover: Not required.
  9. Color: White.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before water-closet installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where water closets will be installed.

- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Water-Closet Installation:
1. Install level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
  2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.
  3. Install accessible water closets at mounting height for handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- B. Support Installation:
1. Install floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets attached to building floor substrate, onto waste-fitting seals; and attach to support.
- C. Install toilet seats on water closets.
- D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:
1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
  2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
  3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Joint Sealing:
1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
  2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
  3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at Flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

### **3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

NCDOT  
14391.00

COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

HAYWOOD REST AREA  
224213.13 - 4

END OF SECTION 22 42 13.13

SECTION 224213.16

COMMERCIAL URINALS

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Urinals.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for urinals.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

**1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: Maintenance requirements for waterless urinals to be included in manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 WALL-HUNG URINALS**

- A. Urinals UR-1: Wall hung, back outlet, washout, accessible, with flushometer valve.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Standard America.
    - b. Kohler Co.
    - c. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
    - d. TOTO USA, INC.
    - e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures. Equal to Z5798.207.00.
  - 2. Fixture:
    - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
    - b. Material: Vitreous china.
    - c. Type: Washout with extended shields.
    - d. Strainer or Trapway: Manufacturer's standard strainer with integral trap.
    - e. Water Consumption: 1/8 gpf.
    - f. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
    - g. Outlet Size and Location: NPS 2, back.
    - h. Color: White.
  - 3. Flushometer Valve:
    - a. High efficiency valve with manual handle actuation; included with urinal system.
    - b. Type: Diaphragm-type

- c. Standard: ASSE 1037.
  - d. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
  - e. Style: Exposed.
  - f. Water Consumption: 1/8 gpf.
  - g. Minimum Inlet: NPS 3/4.
  - h. Minimum Outlet: NPS 3/4.
  - i. ADA compliant with high back pressure vacuum breaker.
- 4. Waste Fitting:
  - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for coupling.
  - b. Size: NPS 2.
- 5. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type I, urinal carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include rectangular, steel uprights.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before urinal installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where urinals will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Urinal Installation:
  - 1. Install urinals level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
  - 2. Install wall-hung, back-outlet urinals onto waste fitting seals and attached to supports.
  - 3. Install accessible, wall-mounted urinals at mounting height for the handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- B. Support Installation:
  - 1. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible urinals.
- C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:
  - 1. Install flushometer-valve water-supply fitting on each supply to each urinal.
  - 2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
  - 3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible urinals with handle mounted on open side of compartment.
- D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:
  - 1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations.
  - 2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
  - 3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Joint Sealing:
  - 1. Seal joints between urinals and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
  - 2. Match sealant color to urinal color.
  - 3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

**3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Connect urinals with soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match urinals.
- B. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- C. Where installing piping adjacent to urinals, allow space for service and maintenance.

**3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Operate and adjust urinals and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning urinals, fittings, and controls.

**3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Clean urinals and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed urinals and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of urinals for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 42 13.16

SECTION 224216.13

COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Lavatories.
  - 2. Faucets.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for lavatories.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

**1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lavatories and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR LAVATORIES**

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61.
- B. Per new Federal Lead Free Law, any product designed for dispensing potable water meet both the NSF 61 and NSF 372 test standards via third-party testing and certification.

**2.2 VITREOUS-CHINA, COUNTERTOP LAVATORIES**

- A. Lavatory LAV-1: Vitreous china, countertop, self-rimming for toilet rooms
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures. Equal to Z5114
    - b. American Standard America.
    - c. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
    - d. Kohler Co.
    - e. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
  - 2. Fixture:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
    - b. Type: For countertop mounting, self-rimming.
    - c. Nominal Size: 20 by 17 inches.
    - d. Faucet-Hole Punching: 4" center faucet holes.



- e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
- f. Strainer: ADA grid strainer.
- g. Color: White.
- h. Mounting Material: Self-rimming drop in.
- 3. Faucet: LF-1.
- 4. Support: Countertop, concealed-arm lavatory carrier with escutcheons.

## **2.3 VITREOUS-CHINA, WALL-MOUNTED LAVATORIES**

- A. Lavatory LAV-2: Accessible height, Vitreous china, wall mounted, with back – for toilet rooms
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures. Equal to Z5344
    - b. American Standard America.
    - c. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC.
    - d. Kohler Co.
    - e. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
  - 2. Fixture:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
    - b. Type: For wall hanging.
    - c. Nominal Size: Oval, 20 by 18 inches.
    - d. Faucet-Hole Punching: 4" center faucet holes.
    - e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
    - f. Strainer: ADA grid strainer.
    - g. Color: White.
    - h. Mounting Material: Chair carrier.
  - 3. Faucet: LF-1.
  - 4. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier with escutcheons.
  - 5. Protective Insulation Shielding Guards, Per ADA requirements: Required

## **2.4 SOLID-BRASS, MANUALLY OPERATED FAUCETS**

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Per new Federal Lead Free Law, any product designed for dispensing potable water meet both the NSF 61 and NSF 372 test standards via third-party testing and certification.
- C. Lavatory Faucets LF-1 (for LAV-1 and LAV-2): Manual-type, single-temperature with lever handle operation, commercial, solid-brass valve.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures. Equal to Z81000-XL-3M
    - b. Chicago Faucets.
    - c. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
  - 2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
  - 3. General: Include cold-water indicator; coordinate faucet inlet with supply and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
  - 4. Body Type: Single hole.
  - 5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
  - 6. Finish: Polished chrome plate.

7. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 GPM aerator
8. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed.
9. Valve Handle(s): ADA compliant single lever handle.
10. Spout: Rigid type.
11. Spout Outlet: Aerator
12. Operation: Manual.

## **2.5 SUPPLY FITTINGS**

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Per new Federal Lead Free Law, any product designed for dispensing potable water meet both the NSF 61 and NSF 372 test standards via third-party testing and certification.
- C. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- D. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- E. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- F. Operation: Loose key.
- G. Risers:
  1. NPS 1/2.
  2. Chrome-plated, rigid-copper-pipe and brass straight or offset tailpieces or ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel, flexible hose riser.

## **2.6 WASTE FITTINGS**

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
  1. Size: NPS 1-1/2 by NPS 1-1/4.
  2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch-thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated, brass or steel wall flange.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before lavatory installation.
- B. Examine counters and walls for suitable conditions where lavatories will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install lavatories level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.

- C. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for people with disabilities or the elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- D. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Seal joints between lavatories, counters, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- F. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Operate and adjust lavatories and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatories, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

### **3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. After completing installation of lavatories, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean lavatories, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed lavatories and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of lavatories for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 42 16.13

SECTION 224216.16

COMMERCIAL SINKS

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Service Basins/Mop Receptor.
  2. Single bowl sink.
  3. Sink faucets.
  4. Laminar-flow, faucet-spout outlets.
  5. Supply fittings.
  6. Waste fittings.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for sinks.
  2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics and furnished specialties and accessories.

**1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For sinks to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SINKS**

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61.
- B. Per new Federal Lead Free Law, any product designed for dispensing potable water meet both the NSF 61 and NSF 372 test standards via third-party testing and certification.

**2.2 SERVICE BASINS**

- A. Service Basins/Mop Receptor MR-1: Terrazzo, floor mounted.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C. / Fiat – Equal to TSB-3003-MSG
    - b. Florestone ProductsCo., Inc.
    - c. Stern-Williams Co., Inc.
  2. Fixture:
    - a. Standard: IAPMO PS 99.
    - b. Shape: Rectangular.

- c. Nominal Size: 36 by 24 inches.
- d. Height: 12 inches.
- e. Tiling Flange: On two sides.
- f. Rim Guard: Stainless steel on all top surfaces.
- g. Color: Not applicable.
- h. Drain: Grid with NPS 3 outlet.
- 3. Mounting: On floor and flush to wall.
- 4. Faucet: Equal to Fiat 830-AA with integral supply check valves, wall mount with vacuum breaker, 3/4" hose thread, pail hook, adjustable wall brace and 8" center handles.
- 5. Accessories: Equal to Fiat 832-AA hose and hose bracket, 833-AA silicone sealant, 889CC wall mop bracket

## 2.3 SINKS

- A. Sinks SK-1: Kitchen, Single bowl, Stainless steel, counter mounted, single temperature swing spout faucet with lever handle.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Elkay Manufacturing Co. Equal to LR3122PD
    - b. Eagle Group.
    - c. Just Manufacturing.
  - 2. Fixture:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
    - b. Type: Ledge back.
    - c. Number of Compartments: One.
    - d. Faucet-Hole Punching: Four (4) holes on 4" centers.
    - e. Overall Dimensions: 31"x22"
    - f. Metal Thickness: 18 gauge
    - g. Compartment:
      - 1) Dimensions: 31"x22".
      - 2) Depth: 7-5/8"
      - 3) Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/2 ADA offset tailpiece and twist drain.
      - 4) Drain Location: Centered in compartment.
  - 3. Faucet: SF-1.
    - a. Number Required: One.
    - b. Mounting: On ledge.
  - 4. Supply Fittings:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
    - b. Supplies: Chrome-plated brass compression stop with inlet connection matching water-supply piping type and size.
      - 1) Operation: Loose key.
      - 2) Risers: NPS 1/2, chrome-plated, rigid-copper pipe or ASME A112.18.6, braided or corrugated stainless-steel flexible hose.
  - 5. Waste Fittings:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
    - b. Trap(s) - ADA offset:
      - 1) Size: NPS 1-1/2.
      - 2) Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch- thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated brass or steel wall flange.

6. Mounting: On counter with sealant.

## **2.4 SINK FAUCETS**

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet-spout materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Sink Faucets SF-1: Manual type, single-temperature, integral cast swing spout faucet with lever handle, needle valve and integral vacuum breaker
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Chicago Faucets.
    - b. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
    - c. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures. Equal to Z82300-XL-CP8-HS
  2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
  3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlet with supply and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
  4. Body Type: Three (3) holes on 4" centers.
  5. Body Material: Commercial, cast brass, with integral 10" cast swing spout
  6. Finish: Chrome plated.
  7. Handle(s): ADA compliant single lever handle.
  8. Mounting Type: Deck, concealed.
  9. Spout Type: Swing spout with hose and spray.
  10. Spout Outlet: Female laminar flow outlet 1.5 GPM.

## **2.5 SUPPLY FITTINGS**

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- E. Operation: Loose key.
- F. Risers:
  1. NPS 1/2
  2. Chrome-plated, rigid-copper pipe or ASME A112.18.6, braided or corrugated stainless-steel flexible hose.

## **2.6 WASTE FITTINGS**

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/2 offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
  1. Size: NPS 1-1/2.

2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch-thick brass tube to wall Insert trap type; and chrome-plated brass or steel wall flange.

## **2.7 GROUT**

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before sink installation.
- B. Examine walls, floors, and counters for suitable conditions where sinks will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.
- C. Install accessible wall-mounted sinks at handicapped/elderly mounting height according to ICC/ANSI A117.1-2009.
- D. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
- E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.
  1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- G. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- H. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

### **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Connect sinks with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

### **3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 42 16.16



SECTION 224716

PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes pressure water coolers and related components.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of pressure water cooler.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

**1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For pressure water coolers to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 PRESSURE WATER COOLERS**

- A. Pressure Water Coolers EWC-1: Wall mounted, wheelchair accessible.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Elkay Manufacturing Co. Equal to EZTLR8C
    - b. Halsey Taylor.
    - c. Haws Corporation.
    - d. Tri Palm International, LLC; Oasis Brand.
  - 2. Cabinet: Bi-level ADA compliant with two attached cabinets, vinyl-covered steel with stainless-steel top.
  - 3. Bubbler: One, with adjustable stream regulator, located on each cabinet deck.
  - 4. Control: Push bar.
  - 5. Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/4 tailpiece.
  - 6. Supply: NPS 3/8 with shutoff valve.
  - 7. Waste Fitting: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, NPS 1-1/4 brass P-trap.
  - 8. Cooling System: Electric, with hermetically sealed compressor, cooling coil, air-cooled condensing unit, corrosion-resistant tubing, refrigerant, corrosion-resistant-metal storage tank, and adjustable thermostat.
    - a. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 9. Capacities and Characteristics:
    - a. Cooled Water: 8 gph.

- b. Cooled-Water Temperature: 50 deg F.
  - c. Electrical Characteristics:
    - 1) Volts: 120-V ac.
    - 2) Phase: Single.
    - 3) Hertz: 60.
- 10. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type I water-cooler carrier.
- B. Per new Federal Lead Free Law, any product designed for dispensing potable water meet both the NSF 61 and NSF 372 test standards via third-party testing and certification.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.
- C. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball, gate, or globe valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.
- E. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- F. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Install ball, gate, or globe shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

**3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.
- B. Adjust pressure water-cooler temperature settings.

**3.5 CLEANING**

- A. After installing fixture, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures.
- D. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 47 16

SECTION 230002

MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 WORK INCLUDED**

- A. Work Included in This Section: Materials, equipment, fabrication, installation, and tests in conformity with applicable codes and authorities having jurisdiction for the following:
1. Motors.
  2. Factory-wired equipment (FWE).
  3. Factory-wired control panels (FWCP).
  4. Motor controllers where provided as part of mechanical equipment.
  5. Motor controllers where supplied under Division 23 - Mechanical Work.
  6. Disconnects and safety switches for mechanical equipment.
  7. Fuses for equipment provided, and starters and disconnect switches.

**1.2 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE**

- A. Division 23 - HVAC Instrumentation and Controls, Motors.
- B. Division 26 - Electrical: Installation and Power Wiring of Motor Controllers.

**1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. Published specifications standards, tests, or recommended methods of trade, industry or governmental organization as apply to work in this section where cited below:
1. ANSI - American National Standards Institute.
  2. NEMA - National Electrical Manufacturer's Association.
  3. IEEE - Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. All equipment and accessories to be the product of a manufacturer regularly engaged in its manufacture.
- B. Supply all equipment and accessories new and free from defects.
- C. Supply all equipment and accessories in compliance with the applicable standards listed in Article 1.03 of this Section and with all applicable National, State and local codes.
- D. All items of a given-type shall be the products of the same manufacturer.

**1.5 DIVISION OF WORK**

- A. This section delineates the work required to be performed by Contractors under Divisions 23 and 26.

**1.6 WORK REQUIRED UNDER DIVISION 23**

- A. Furnish motors, manual and combination starters, pushbutton devices, contactors, disconnect switches, electric thermostats, low voltage transformers, Emergency Break Glass Stations and other electrical devices required for equipment furnished.

- B. Install all items in piping and ductwork such as control valves, aquastats, ductstats, etc.
- C. All external wiring of equipment, all temperature control wiring, external wiring of control circuits of magnetic starters, interlocking wiring, boiler wiring, and mounting of control devices, etc., shall be included under Division 23. All external wiring shall be in conduit. (Unless specifically shown to be provided by the Electrical Contractor)
- D. The Electrical Contractor, under Division 26, shall furnish and install all power wiring and conduit to junction box, to disconnect switch on unit, to motor starters and contactors, and between motor starters and contactors to motor or other load. Electrical Contractor shall be responsible for proper direction of rotation for all three-phase equipment. The Electrical Contractor shall mount all starters, disconnects.
- E. Wiring required under Division 23 shall comply with the specifications as described in Division 26.
- F. Provide disconnect switches or safety switches for equipment. (Unless specifically shown to be provided by the Electrical Contractor, starters and disconnects shown on the electrical drawings are for installation and do not require the Electrical Contractor to furnish units)

## **1.7 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Shop Drawings: Complete wiring diagrams of all power and control connections (standard diagrams will not be accepted). Deliver 2 copies of approved wiring diagrams to the Electric Contractor for installation of wiring and connections required under the Electric Contract.
- B. Product Data for Motor Controllers and Disconnect Switches: Manufacturer's catalog sheets, specifications and installation instructions. Submit enclosure type coordinated for service and location. Submit simultaneously with product data required for motors. Identify each controller for use with corresponding motor. Submit shop drawings and product data in accordance with project requirements.
- C. All warranties shall be delivered as part of the close-out submission.
- D. A receipt shall be delivered as part of the close-out submission that states all required spare parts have been delivered to the owner. This receipt must be signed and dated by the owner.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Motor Controllers and Disconnects
  - 1. Square D
  - 2. Allen-Bradley
  - 3. General Electric
  - 4. Cutler-Hammer

### **2.2 MOTOR CONTROLLERS**

- A. General: All starters shall be correctly sized to motor connected thereto. Provide one (1) additional auxiliary contact over and above that normally furnished, at least two (2) required. Provide overload heaters for each phase. Coordinate starters and controllers with the temperature control Contractor and sequence of operations.
- B. Minimum Size: The minimum allowable size of single or three phase magnetic motor controller is NEMA size 0.

- C. Enclosures: Unless otherwise indicated furnish NEMA 1 enclosures, except where installed outdoors furnish NEMA 3R enclosures.
- D. Control Power: Furnish control power transformer (maximum control voltage 120 volts) mounted within each magnetic motor controller enclosure.
- E. Local Control Devices: Where indicated, furnish standard duty push buttons or 3-position hand-off-auto selector switch mounted in the controller enclosure.
- F. Pilot Lights: Furnish pilot lights of the neon lamp type mounted in the controller enclosure, green for running, red for not running.
- G. Motor Controller Types:
  - 1. Type A (Full Voltage, Manual, Non-Magnetic):
    - a. Allen-Bradley Co. Bulletin 609 (or Bulletin 600 - single phase, 1 HP or less only).
    - b. General Electric Co. CR-1062 (or CR-101 - single phase, 1 HP or less only).
    - c. Square D Co. Class 2510, Type M (or Class 2510, Type F - single phase, 1 HP or less only).
    - d. Cutler-Hammer. B100 (or MS - single phase, 1 HP or less only).
  - 2. Type A2 (2 Speed, 2 Winding, Full Voltage, Manual, Non-Magnetic):
    - a. Allen-Bradley Co. Bulletin 609TS (or Bulletin 600 - single phase, 1 HP or less only).
    - b. General Electric Co. CR-1062 (or CR-101 - single phase, 1 HP or less only).
    - c. Square D Co. Class 2512, Type M (or Class 2512, Type F - single phase, 1 HP or less only).
  - 3. Type B (Full Voltage Magnetic):
    - a. Allen-Bradley Co. Bulletin 709.
    - b. General Electric Co. CR-206.
    - c. Square D Co. Class 8536.
    - d. Cutler-Hammer. ECN05.
  - 4. Type B-COM (Combination Full Voltage Magnetic/Safety Switch):
    - a. Allen-Bradley Co. Bulletin 712.
    - b. General Electric Co. CR-208.
    - c. Square D Co. Class 8538.
    - d. Cutler-Hammer. ECN16.
  - 5. Type B2 (2 Speed, 2 Winding, Full Voltage, Magnetic):
    - a. Allen-Bradley Co. Bulletin 715.
    - b. General Electric Co. CR209.
    - c. Square D Co. Class 8810.
    - d. Cutler-Hammer. ECN33.
  - 6. Type C (Automatic, Reduced Voltage, Magnetic):
    - a. Allen-Bradley Co. Bulletin 746.
    - b. General Electric Co. CR-231.
    - c. Square D Co. Class 8606.
    - d. Cutler-Hammer. ECA42.
  - 7. Type C-COM (Combination Automatic, Reduced Voltage, Magnetic/ Safety Switch):
    - a. Allen-Bradley Co. Bulletin 746C.
    - b. Square D Co. Class 8606.
    - c. Cutler-Hammer. ECA43.
  - 8. Type D (Part Winding, Magnetic):
    - a. Allen-Bradley Co. Bulletin 736.
    - b. General Electric Co. CR-230.

- c. Square D Co. Class 8640.
- d. Cutler-Hammer. ECA45.

### **2.3 REMOTE PUSH BUTTON STATIONS**

- A. Start-Stop with pilot light in NEMA 1 enclosure unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Allen-Bradley Co. Bulletin 800S.
  - 2. General Electric Co. CR-2943.
  - 3. Square D Co. Class 9001.
  - 4. Cutler-Hammer. Class 10250.

### **2.4 SAFETY SWITCHES**

- A. General Electric Co. Type TH; Square D Co. Heavy Duty Series; Cutler-Hammer HD Series; with the following:
  - 1. Fused or unfused as required.
  - 2. Fused switches equipped with fuseholders to accept only the fuses specified in Section 16181 (U.L. Class RK-1, RK-5, L).
  - 3. NEMA 1 enclosure unless otherwise indicated on drawing or required. 3R for devices installed outdoors.
  - 4. Switch rated 240V for 120V, 208V, 240V, circuits; 600 V for 277V, 480V circuits.
  - 5. Switch rated 600V for 277V, 480V circuits.
  - 6. Solid neutral bus when neutral or grounding conductor is included with circuit.
  - 7. Current rating and number of poles as indicated on drawings.

### **2.5 NAMEPLATES**

- A. Phenolic Type: Standard phenolic nameplates with 3/8" minimum size lettering engraved thereon.
- B. Embossed Aluminum: Standard stamped or embossed aluminum tags: Tech Products, Inc., Seton Name Plate Corp.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 GENERAL**

- A. Equipment shall be connected in a neat and skillful manner. Equipment deliver with terminal boxes that are inadequate shall be equipped with special boxes that suit the conditions by the Mechanical Contractor furnishing the equipment.
- B. In general, rigid conduit or tubing shall be used, but equipment that requires movement or that would transmit vibration to conduit shall be wired with flexible (liquid tight) steel conduit not over 18" long.
- C. All equipment shall be grounded with a green-covered ground wire run inside the conduit and connected to equipment frame on one end and to grounding system on the other end.
- D. All electrical work required in the Mechanical Contract shall conform to the applicable requirements of Division 26 of these Specifications.
- E. The Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Contractor shall assign all Electrical Work required under his contract to the approved Automatic Temperature Control Contractor, who shall perform this work with qualified electricians employed by that Contractor.

- F. The Mechanical Contractors shall cooperate with the Contractor for Electrical Work in making all necessary tests and in receiving, storing, and setting all motor-driven equipment, electrical devices, and controls furnished and/or installed under these contracts.
- G. Install heaters correlated with full load current of motors provided.
- H. Set overload devices to suit motors provided.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Control Wiring:
  - 1. Provide control wiring and connections.
  - 2. Where control circuit interlocking is required between individually mounted motor controllers, provide a single pole on-off switch in a threaded type box mounted adjacent to motor safety switches which are remote from the control transformer (to enable interlock circuit to be opened when the motor safety switch is opened).
- B. Nameplates: Rivet or bolt the nameplate on the cover of NEMA 1 enclosures. Rivet or bolt and gasket the nameplate on cover of NEMA 3R or NEMA 12 enclosures. Provide phenolic or embossed aluminum nameplates as follows:
  - 1. On each remote control station, indicating motor controlled.
  - 2. On each interlock circuit switch, indicating purpose of switch.

### **3.3 TYPES OF MOTOR CONTROLLERS REQUIRED FOR SINGLE SPEED MOTORS (SYSTEMS UNDER 250 VOLTS)**

- A. Single Phase Motors Less than 5 HP - Manually Operated: Type A.
- B. Single Phase Motors Less than 1/2 HP - Automatically Operated: Type A.
- C. Single Phase Motors 1/2 to 5 HP - Automatically Operated: Type B.
- D. Three Phase Squirrel Cage Motors Less than 7-1/2 HP: Type B (B-COM when indicated on drawings).
- E. Three Phase Squirrel Cage Motors 7-1/2 HP and Larger: Type C (C-COM when indicated on drawings).
- F. Three Phase Hermetically Sealed Compressor Motors Less than 7-1/2 HP: Type B.
- G. Three Phase Hermetically Sealed Compressor Motors 7-1/2 HP and Larger: Type D.

### **3.4 TYPES OF MOTOR CONTROLLERS REQUIRED FOR SINGLE SPEED MOTORS (277/480 VOLT SYSTEM)**

- A. Single Phase Motors Less than 5 HP - Manually Operated: Type A.
- B. Single Phase Motors Less than 1 HP - Automatically Operated: Type A.
- C. Single Phase Motors 1 to 5 HP - Automatically Operated: Type B.
- D. Three Phase Squirrel Cage Motors Less than 15 HP: Type B (B-COM when indicated on drawings).
- E. Three Phase Squirrel Cage Motors 15 HP and Larger: Type C (C-COM when indicated on drawings).
- F. Three Phase Hermetically Sealed Compressor Motors Less than 15 HP: Type B.
- G. Three Phase Hermetically Sealed Compressor Motors 15 HP and Larger: Type D.



**3.5 TYPES OF MOTOR CONTROLLERS REQUIRED FOR 2 SPEED MOTORS (SYSTEMS UNDER 250 VOLTS)**

- A. Single Phase Motors Less than 5 HP - Manually Operated: Type A2.
- B. Single Phase Motors Less than 1/2 HP - Automatically Operated: Type A2.
- C. Single Phase Motors 1/2 to 5 HP - Automatically Operated: Type B2.
- D. Three Phase Squirrel Cage Motors Less than 7-1/2 HP: Type B2.

**3.6 TYPES OF MOTOR CONTROLLERS REQUIRED FOR 2 SPEED MOTORS (277/480 VOLT SYSTEM)**

- A. Single Phase Motors Less than 5 HP - Manually Operated: Type A2.
- B. Single Phase Motors Less than 1 HP - Automatically Operated: Type A2.
- C. Single Phase Motors 1 to 5 HP - Automatically Operated: Type B2.
- D. Three Phase Squirrel Cage Motors Less than 15 HP: Type B2.

**3.7 DISCONNECTS**

- A. Motor Controllers: Provide safety switch for all motor controllers. Provide combination type starter-disconnect unless otherwise noted on drawings.
- B. Motors: Provide a disconnect switch for all motors. Provide a separate safety switch for motors which are not within sight of the starter.
- C. Provide safety switches for all factory packaged equipment.
- D. Provide NEMA 3R safety switch for all rooftop and outdoor equipment.
- E. Provide unit mounted disconnect switches for all equipment such as unit heaters, fans, unit ventilators, incremental units, etc

END OF SECTION 23 0002

SECTION 230513

COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

**1.3 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

**2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS**

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

**2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS**

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Premium energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
  - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
  - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

## **2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
  - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

## **2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS**

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split phase.
  - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
  - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 23 05 13

SECTION 230517

SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Sleeves.
  2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
  3. Sleeve-seal systems.
  4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
  5. Grout.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 SLEEVES**

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

**2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
  2. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
- B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

## **2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
  - 3. Metraflex Company (The).
  - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 5. Proco Products, Inc.
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
  - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## **2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Presealed Systems.
- B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

## **2.5 GROUT**

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## **3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION**

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
  - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
  - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.

3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### **3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
  1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
  4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.

### **3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION**

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### **3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

### **3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE**

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
  2. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
4. Interior Partitions:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.

END OF SECTION 23 05 17



SECTION 230529

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
  2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
  4. Metal framing systems.
  5. Fiberglass strut systems.
  6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  7. Fastener systems.
  8. Pipe stands.
  9. Equipment supports.
- B. Related Sections:
1. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

**1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
  3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment.

**1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  2. Metal framing systems.

3. Pipe stands.
  4. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
  2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

## **1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Welding certificates.

## **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

# **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

## **2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
  3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
  4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Copper Pipe Hangers:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
  2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

## **2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS**

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

## **2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS**

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
    - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
    - c. Flex-Strut Inc.
    - d. GS Metals Corp.
    - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.

- f. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
    - g. Wesanco, Inc.
  - 2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
  - 3. Standard: MFMA-4.
  - 4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
  - 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
  - 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
  - 7. Metallic Coating: Galvanized.
  - 8. Paint Coating: Epoxy.
- B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International; a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products Inc.
    - b. Empire Industries, Inc.
    - c. ERICO International Corporation.
    - d. Haydon Corporation; H-Strut Division.
    - e. NIBCO INC.
    - f. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.
    - g. PHS Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
  - 3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.
  - 4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
  - 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
  - 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
  - 7. Coating: Paint.

## **2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
  - 2. Clement Support Services.
  - 3. ERICO International Corporation.
  - 4. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
  - 5. PHS Industries, Inc.
  - 6. Pipe Shields, Inc.; a subsidiary of Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
  - 7. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
  - 8. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - 9. Value Engineered Products, Inc.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping:
  - 1. ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
  - 2. ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping:

1. Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.
  2. ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.
  3. ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.
- D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## **2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS**

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened Portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless-steel anchors, for use in hardened Portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

## **2.6 PIPE STANDS**

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  2. Base: Plastic.
  3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
  4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
  3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
  4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
  5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
- F. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

## **2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS**

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

## **2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Pipe Stand Installation:
1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
- G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

- I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- N. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
  - 5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
  - 6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### **3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS**

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### **3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS**

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers equipment supports.

- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### **3.5 PAINTING**

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

### **3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE**

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers, and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.

2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
  3. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
  4. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  5. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
  6. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  7. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  8. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
  9. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
  10. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  11. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
  12. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
  13. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  14. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  15. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  16. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  17. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  18. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  19. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.



2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.

4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
  5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
  6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
  7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
  8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
    - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
    - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
    - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- O. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 23 05 29

SECTION 230553

IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Duct labels.
  - 5. Stencils.
  - 6. Valve tags.
  - 7. Warning tags.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- C. Valve numbering scheme.
- D. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

**1.4 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS**

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: Aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  - 3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
  1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  2. Letter Color: White.
  3. Background Color: Black.
  4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
  5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## **2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS**

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Red.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## **2.3 PIPE LABELS**

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

## **2.4 DUCT LABELS**

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Duct Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Self-Adhesive Duct Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- C. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, duct size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

## **2.5 STENCILS**

- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; minimum letter height of 1-1/4 inches for ducts; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
  - 1. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
  - 3. Identification Paint: Exterior, acrylic enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

## **2.6 VALVE TAGS**

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
  - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
  - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## **2.7 WARNING TAGS**

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
  - 1. Size: Approximately 4 by 7 inches.
  - 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
  - 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
  - 4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### **3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION**

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### **3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION**

- A. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles, complying with ASME A13.1, on each piping system.
  - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- B. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
  - 1. Per Owner's standards.

### **3.4 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION**

- A. Install self-adhesive duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:

1. Per Owner's standards.
  2. ASME A13.1 Colors and Designs: For hazardous material exhaust.
- B. Stenciled Duct Label Option: Stenciled labels, showing service and flow direction, may be provided instead of plastic-laminated duct labels, at Installer's option, if lettering larger than 1 inch high is needed for proper identification because of distance from normal location of required identification.
- C. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

### **3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION**

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. All services: 1-1/2 inches round.

### **3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION**

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 23 05 53

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.



SECTION 230593

TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
    - a. Constant-volume air systems.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: Within 45 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB contractor and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Certified TAB reports.
- C. Sample report forms.
- D. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
  - 1. Instrument type and make.
  - 2. Serial number.
  - 3. Application.
  - 4. Dates of use.
  - 5. Dates of calibration.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC or NEBB.
  - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by AABC or NEBB.
  - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB contractor and who is certified by AABC or NEBB as a TAB technician.
- B. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:
  - 1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
  - 2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.
- C. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by Engineer.

- D. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."
- E. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- F. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

## **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

## **1.7 COORDINATION**

- A. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air and water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)**

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they meet the leakage class of connected ducts as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" and are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
  - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
  - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.

- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- L. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- M. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:
  - 1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
  - 2. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
  - 3. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
  - 4. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
  - 5. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
  - 6. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
  - 7. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

### **3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING**

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance", ASHRAE 111, or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and in this Section.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
  - 2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
  - 3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

### **3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS**

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- D. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- E. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- F. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- G. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- H. Check for airflow blockages.
- I. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- J. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- K. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

### **3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS**

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure total airflow.
    - a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
  - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
    - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
    - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
  - 3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
    - a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
  - 4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
  - 5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
  - 6. Obtain approval from Engineer for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.

7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
  1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
    - a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
  2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
  3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
- C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
  1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
- D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
  1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
  2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

### **3.6 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS**

- A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
  1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
  2. Motor horsepower rating.
  3. Motor rpm.
  4. Efficiency rating.
  5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
  6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
  7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

### **3.7 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS**

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Record compressor data.

### **3.8 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS**

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:

1. Nameplate data.
  2. Airflow.
  3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
  4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load and at each incremental stage.
  5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
  6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.
- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:
1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  3. Airflow.
  4. Air pressure drop.
  5. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

### **3.9 TOLERANCES**

- A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.

### **3.10 REPORTING**

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare biweekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

### **3.11 FINAL REPORT**

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
1. Fan curves.
  2. Manufacturers' test data.
  3. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
  4. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
1. Title page.
  2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
  3. Project name.
  4. Project location.
  5. Architect's name and address.
  6. Engineer's name and address.

7. Contractor's name and address.
  8. Report date.
  9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
  10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report.  
Number each page in the report.
  11. Summary of contents including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
  14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
  15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
    - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
  2. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
  3. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
  4. Terminal units.
  5. Balancing stations.
  6. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and unit size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Unit arrangement and class.
    - g. Discharge arrangement.
    - h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
    - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
    - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
  2. Motor Data:
    - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    - b. Horsepower and rpm.
    - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.

- f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
  - 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total air flow rate in cfm.
    - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    - c. Fan rpm.
    - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
    - j. Return airflow in cfm.
    - k. Outdoor-air damper position.
    - l. Return-air damper position.
    - m. Vortex damper position.
- F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:
  - 1. Coil Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Coil type.
    - d. Number of rows.
    - e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
    - f. Make and model number.
    - g. Face area in sq. ft.
    - h. Tube size in NPS.
    - i. Tube and fin materials.
    - j. Circuiting arrangement.
  - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Air flow rate in cfm.
    - b. Average face velocity in fpm.
    - c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
    - d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - h. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
    - i. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
    - j. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
- G. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:
  - 1. Unit Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Coil identification.
    - d. Capacity in Btu/h.
    - e. Number of stages.
    - f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
    - g. Rated amperage.
    - h. Air flow rate in cfm.
    - i. Face area in sq. ft..



- j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.
- 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
  - a. Heat output in Btu/h.
  - b. Air flow rate in cfm.
  - c. Air velocity in fpm.
  - d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
  - e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
  - f. Voltage at each connection.
  - g. Amperage for each phase.
- H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
  - 1. Fan Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Arrangement and class.
    - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
  - 2. Motor Data:
    - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    - b. Horsepower and rpm.
    - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
    - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
  - 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    - c. Fan rpm.
    - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
- I. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
  - 1. Report Data:
    - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
    - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Duct size in inches.
    - f. Duct area in sq. ft.
    - g. Indicated air flow rate in cfm.
    - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
    - i. Actual air flow rate in cfm.
    - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
    - k. Barometric pressure in psig.
- J. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:
  - 1. Unit Data:

- a. System and air-handling unit identification.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Apparatus used for test.
    - d. Area served.
    - e. Make.
    - f. Number from system diagram.
    - g. Type and model number.
    - h. Size.
    - i. Effective area in sq. ft.
  - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Air flow rate in cfm.
    - b. Air velocity in fpm.
    - c. Preliminary air flow rate as needed in cfm.
    - d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
    - e. Final air flow rate in cfm.
    - f. Final velocity in fpm.
    - g. Space temperature in deg F.
- K. Instrument Calibration Reports:
- 1. Report Data:
    - a. Instrument type and make.
    - b. Serial number.
    - c. Application.
    - d. Dates of use.
    - e. Dates of calibration.

### 3.12 INSPECTIONS

- A. Initial Inspection:
- 1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the final report.
  - 2. Check the following for each system:
    - a. Measure airflow of at least 10 percent of air outlets.
    - b. Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
    - c. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
    - d. Note deviations from the Contract Documents in the final report.
- B. Final Inspection:
- 1. After initial inspection is complete and documentation by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by Engineer.
  - 2. Engineer shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
  - 3. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."

4. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- C. TAB Work will be considered defective if it does not pass final inspections. If TAB Work fails, proceed as follows:
  1. Recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
  2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB contractor to complete TAB Work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB contractor's final payment.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.13 ADDITIONAL TESTS**

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 23 05 93

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 230713

DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
  3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
  4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
  5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
  6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
  3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

## **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## **1.7 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 23 0529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

## **1.8 SCHEDULING**

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

# **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

## **2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS**

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," and "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
    - e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide

insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
  - b. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.
  - c. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
  - d. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
  - e. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Board.
  - f. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.

## **2.2 ADHESIVES**

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## **2.3 MASTICS**

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
  1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
    - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.;
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 501.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
    - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
    - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
  3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
  4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.5 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
    - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
    - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
  2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.



3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  5. Color: Aluminum.
  6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  4. Color: White.
  5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## **2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS**

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
  4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
  5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

## **2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS**

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. Metal Jacket:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
    - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
    - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
  2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
    - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
    - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

## **2.8 TAPES**

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.

- d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
    - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
    - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
  2. Width: 2 inches.
  3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 5 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.9 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
1. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing or closed seal.
  2. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.
- B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
      - 2) GEMCO; CD.
      - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; CD.
      - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; TPA, TPC, and TPS.

2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CHP-1.
    - 2) GEMCO; Cupped Head Weld Pin.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Cupped Head.
    - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; CHP.
3. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick, aluminum sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
    - 2) GEMCO; R-150.
    - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
    - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.
  - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
4. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

## **2.10 CORNER ANGLES**

- A. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.
- B. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

### **3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.

- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
1. Comply with requirements in Section
  2. 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.

- b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not over compress insulation during installation.
    - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
    - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  - 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
  - 5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
  - 6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  - 7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
- 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  - 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  - 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not over compress insulation during installation.

- e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
  - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
  - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

### **3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION**

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
  1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
  2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
  3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
  1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
  2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
  3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
  5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

### **3.7 FINISHES**

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
  - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
    - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### **3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- B. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### **3.9 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL**

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
  - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
  - 5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
  - 6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
  - 7. Indoor, concealed, back of supply and return grilles.
- B. Items Not Insulated:
  - 1. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, with exception of outdoor, exposed supply and return ductwork which requires external insulation and internal duct liner.
  - 2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
  - 3. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
  - 4. Flexible connectors.
  - 5. Vibration-control devices.
  - 6. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.
  - 7. Double-wall insulated ductwork.

### **3.10 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE**

- A. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:



1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- C. Concealed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- D. Concealed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- E. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- F. Concealed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- G. Concealed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- H. Concealed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior shall be one of the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- I. Concealed, return-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- J. Concealed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- K. Concealed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- L. Concealed, exhaust-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- M. Concealed, back of supply and return grilles shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- N. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- O. Exposed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- P. Exposed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- Q. Exposed, round and flat-oval, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- R. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation located in mechanical equipment rooms shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- S. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- T. Exposed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- U. Exposed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

- V. Exposed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- W. Exposed, return-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- X. Exposed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- Y. Exposed, exhaust-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

END OF SECTION 23 07 13

SECTION 230719

HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:
  - 1. Condensate drain piping, indoors.
  - 2. Refrigerant suction, hot-gas piping and heat-recovery piping, indoors and outdoors.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

**1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

**1.6 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

## **1.7 SCHEDULING**

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS**

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
    - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
    - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.

### **2.2 ADHESIVES**

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aero seal.
    - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
    - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
  - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

### **2.3 MASTICS**

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
  - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 501.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
    - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
    - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
    - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
  3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
  4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Jacket:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
    - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
    - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
  2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
    - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
    - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    - c. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
    - d. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
      - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
      - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
      - 3) Tee covers.
      - 4) Flange and union covers.
      - 5) End caps.
      - 6) Beveled collars.
      - 7) Valve covers.
      - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

## 2.6 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
    - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.

2. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
  3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
  1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
  2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

#### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - 1. Vibration-control devices.
  - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
  - 4. Manholes.
  - 5. Handholes.
  - 6. Cleanouts.



### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- C. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- D. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
  - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  - 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  - 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  - 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating

- cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
  3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
  5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### **3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION**

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
  2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
  2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### **3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION**

- A. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

### **3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Tests and Inspections:
1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- B. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### **3.9 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL**

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
1. Underground piping.
  2. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

### **3.10 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE**

- A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.
    - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
    - c. Vapor Barrier: Required
- B. Refrigerant Suction, Hot-Gas, and Heat Recovery Piping:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1-1/2 inch thick.
    - b. Vapor Barrier: Required.
- C. Refrigerant Suction, Hot-Gas, and Heat Recovery Flexible Tubing:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1-1/2 inch thick.
    - b. Vapor Barrier: Required.

### **3.11 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE**

- A. Refrigerant Suction, Hot-Gas, and Heat Recovery Piping:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction, Hot-Gas, and Heat Recovery Flexible Tubing:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.

### **3.12 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE**

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. Refrigerant Piping, Exposed:
  - 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.032 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 23 07 19

SECTION 232113

HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:
1. Condensate-drain piping.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
1. Plastic pipe and fittings with solvent cement.
  2. RTRP and RTRF with adhesive.
  3. Pressure-seal fittings.
  4. Chemical treatment.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal:
1. Design calculations and detailed fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors and alignment guides, hangers and supports for multiple pipes, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure.
  2. Locations of pipe anchors and alignment guides and expansion joints and loops.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Suspended ceiling components.
  2. Other building services.
  3. Structural members.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:
1. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F

## **2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L
- B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K.
- C. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.
- D. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

## **2.3 JOINING MATERIALS**

- A. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

## **2.4 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS**

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
    - b. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    - c. Central Plastics Company.
    - d. Hart Industries International, Inc.
    - e. Jomar International Ltd.
    - f. Matco-Norca.
    - g. Watts Regulator Co.
    - h. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 250 psig
    - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Matco-Norca.
    - d. Watts Regulator Co.
    - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
    - c. Pressure Rating 300 psig
    - d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.

- b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Central Plastics Company.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 300 psig
    - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
    - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
    - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E. Dielectric Nipples:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Elster Perfection.
    - b. Victaulic Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
    - b. Electroplated steel or ductile iron nipple, complying with ASTM F 1545.
    - c. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 230 deg F.
    - d. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
    - e. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type DWV, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- F. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- H. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.

- K. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- L. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- M. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- N. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### **3.3 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION**

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.

### **3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hanger, support, and anchor devices. Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
  - 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
  - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  - 5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  - 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 7. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
- D. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 8-foot intervals between floors.

### **3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.



- D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

### **3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS**

- A. Sizes for condensate piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.

END OF SECTION 23 21 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 232300

REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

**1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-134a:
1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 115 psig.
  2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 225 psig.
  3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 225 psig.
- B. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-407C:
1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 230 psig.
  2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 380 psig.
  3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 380 psig.
- C. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
  2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
  3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
1. Thermostatic expansion valves.
  2. Solenoid valves.
  3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
  4. Hot-gas reheat valves.
  5. Filter dryers.
  6. Strainers.
  7. Pressure-regulating valves.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes, flow capacities, valve arrangements and locations, slopes of horizontal runs, oil traps, double risers, wall and floor penetrations, and equipment connection details. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot.
  2. Refrigerant piping indicated on Drawings is schematic only. Size piping and design actual piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between

compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.

### **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control test reports.

### **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

### **1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

### **1.8 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.
- F. Flexible Connectors:
  - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
  - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
  - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
  - 4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
  - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

### **2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; Type, Grade, and wall thickness as selected in Part 3 piping applications articles.
- B. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, for welded joints.

- C. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, steel, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets, bevel-welded end connection, and raised face.
- D. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- E. Flanged Unions:
  - 1. Body: Forged-steel flanges for NPS 1 to NPS 1-1/2 and ductile iron for NPS 2 to NPS 3. Apply rust-resistant finish at factory.
  - 2. Gasket: Fiber asbestos free.
  - 3. Fasteners: Four plated-steel bolts, with silicon bronze nuts. Apply rust-resistant finish at factory.
  - 4. End Connections: Brass tailpiece adapters for solder-end connections to copper tubing.
  - 5. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
  - 6. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 400 psig.
  - 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 330 deg F.
- F. Flexible Connectors:
  - 1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, stainless-steel-wire-reinforced protective jacket
  - 2. End Connections:
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: With threaded-end connections.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: With flanged-end connections.
  - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
  - 4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
  - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

## 2.3 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:
  - 1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
  - 2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
  - 3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
  - 4. Seat: Nylon.
  - 5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
  - 6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  - 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- B. Packed-Angle Valves:
  - 1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
  - 2. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
  - 3. Operator: Rising stem.
  - 4. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
  - 5. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
  - 6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
  - 7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  - 8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- C. Check Valves:
  - 1. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
  - 2. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.

3. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
  4. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
  5. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
  6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
  7. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
  8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- D. Service Valves:
1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
  2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
  3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  4. End Connections: Copper spring.
  5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
- E. Solenoid Valves: Comply with ARI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
  2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
  3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  4. End Connections: Threaded.
  5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 24-V ac coil.
  6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
  7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
  8. Manual operator.
- F. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
  2. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
  3. Seat Disc: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  4. End Connections: Threaded.
  5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
  6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- G. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with ARI 750.
1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
  2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
  3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
  4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
  5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F.
  6. Superheat: Adjustable.
  7. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
  8. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
  9. Working Pressure Rating: 450 psig.
- H. Hot-Gas Bypass Valves: Comply with UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Ductile iron or steel.
  2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
  3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
  4. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
  5. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
  6. Equalizer: Internal.

7. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 24-V ac coil.
  8. End Connections: Socket.
  9. Throttling Range: Maximum 5 psig.
  10. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- I. Straight-Type Strainers:
1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
  2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
  3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
  4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- J. Angle-Type Strainers:
1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
  2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
  3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
  4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
  5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- K. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:
1. Body: Forged brass.
  2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
  3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in ppm.
  4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
  5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
  6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- L. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.
1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
  2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
  3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina or charcoal.
  4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
  5. End Connections: Socket.
  6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
  7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
  8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- M. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.
1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
  2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
  3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina or charcoal.
  4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
  5. End Connections: Socket.
  6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.

7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
  8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- N. Receivers: Comply with ARI 495.
1. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
  2. Comply with UL 207; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
  3. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
  4. Tappings: Inlet, outlet, liquid level indicator, and safety relief valve.
  5. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
  6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- O. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with ARI 495.
1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
  2. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
  3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
  4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

## **2.4 REFRIGERANTS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Atofina Chemicals, Inc.
  2. DuPont Company; Fluorochemicals Div.
  3. Honeywell, Inc.; Genetron Refrigerants.
  4. INEOS Fluor Americas LLC.
- B. ASHRAE 34, R-134a: Tetrafluoroethane.
- C. ASHRAE 34, R-407C: Difluoromethane/Pentafluoroethane/1,1,1,2-Tetrafluoroethane.
- D. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS**

- A. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
- B. Suction Lines NPS 2 to NPS 4 for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
- C. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type L, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

### **3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS**

- A. Install diaphragm packless or packed-angle valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.
- B. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
- C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.



- D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless or packed-angle valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.
- E. Install a full-sized, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
- F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
- G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
  - 1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
  - 2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
  - 3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- H. Install safety relief valves where required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
- I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for device being protected:
  - 1. Solenoid valves.
  - 2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
  - 3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
  - 4. Compressor.
- K. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve, and in the suction line at the compressor.
- L. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.
- M. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

### **3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION**

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- L. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- M. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- N. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
  - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
  - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
  - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
  - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- O. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- P. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- Q. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

### **3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
  - 1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
  - 2. Use Type BAg, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

### **3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Hanger, support, and anchor products are specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
  - 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.

3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  7. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  8. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
- D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
1. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  2. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  3. NPS 3: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  4. NPS 4: Maximum span, 14 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
- E. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

### **3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
  2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
  3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
    - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
    - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
    - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

### **3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING**

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
  2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
  3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
  4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

### **3.8 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
  - 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
  - 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
  - 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
  - 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
  - 5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 23 23 00

SECTION 233113

METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
  2. Single-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
  3. Sheet metal materials.
  4. Sealants and gaskets.
  5. Hangers and supports.
- B. Related Sections:
1. Section 23 0593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
  2. Section 23 3300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

**1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct and seismic restraints shall withstand the effects of gravity and seismic loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and ASCE/SEI 7.
1. Seismic Hazard Level A: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.48.
  2. Seismic Hazard Level B: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.30.
  3. Seismic Hazard Level C: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.15.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
1. Sealants and gaskets.
  2. Seismic-restraint devices.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
  2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
  3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
  4. Elevation of top of ducts.
  5. Fittings.
  6. Reinforcement and spacing.
  7. Seam and joint construction.
  8. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.

9. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
10. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation.

## **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
  2. Suspended ceiling components.
  3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
  4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
  6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Access panels.
    - f. Perimeter moldings.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

## **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
  2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
  3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS**

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## **2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS**

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Lindab Inc.
    - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - c. SEMCO Incorporated.
    - d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
    - e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).
- C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
  - 2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## **2.3 SEALANT AND GASKETS**

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

- B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
  7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- C. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
  3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
  4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
  5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
  6. Water resistant.
  7. Mold and mildew resistant.
  8. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  9. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
  10. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
  11. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  12. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
  2. Type: S.
  3. Grade: NS.
  4. Class: 25.
  5. Use: O.
  6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## **2.4 SHEET METAL MATERIALS**

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.



1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- E. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## **2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS**

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
  7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- C. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
  3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
  4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
  5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
  6. Water resistant.
  7. Mold and mildew resistant.
  8. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  9. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
  10. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
  11. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
  12. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  13. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
  2. Type: S.
  3. Grade: NS.
  4. Class: 25.
  5. Use: O.
  6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

- F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
  - 1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
  - 2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
  - 3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

## **2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
  - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
  - 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
  - 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION**

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round and flat-oval ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 23 3300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

### **3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK**

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

### **3.3 DUCT SEALING**

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
  - 3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
  - 6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
  - 7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.

10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.

### **3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
  3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
  4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
  5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### **3.5 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

### **3.6 PAINTING**

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

### **3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
  1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.

2. Test the following systems:
    - a. Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Engineer from sections installed, totaling no less than 50 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
  3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
  4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
  5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
  6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### **3.8 START UP**

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

### **3.9 DUCT SCHEDULE**

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:
1. Underground Ducts: Concrete-encased, stainless steel.
- B. Supply Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units and Terminal Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
  2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
- C. Return Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units and Terminal Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
  2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
- D. Exhaust Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
    - a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg.

- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
      - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
      - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
    - 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
      - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
      - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
      - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
      - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
- E. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:
  - 1. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
    - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
    - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
    - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
    - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
- F. Intermediate Reinforcement:
  - 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel or carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer.
  - 2. Stainless-Steel Ducts:
    - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
    - b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
  - 3. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized sheet steel coated with zinc chromate.
- G. Liner (where indicated on plans):
  - 1. Supply Air Ducts: Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch thick.
  - 2. Return Air Ducts: Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch thick.
  - 3. Exhaust Air Ducts: Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch thick.
  - 4. Transfer Ducts: Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch thick.
- H. Elbow Configuration:
  - 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
    - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
    - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
    - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:
      - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
  - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
  - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
  - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
  - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
    - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
    - 4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
  - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
  - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam.
- I. Branch Configuration:
  1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
    - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
    - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
  2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
    - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
    - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
    - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 23 31 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



SECTION 233300

AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
  2. Manual volume dampers.
  3. Control dampers.
  4. Turning vanes.
  5. Duct-mounted access doors.
  6. Flexible connectors.
  7. Flexible ducts.
  8. Duct accessory hardware.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

**1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

**1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION**

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

**2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
  - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts and for exposed ducts.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

**2.3 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - 2. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - 3. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - 4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 5. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 6. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 7. Pottorff.
  - 8. Ruskin Company.
- B. Description: Gravity balanced.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 2000 fpm
- D. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.05-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.
- E. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, maximum 6-inch width, 0.025-inch- thick, roll-formed aluminum with sealed edges.
- F. Blade Action: Parallel.
- G. Blade Seals: Extruded vinyl, mechanically locked.

- H. Blade Axles:
  - 1. Material: Nonferrous metal.
  - 2. Diameter: 0.20 inch.
- I. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

## **2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS**

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    - b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    - c. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
    - d. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - e. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - f. Pottorff.
    - g. Ruskin Company.
    - h. Trox USA Inc.
  - 2. Standard leakage rating.
  - 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  - 4. Frames:
    - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.
    - b. Mitered and welded corners.
    - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  - 5. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
  - 6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
  - 7. Bearings:
    - a. Stainless-steel sleeve.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  - 8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    - b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    - c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - d. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - e. Pottorff.
    - f. Ruskin Company.
    - g. Trox USA Inc.
    - h. Vent Products Company, Inc.
  - 2. Standard leakage rating.
  - 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  - 4. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch- thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

5. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- thick aluminum sheet.
    - e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- thick extruded aluminum.
  6. Blade Axles: Stainless steel.
  7. Bearings:
    - a. Stainless-steel sleeve.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- C. Low-Leakage, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    - b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    - c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - d. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - e. Pottorff.
    - f. Ruskin Company.
    - g. Trox USA Inc.
  2. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.
  3. Low-leakage rating and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
  4. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  5. Frames:
    - a. Hat shaped.
    - b. 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.
    - c. Mitered and welded corners.
    - d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  6. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Galvanized, roll-formed steel, 0.064 inch thick.
  7. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
  8. Bearings:
    - a. Oil-impregnated stainless-steel sleeve.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  9. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
  10. Jamb Seals: Cambered stainless steel.
  11. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
  12. Accessories:
    - a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.
- D. Low-Leakage, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    - b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    - c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    - d. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - e. Pottorff.
    - f. Ruskin Company.
    - g. Trox USA Inc.
  2. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.
  3. Low-leakage rating and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
  4. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  5. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch- thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  6. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- thick aluminum sheet.
    - d. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- thick extruded aluminum.
  7. Blade Axles: Stainless steel.
  8. Bearings:
    - a. Oil-impregnated stainless-steel sleeve.
    - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  9. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
  10. Jamb Seals: Cambered stainless steel.
  11. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
  12. Accessories:
    - a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.
- E. Jackshaft:
1. Size: 0.5-inch diameter.
  2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
  3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
- F. Damper Hardware:
1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
  2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
  3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

## **2.5 CONTROL DAMPERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  2. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  3. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  5. McGill AirFlow LLC.

6. Metal Form Manufacturing, Inc.
  7. Nailor Industries Inc.
  8. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
  9. Pottorff.
  10. Ruskin Company.
- B. Low-leakage rating and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
- C. Frames:
1. Hat shaped.
  2. 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.
  3. Mitered and welded corners.
- D. Blades:
1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 8 inches.
  2. Parallel- and opposed-blade design.
  3. Galvanized-steel.
  4. 0.064 inch thick single skin.
  5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene.
  6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.
- E. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch- diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.
1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- F. Bearings:
1. Stainless-steel sleeve.
  2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

## **2.6 TURNING VANES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Duro Dyne Inc.
  3. Elgen Manufacturing.
  4. METALAIRE, Inc.
  5. SEMCO Incorporated.
  6. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- C. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- D. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

- E. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

## **2.7 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  2. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  3. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  4. Elgen Manufacturing.
  5. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  6. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  7. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  8. Nailor Industries Inc.
  9. Pottorff.
  10. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  11. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
1. Door:
    - a. Double wall, rectangular.
    - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
    - c. Vision panel.
    - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
    - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
  2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
  3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
    - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
    - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Continuous and two sash locks.
    - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches.
    - d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Four hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

## **2.8 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Duro Dyne Inc.
  3. Elgen Manufacturing.
  4. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  5. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.

- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.
- G. High-Temperature System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric coated with silicone rubber.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 16 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 285 lbf/inch in the warp and 185 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F.
- H. High-Corrosive-Environment System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric with chemical-resistant coating.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 14 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 450 lbf/inch in the warp and 340 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F.
- I. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.
  - 1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  - 2. Outdoor Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  - 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  - 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  - 6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
  - 7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch movement at start and stop.

## **2.9 FLEXIBLE DUCTS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  - 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - 3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg positive and 0.5-inch wg negative.
  - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F.
  - 4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- C. Flexible Duct Connectors:



1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action or Nylon strap in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.
2. Non-Clamp Connectors: Adhesive.

## **2.10 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE**

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
  1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
  2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.
- H. Connect ducts to duct silencers with flexible duct connectors.
- I. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
  1. On both sides of duct coils.
  2. Upstream from duct filters.
  3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
  4. At drain pans and seals.
  5. Downstream from, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
  6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
  7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
  8. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.

- 9. Control devices requiring inspection.
- 10. Elsewhere as indicated.
- J. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- K. Access Door Sizes:
  - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
  - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
  - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
  - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
  - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
  - 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- L. Label access doors according to Section 23 0553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- M. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- N. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- O. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- P. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- Q. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with adhesive and draw bands.
- R. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- S. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.

### **3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
  - 2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
  - 3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
  - 4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
  - 5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 23 33 00

SECTION 233713

DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
  2. Fixed face grilles.
- B. Related Sections:
1. Section 23 3300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:
1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For diffusers, registers, and grilles with factory-applied color finishes.
- C. Samples for Verification: For diffusers, registers, and grilles, in manufacturer's standard sizes to verify color selected.

**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
  2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
  5. Duct access panels.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 CEILING DIFFUSERS**

- A. Rectangular and Square Ceiling Diffusers:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
- b. Krueger.
- c. METALAIR, Inc.
- d. Nailor Industries Inc.
- e. Price Industries.
- f. Titus.

## **2.2 REGISTERS AND GRILLES**

- A. Fixed Face Grille:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
    - b. Krueger.
    - c. METALAIR, Inc.
    - d. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - e. Price Industries.
    - f. Titus.

## **2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

## **3.3 ADJUSTING**

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 23 37 13

SECTION 235416.13

GAS-FIRED FURNACES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Gas-fired, condensing furnaces and accessories complete with controls.
2. Air filters.
3. Refrigeration system components.
4. Condensing units.
5. Evaporator coils.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each furnace to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

- a. Furnace and accessories complete with controls.
- b. Air filter.

- c. Ventilation heat exchanger.
- d. Refrigeration components.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Disposable Air Filters: Furnish two complete sets.
  - 2. Fan Belts: Furnish one set(s) for each furnace fan.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- B. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace the following components of furnaces that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period:
  - 1. Warranty Period, Commencing on Date of Substantial Completion:
    - a. Furnace Heat Exchanger: 10 years.
    - b. Integrated Ignition and Blower Control Circuit Board: Five years.
    - c. Draft-Inducer Motor: Five years.
    - d. Refrigeration Compressors: 10 years.
    - e. Evaporator and Condenser Coils: Five years.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. General Requirements for Noncondensing Gas-Fired Furnaces: Factory assembled, piped, wired, and tested; complying with ANSI Z21.47/CSA 2.3 and NFPA 54.

## 2.2 GAS-FIRED FURNACES, CONDENSING

- A. Basis of Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Carrier Corporation.
  - 2. Daikin.
  - 3. Trane, an Ingersoll-Rand Company.
- B. Cabinet: Steel.
  - 1. Cabinet interior around heat exchanger shall be factory-installed insulation.
  - 2. Lift-out panels shall expose burners and all other items requiring access for maintenance.
  - 3. Factory paint external cabinets in manufacturer's standard color.
  - 4. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. Fan: Centrifugal, factory balanced, resilient mounted, direct drive.
  - 1. Fan Motors: Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 2. Special Motor Features: Electronically controlled motor (ECM) controlled by integrated furnace/blower control.
- D. Type of Gas: Propane.
- E. Heat Exchanger:
  - 1. Primary: Aluminized steel.
  - 2. Secondary: Stainless steel.
- F. Burner:
  - 1. Gas Valve: 100 percent safety two-stage main gas valve, main shutoff valve, pressure regulator, safety pilot with electronic flame sensor, limit control, transformer, and combination ignition/fan timer control board.
  - 2. Ignition: Electric pilot ignition, with hot-surface igniter or electric spark ignition.
- G. Gas-Burner Safety Controls:
  - 1. Electronic Flame Sensor: Prevents gas valve from opening until pilot flame is proven; stops gas flow on ignition failure.
  - 2. Flame Rollout Switch: Installed on burner box; prevents burner operation.
  - 3. Limit Control: Fixed stop at maximum permissible setting; de-energizes burner on excessive bonnet temperature; automatic reset.
- H. Combustion-Air Inducer: Centrifugal fan with thermally protected motor and sleeve bearings prepurges heat exchanger and vents combustion products; pressure switch prevents furnace operation if combustion-air inlet or flue outlet is blocked.

- I. Furnace Controls: Solid-state board integrates ignition, heat, cooling, and fan speeds; adjustable fan-on and fan-off timing; terminals for connection to accessories; diagnostic light with viewport.
- J. Venting: Venting shall comply with state and local codes for Category IV venting systems.

## 2.3 THERMOSTATS AND HUMIDISTATS

- A. Controls shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, "Controls."
- B. Solid-State Thermostat: Wall-mounted, programmable, microprocessor-based unit with automatic switching from heating to cooling, preferential rate control, seven-day programmability with minimum of four temperature presets per day, vacation mode, and battery backup protection against power failure for program settings.
- C. Solid-State, Combination Thermostat and Humidistat (AHU-2 and AHU-3 only): Wall-mounted, programmable, microprocessor-based unit with automatic switching from heating to cooling and humidifying to dehumidifying, preferential rate control, seven-day programmability with minimum of four temperature presets per day, vacation mode, and battery backup protection against power failure for program settings.
- D. Control Wiring: Balanced twisted-pair cabling complying with requirements for Category 5e in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.

## 2.4 AIR FILTERS

- A. Disposable Filters: 1-inch-thick fiberglass media with ASHRAE 52.2 MERV rating of 6 or higher, in sheet metal frame.

## 2.5 REFRIGERATION COMPONENTS

- A. General Refrigeration Component Requirements:
  - 1. Refrigeration compressor, coils, and specialties shall be designed to operate with CFC-free refrigerants.
  - 2. Energy Efficiency: Equal to or greater than prescribed by ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- B. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tubes mechanically expanded into aluminum fins. Comply with AHRI 210/240. Match size with furnace. Include condensate drain pan with accessible drain outlet complying with ASHRAE 62.1.
  - 1. Refrigerant Coil Enclosure: Steel, matching furnace and evaporator coil, with access panel and flanges for integral mounting at or on furnace cabinet and galvanized sheet metal drain pan coated with black asphaltic base paint.
  - 2. Thermostatic Expansion Valve: Factory-installed.
- C. Refrigerant Piping: Comply with requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping."



D. Air-Cooled Compressor-Condenser Unit:

1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed scroll type.
  - a. Crankcase heater.
  - b. Vibration isolation mounts for compressor.
  - c. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
  - d. Refrigerant: R-410A.
3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins, complying with AHRI 210/240, and with liquid subcooler.
4. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
5. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
6. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F.
7. Mounting Base: 4"-thick reinforced concrete housekeeping pad.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine factory-installed insulation before furnace installation. Reject units that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for gas and refrigerant piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install gas-fired furnaces and associated fuel and vent features and systems according to NFPA 54.
- B. Base-Mounted Units: Secure units to substrate. Provide optional bottom closure base if required by installation conditions.
  1. Anchor furnace to substrate to resist code-required seismic acceleration.
- C. Controls: Install thermostats and humidistats at mounting height of 60 inches above floor.

- D. Wiring Method: Install control wiring in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal control wiring except in unfinished spaces.
- E. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on 4-inch- thick, reinforced concrete base; 4 inches larger on each side than unit. Coordinate anchor installation with concrete base.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Gas piping installation requirements are to be compliant with all applicable codes. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Connect gas piping with union or flange and appliance connector valve.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Vent and Outside-Air Connection, Condensing, Gas-Fired Furnaces: Connect plastic piping vent material to furnace connections and extend outdoors. Terminate vent outdoors with a cap and in an arrangement that will protect against entry of birds, insects, and dirt.
  - 1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
  - 2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
  - 3. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
    - a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
    - b. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M, Appendix.
    - c. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785 PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
  - 4. Slope pipe vent back to furnace or to outside terminal.
- D. Connect ducts to furnace with flexible connector. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- E. Connect refrigerant tubing kits to refrigerant coil in furnace and to air-cooled compressor-condenser unit.
  - 1. Flared Joints: Use ASME B16.26 fitting and flared ends, following procedures in CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
  - 2. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
  - 3. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

- F. Comply with requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping" for installation and joint construction of refrigerant piping.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Perform electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection.
  - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems with refrigerant and test for leaks. Repair leaks, replace lost refrigerant, and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation, product capability, and compliance with requirements.
  - 4. Verify that fan wheel is rotating in the correct direction and is not vibrating or binding.
  - 5. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.

### 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:
  - 1. Inspect for physical damage to unit casings.
  - 2. Verify that access doors move freely and are weathertight.
  - 3. Clean units and inspect for construction debris.
  - 4. Verify that all bolts and screws are tight.
  - 5. Adjust vibration isolation and flexible connections.
  - 6. Verify that controls are connected and operational.
- B. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
- C. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions and complete manufacturer's operational checklist.
- D. Measure and record airflows.
- E. Verify proper operation of capacity control device.
- F. After startup and performance test, lubricate bearings.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

- B. Set controls, burner, and other adjustments for optimum heating performance and efficiency. Adjust heat-distribution features, including shutters, dampers, and relays, to provide optimum heating performance and system efficiency.

### 3.7 CLEANING

- A. After completing installation, clean furnaces internally according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install new filters in each furnace within 14 days after Substantial Completion.

### 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain condensing units.

END OF SECTION 23 54 16.13

SECTION 237200

AIR-TO-AIR ENERGY RECOVERY EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Packaged indoor energy recovery units.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air-to-air energy recovery equipment. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, elevations, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
  - 2. Structural members to which equipment or suspension systems will be attached.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-to-air energy recovery equipment to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Filters: One set of each type of filter specified.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ARI Compliance:

1. Capacity ratings for air-to-air energy recovery equipment shall comply with ARI 1060, "Performance Rating of Air-to-Air Heat Exchangers for Energy Recovery Ventilation Equipment."
  2. Capacity ratings for air coils shall comply with ARI 410, "Forced-Circulation Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coils."
- C. ASHRAE Compliance:
1. Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
  2. Capacity ratings for air-to-air energy recovery equipment shall comply with ASHRAE 84, "Method of Testing Air-to-Air Heat Exchangers."
- D. NRCA Compliance: Roof curbs for roof-mounted equipment shall be constructed according to recommendations of NRCA.
- E. UL Compliance:
1. Packaged heat recovery ventilators shall comply with requirements in UL 1812, "Ducted Heat Recovery Ventilators"; or UL 1815, "Nonducted Heat Recovery Ventilators."
  2. Electric coils shall comply with requirements in UL 1995, "Heating and Cooling Equipment."
- 1.8 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate layout and installation of air-to-air energy recovery equipment and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.
- 1.9 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of air-to-air energy recovery equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period for Packaged Energy Recovery Units: Two years.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PACKAGED ENERGY RECOVERY UNITS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Greenheck Fan Corporation
  2. Loren Cook Company
  3. Semco
- B. Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. Construction: The unit shall be of bolted construction utilizing corrosion resistant fasteners. Housing shall be minimum 18 gauge galvanized steel. Duct collars shall be provided as standard. Unit shall be provided with insulated top, side and interior panels utilizing 1" thick, three pound density foil faced insulation, manufactured and tested to meet NFPA 90A and UL 181 requirements. Insulation shall be fastened to the panels with weatherproof adhesive and weld pins. Energy recovery wheel shall be mounted in a slide track for easy inspection and cleaning.

Separate blower and motor shall be provided for supply and exhaust airstream for independent system balancing. Blower and motor assemblies shall slide out for easy inspection. Two inch thick, 30 percent efficient pleated filters shall be provided for supply and exhaust airstreams. Entire side panel shall be hinged and removable for single side access to internal components. Unit shall bear an engraved aluminum nameplate. Nameplate shall indicate design CFM and static pressure. Unit shall be shipped in ISTA certified transit tested packaging.

- D. Energy Recovery Device: Wheel shall be a total energy recovery wheel constructed of fluted synthetic fiber-based media impregnated with a non-migrating water selective 4 angstrom molecular sieve desiccant. Wheels with the desiccant applied in a secondary operation will not be accepted. Energy transfer ratings shall be ARI certified in accordance with the ARI Air-to Air Energy Recovery Ventilation Equipment Certification Program, based on ARI Standard 1060-2000.
- E. Supply and Exhaust Fans:
1. Wheel shall be SWSI centrifugal forward curved type, constructed of painted steel. Wheel shall be balanced in accordance with AMCA Standard 204-05, Balance Quality and Vibration Levels for Fans.
  2. Motor and Drive: Direct drive. Motor shall be heavy duty type with permanently lubricated sealed ball bearings and furnished at the specified voltage, phase and enclosure.
  3. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  4. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  5. Spring isolators on each fan having 1-inch static deflection.
- F. Disposable Panel Filters:
1. Comply with NFPA 90A.
  2. Filter Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lift out from access plenum.
  3. Factory-fabricated, viscous-coated, flat-panel type.
  4. Thickness: 2 inches.
  5. MERV: 8, according to ASHRAE 52.2.
  6. Media: Interlaced glass fibers sprayed with nonflammable adhesive.
  7. Frame: Galvanized steel with metal grid on outlet side, steel rod grid on inlet side, hinged, and with pull and retaining handles.
- G. Accessories:
1. Single point power connection with disconnect switch.
  2. Fan speed controller; one per fan.
  3. Control panel.
  4. Duct flanges.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before air-to-air energy recovery equipment installation. Reject insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for electrical services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install heat wheels so supply and exhaust airstreams flow in opposite directions and rotation is away from exhaust side to purge section to supply side.
  - 1. Install removable panels or access doors between supply and exhaust ducts on building side for bypass during startup.
  - 2. Access doors and panels are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- C. Install new filters at completion of equipment installation and before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for ductwork specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."
- B. Install electrical devices furnished with units but not factory mounted.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 2. Adjust seals and purge.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - 4. Set initial temperature and humidity set points.
  - 5. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- D. Air-to-air energy recovery equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-to-air energy recovery units.



NCDOT  
14391.00

AIR-TO-AIR ENERGY RECOVERY EQUIPMENT

HAYWOOD REST AREA  
237200 - 5

END OF SECTION 237200

SECTION 260500

GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRICAL WORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 SCOPE OF WORK**

- A. The work included in this Contract is shown on the drawings and described in these specifications. It consists of furnishing all labor, material, services, supervision and connection of all systems shown and/or specified including the requirements of:

DIVISION	00	- BIDDING AND CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS
DIVISION	01	- GENERAL REQUIREMENT
DIVISION	26, 27, 28	- ELECTRICAL WORK

- B. Contractor is responsible to review and understand all drawings and all work of all trades to ensure a complete and thorough project.
- C. Provide all labor, tools, materials, equipment, coordination, and plans necessary for installation and proper operation of the electrical systems.
- D. Contract drawings and specifications are complementary and must be so used to ascertain all requirements of the work.

**1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Provide, furnish, install, and furnish and install shall have the same meaning. That is, the Contractor shall purchase, transport to the site and install all required components of the work unless specifically stated otherwise in the contract documents.
- B. Wiring pertains to raceway, fittings, conductors, terminations, hangers, supports, etc. as required to form a complete system.

**1.3 DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS**

- A. The plans are diagrammatic and indicate only the sizes and general arrangement of conduit, devices, and equipment; exact locations of all elements shall be determined as work progresses, in cooperation with the work of other trades. It is not intended to show every item of work or minor piece of equipment, but every item shall be furnished and installed without additional remuneration as necessary to complete the system in accordance with the best practice of the trade.
- B. The exact locations of electrical devices and equipment are diagrammatic. The owner may request for any devices or equipment to be installed at different locations than what is indicated on the drawings in a specific area or room. It is the responsibility of the Electrical Contractor to coordinate the locations of devices in all areas prior to installation.

**1.4 APPLICABLE STANDARDS**

- A. All equipment shall be label-listed from a NCDOI approved third party testing agency.
- B. The latest edition of the following minimum standards shall apply wherever applicable:
1. ASA American Standards Association
  2. ASTM American Society for Testing Materials

3. ETL Electrical Testing Laboratories, Inc.
4. IEEE Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers
5. IPCEA Insulated Power Cable for Engineers Association
6. OSHA Occupational Safety and Health Act
7. NEC National Electrical Code
8. NEMA National Electrical Manufacturers Association
9. NESC National Electrical Safety Code
10. NFPA National Fire Protection Association
11. UL Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.
12. Power company standards and regulations.
13. Local and state codes.

- C. In the event there are conflicts between specifications and standards, standards shall govern unless specifications are in excess of standards.

### **1.5 PERMITS AND INSPECTIONS**

- A. Permits: The Contractor shall apply for and pay the cost for any local permits necessary for the work of this contract.
- B. Inspections: The Contractor shall notify the Office of the State Electrical Inspector, NC State Construction Office, and schedule required inspections including rough-in, above ceiling, and final inspections. The Contractor shall be responsible for obtaining inspection of and the certificate by the approved inspection agency for the entire electrical system.
- C. The undertaking of periodic inspections by the Owner or Engineer shall not be construed as supervision of actual construction. The Owner or Engineer is not responsible for providing a safe place of work for the Contractor, Contractor's employees, suppliers or subcontractors for access, visits, use, work, travel or occupancy by any person.
- D. The contractor shall notify The Office of the State Electrical Inspector- NC State Construction Office, the owner, and the Architect/Engineer at least 72 hours in advance of requested, ongoing inspections.
- E. The contractor shall notify NC State Construction Office, the owner, and the Architect/Engineer at least 7 days in advance of requesting the final inspection.

### **1.6 CODES AND REGULATIONS**

- A. Comply with all applicable rules and regulations of the municipal laws and ordinances and latest revisions thereof. All work shall be done in full conformity with the requirements of all authorities having jurisdiction. Modifications required by the above authorities will be made without additional charges to the Owner. Where alterations to and/or deviations from the Contract Documents are required by the authorities, report the requirements to the Engineer and secure approval before work is started.
- B. Furnish and file with the proper authorities, all drawings required by them in connection with the work. Obtain all permits, licenses, and inspections and pay all legal and proper fees and charges in this connection.
- C. Should any work shown or specified be of lighter or smaller material than Code requires, same shall be executed in strict accordance with the regulations.
- D. Heavier or larger size material than Code requires shall be furnished and installed, if required by the Plans and Specifications.

- E. This Contractor shall have the electrical work inspected from time to time by authorized inspectors. At the completion of the work, the Contractor shall furnish a Certificate of Approval, in triplicate, indicating full approval of the work furnished and installed in this Contract from the State Electrical Inspector.
- F. Equipment and components parts thereof shall bear manufacturer's nameplate, giving manufacturer's name, size, type and model number or serial number, electrical characteristic to facilitate maintenance and replacements. Nameplates of distributors or contractors are not acceptable.
- G. Engineer will have privilege of stopping any work or use of any material that in his opinion is not being properly installed and each Contractor shall remove all materials delivered, or work erected, which does not comply with Contract Drawings and Specifications, and replace with proper materials, or correct such work as directed by the Engineer, at no additional cost to Owner.
- H. If equipment or materials are installed before proper approvals have been obtained, each Contractor shall be liable for their removal and replacement including work of other trades affected by such work, at no additional cost to Owner, if such items do not meet intent of the Drawings and Specifications.

## **1.7 RECORD DRAWINGS**

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall keep an accurate location record of all underground and concealed raceway, and of all changes from the original design. He is required to furnish this information to the Engineer prior to his application for final payment.
  - 1. Submit prior to final acceptance inspection, one complete marked-up set of reproducible engineering design drawings.
    - a. Fully illustrate all revisions made by all crafts in course of work.
    - b. Include all field changes, adjustments, variances, substitutions and deletions, including all Change Orders.
    - c. Exact location of raceways, equipment and devices.
    - d. Exact size and location of underground and under floor raceways and duct banks.
  - 2. These drawings shall be for record purposes for Owner's use and are not considered shop drawings.
- B. At completion of the project, all changes and deviations from the Contract Documents shall be recorded by the Contractor.
- C. Four (4) corrected sets of all operating and maintenance instructions and complete parts lists bound in hard covers shall be furnished to the Owner.

## **1.8 SLEEVES**

- A. Sleeves: furnished, set in Electrical Work; built-in under General Construction Work.
- B. Sleeves shall be as follows:
  - 1. Sleeves in floors and partitions shall be galvanized steel with lock seam joints or a manufactured conduit floor seal.
  - 2. Sleeves of extra heavy cast iron pipe or galvanized steel pipe shall be used in outside walls, foundations, and footing or manufactured compression-type wall seal (waterproof).
  - 3. Conduit sleeves shall be two (2) sizes larger than the conduit passing through it.

4. Terminate sleeves flush with walls, partitions, and ceilings. Sleeves in floor shall terminate 1/4" above floors.
  5. Fill space between sleeve and conduit in foundation walls with oakum and caulk with lead on both sides of wall. When using pipe sleeves, fill space between sleeve and pipe with fiberglass blanket insulation when sleeve does not occur in a foundation wall.
  6. An approved fire stop seal shall be used when conduits penetrate fire stopping walls and floors (between fire zone).
- C. Set sleeves and obtain review of their locations in ample time to permit pouring of concrete or progressing of other construction work as scheduled.

## **1.9 CLEANING CONDUIT, EQUIPMENT**

- A. Conduit, equipment: thoroughly cleaned of dirt, cuttings, other foreign substances. Should any conduit, other part of systems be stopped by any foreign matter, disconnect, clean wherever necessary for purpose of locating, removing obstructions. Repair work damaged in course of removing obstructions.

## **1.10 VIBRATION ISOLATION**

- A. Vibration isolators shall prevent, as far as practicable, transmission of vibration, noise or hum to any part of building.
- B. Design isolators to suit vibration frequency to be absorbed; provide isolator units of area, distribution to obtain proper resiliency under machinery load, impact.
- C. Wiring and other electrical connections to equipment mounted on vibration isolators; made flexible with minimum 180 degree loop of "greenfield" in order to avoid restraining equipment and short circuiting vibration isolator.

## **1.11 BALANCED LOAD**

- A. It is intended that design and features of the work as indicated will provide balanced load on the feeders and main service. Contractor shall provide material and installation to provide this balance load insofar as possible.
- B. Contractor shall take current and voltage measurements at all panels of at least 1/2 hour. Reconnections of loads shall be made when deemed necessary by the Engineer.

## **1.12 JOB CONDITIONS**

- A. Examine site related work and surfaces before starting work of any Section. Failure to do so shall in no way relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to properly install the new work.
1. Report to the Engineer, in writing, conditions which will prevent proper provision of this work ten (10) days prior to bid date, in time for an addendum to be issued.
  2. Beginning work of any Section without reporting unsuitable conditions to the Engineer constitutes acceptance of conditions by the Contractor.
  3. Perform any required removal, repair or replacement of this work caused by unsuitable conditions at no additional cost to Owner.
  4. The Contractor is responsible for performing routine maintenance and cleaning of any existing equipment where he is making connections to new work and to the building where his work adds debris.
- B. Connections to existing work:

1. Install new work and connect to existing work with minimum interference to existing facilities.
  2. Provide temporary shutdowns of existing services only with written consent of Owner at no additional charges and at time not to interfere with normal operation of existing facilities.
  3. Maintain continuous operation of existing facilities as required with necessary temporary connections between new and existing work.
  4. Connect new work to existing work in neat and acceptable manner.
  5. Restore existing disturbed work to original condition including maintenance of wiring and continuity as required. Replace damaged or rusted conduit to which new equipment is being installed and connected.
- C. Removal and relocation of existing work.
1. Disconnect, remove or relocate electrical material, equipment and other work noted and required by removal or changes in existing construction.
  2. Disconnect load and line end of conductors feeding existing equipment.
  3. Remove conductors from existing raceways to be rewired.
  4. Remove conductors and cap outlets on raceways to be abandoned.
  5. Cut and cap abandoned floor raceways flush with concrete floor or behind walls and ceilings.
  6. Dispose of removed raceways and wire.
  7. Legally dispose of removed electrical equipment.

#### **1.13 SPECIAL TOOLS AND LOOSE ITEMS**

- A. Furnish to Owner at completion of work:
1. One set of any special tools required to operate, adjust, dismantle or repair equipment furnished under any section of this Division.
  2. "Special Tools": Those not normally found in possession of mechanics or maintenance personnel.
  3. Redundant components and spare parts.
- B. Deliver items to Owner and obtain receipt prior to approval of final payment.

#### **1.14 REVIEW OF CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Work may be reviewed at any time by representative of the Engineer.
- B. Advise Architect and Engineer that work is ready for review at following times:
1. Prior to backfilling buried work.
  2. Prior to concealment of work in walls and above ceilings.
  3. When all requirements of contract have been completed.
- C. Neither backfill nor conceal work without Engineer's consent.

#### **1.15 SHOP DRAWING SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit required shop drawings, samples and product information in accordance with Division 1, requirements and as required in the various sections of these specifications.
- B. Submittals shall show evidence of checking by the Contractor for accuracy. Product information (catalog sheets) shall indicate complete catalog number, color, accessories, etc., as well as, name of manufacturer and local distributor or manufacturer's representative.

- C. Incomplete submittals will be rejected.
- D. Additionally, the Contractor will submit data on the following:
  - 1. All electrical equipment including all panelboards and switching devices (disconnects, switches, occupancy sensors, etc.).
  - 2. Any proposed variation in specified wiring plans and circuitry.
  - 3. All special items and panels, made or constructed specifically for this project, including wiring diagrams, component layout and component data or materials list.
  - 4. All settings of installed equipment, such as overcurrent protection, overload settings, temperature settings, time settings, etc. This includes equipment provided by other contractors or subcontractors and connected and tested by this Contractor.
- E. Submit for review detailed coordination drawings 3/8" or larger scale plans for all major electrical equipment and any areas of conflicts by drafting location of equipment, lighting fixtures, cable trays and conduits larger than 1 1/2" trade size. Contractor shall refer to Division 1 for preparing coordination drawings.
- F. Incomplete submittals will be rejected.
- G. All submittals of NON SPECIFIED equipment and components will be reviewed. It is the submitting Contractor's responsibility to prove compliance and not the Architect/Engineer to prove non-compliance. The submitting Contractor will be charged the prevailing wage of the reviewing Engineer for all submittals requiring over one (1) hour to review that were not originally specified.
- H. It is the Contractor's responsibility to provide submittals in an organized and timely manner so as not to delay the project schedule and hamper the work of other trades.

#### **1.16 OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS**

- A. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to insure that the Owner's representative is given adequate instruction on the operation of all equipment prior to final payment.

#### **1.17 TEMPORARY POWER**

- A. The Contractor shall coordinate all temporary power to all trades throughout all phases of construction throughout the duration of this project with the construction manager. This will include but not be limited to temporary lighting, power outlets, controls for temporary heating, and job trailers. Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating temporary power via existing building services and/or a temporary diesel fired generator and associated fuel costs. Contractor shall coordinate temporary power source with construction manager prior to demolition. Contractor is responsible for all costs associated with temporary power.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. All materials and equipment shall be new and as specified or of equal or better quality.
- B. Basic hardware and miscellaneous items shall meet existing trade standards of quality and shall carry UL or FM listings where applicable.
- C. All equipment supplied shall be the standard equipment of the manufacturer.
- D. Multiple items such as raceways, etc., shall be from the same manufacturer.
- E. Drawings and specifications are based on specific manufacturer's equipment. Therefore, the Contractor shall assume all responsibility, cost and coordination involved in making any necessary revisions to apply another manufacturer's equipment, even though it may be approved as an "equal" item by the Engineer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 COORDINATION OF WORK

- A. All work shall be executed in accordance with recognized standards of workmanship. All work shall be installed in a neat and orderly manner.
- B. The Contractor shall exchange information with other Contractors and the Owner in order to insure orderly progress of the work.
- C. The Contractor must contact the Owner's representative and schedule all work ten (10) days prior to start.
- D. The Contractor shall check for possible interference before installing any items. If any work is installed, and later develops interference with other features of the design, the Contractor will be responsible to make such changes to eliminate the interference.

### 3.2 UTILITY COMPANY INTERFACE

- A. The Contractor shall coordinate his work with the local utility company.
- B. The Contractor shall coordinate any shutdowns with the local utility.

END OF SECTION 26 05 00



SECTION 260519

LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
  2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Encor Wire Corporation
  2. General Cable
  3. Southwire
  4. Cerro Wire
- B. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70.
- C. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for Types THHN/THWN-2.

**2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
  2. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
  3. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
  4. 3M; Electrical Products Division.
  5. Tyco Electronics Corp.
- B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Panel and service entrance Feeders: Copper. Stranded
- B. Branch circuits: Copper.
  - 1. #10 AWG and smaller: Solid
  - 2. #8 AWG and larger: Stranded.

#### 3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Exposed Branch Circuits: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- H. Class 1 Control Circuits: Type THHN/THWN-2, in raceway.
- I. Class 2 Control Circuits: Type THHN/THWN-2, in raceway and Power-limited cable, concealed in building finishes.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- C. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- D. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- E. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- F. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

#### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

- B. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.

### **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 260526

GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes: Grounding systems and equipment.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

**1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  - 1. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at test wells, ground rings, and grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NFPA 70B.
    - a. Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
    - b. Include recommended testing intervals.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 CONDUCTORS**

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
  - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
  - 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
  - 3. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
  - 4. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
  - 5. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
  - 6. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

## **2.2 CONNECTORS**

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, pressure type with at least two bolts.
  - 1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.
- C. Bus-bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 APPLICATIONS**

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 10 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 8 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Underground Connections: Exothermically-welded connectors except as otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Connections to Structural Steel: Exothermically-welded connectors.

### **3.2 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING**

- A. Install green insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits. Do not depend on metal raceway to serve as the equipment ground.
- B. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
  - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
  - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
  - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- C. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Where metal duct is directly connected to unit, check continuity and bond as required. Install tinned bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.

### **3.4 LABELING**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for instruction signs. The label or its text shall be green.
- B. Install labels at the grounding electrode conductor where exposed.
  - 1. Label Text: "If this connector or cable is loose or if it must be removed for any reason, notify the facility manager."

### **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Test completed grounding system at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal.
- C. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
  - 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 25 ohms.
- F. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 26 05 26

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



SECTION 260529

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
  - 2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- C. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

**1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.
- B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
- C. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of **five** times the applied force.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

**1.6 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS**

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
    - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
    - c. ERICO International Corporation.
    - d. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
    - e. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
  2. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
  3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  4. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  5. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- B. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.
- C. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- D. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.
- E. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- F. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners are not permitted.
  2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated or stainless steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.
    - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
      - 2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
      - 3) Hilti Inc.
      - 4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
      - 5) MKT Fastening, LLC.
  3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
  4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
  5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
  6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
  7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

## **2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 APPLICATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.
- B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.
- C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
  - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.
- D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

### **3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
  - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
  - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
  - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
  - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
  - 5. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts and Beam clamps (MSS Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27) complying with MSS SP-69.
  - 6. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
  - 7. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that meet restraint and anchorage requirements.

- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.
- F. Conduits installed on the interior of exterior building walls shall be spaced off the wall surface a minimum of ¼ inch using “clamp-backs” or strut.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS**

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

### **3.4 CONCRETE BASES**

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches deep and 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base.
  - 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.5 PAINTING**

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 26 05 29

SECTION 260533

RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
  2. Nonmetal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
  3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
  4. Boxes.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.
- B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 METAL CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be used include, but are not limited to the following:
1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
  2. Allied Tube & Conduit; a Tyco International Ltd. Co.
  3. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of EGS Electrical Group.
  4. Republic Conduit.
  5. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
  6. Wheatland Tube Company.
- B. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- D. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
- E. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
- F. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel
- G. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
- H. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886 and NFPA 70.
  2. Fittings for EMT:
    - a. Material: Steel.
    - b. Type: Compression.

3. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
- I. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

## **2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be used include, but are not limited to one of the following:
  1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
  2. CertainTeed Corp.
  3. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
  4. RACO; a Hubbell company.
  5. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
- B. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Fittings for RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.

## **2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be used include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
  2. Hoffman; a Pentair company.
  3. Mono-Systems, Inc.
  4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
  1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- D. Wireway Covers: Hinged type.
- E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

## **2.4 BOXES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be used include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Cooper Technologies Company; Cooper Crouse-Hinds.
  2. EGS/Appleton Electric.
  3. Hubbell Incorporated; Killark Division.
  4. Milbank Manufacturing Co.
  5. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of EGS Electrical Group.

6. RACO; a Hubbell Company.
  7. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
  8. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
- B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- E. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- F. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- G. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- H. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.
- I. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- J. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches by 2-1/8 inches by 2-1/8 inches deep unless otherwise noted.
- K. Gangable boxes are allowed.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
  2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC.
  3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC. *Note NEC requirements for GRC conduit to fuel dispensing island.*
  4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment: LFMC.
  5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R or Type 4.
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
  2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
  3. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: GRC.
  4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
  5. Connection to Vibrating: FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
  6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
  7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 1/2-inch trade size.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.

2. EMT: Use compression, expansion gland type, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
  3. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- E. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
- F. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
- G. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- C. EMT conduit provided below roof deck shall be installed 1-1/2 inches away from the deck to allow for roofing screws not to penetrate the EMT during reroofing.
- D. Raceways and boxes mounted on exterior walls shall be off the wall by one inch.
- E. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- F. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- G. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- H. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction.
- I. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- J. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.
- K. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot intervals.
  2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
  3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 1 inch of concrete cover in all directions.
  4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
  5. Change from RNC to GRC before rising above floor.
- L. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
1. Use EMT for raceways.
  2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.



- M. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- N. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- O. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install grounding type insulated bonding bushings and jumpers where conduits enter service equipment enclosures and where concentric, eccentric, or oversized knockouts are encountered. Jumpers shall be sized per NEC Table 250.66 for services and 250.122 for branch circuits.
- P. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
- Q. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
- R. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.
- S. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- T. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- U. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
  - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  - 2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
  - 3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- V. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.
- W. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet.
  - 2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
    - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
    - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
    - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
    - d. Attics: 135 deg F temperature change.

3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.
  4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
  5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.
- X. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- Y. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
- Z. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- AA. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- BB. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

### **3.3 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
  2. Repair damage to paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 26 05 33

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 260543

UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
1. Conduit and accessories for direct-buried and concrete-encased duct banks, and in single duct runs.
  2. Handholes and boxes.

**1.3 DEFINITION**

- A. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following:
1. Duct-bank materials, including separators and miscellaneous components.
  2. Ducts and conduits and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, and solvent cement.
  3. Handholes, boxes, and their accessories.
  4. Warning tape.
- B. Shop Drawings for Factory-Fabricated Handholes and Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete: Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details, including the following:
1. Duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
  2. Cover design.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with ANSI C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

**1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver ducts to Project site with ends capped. Store nonmetallic ducts with supports to prevent bending, warping, and deforming.

**1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Owner no fewer than ten days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.

2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Owner's written permission.

## **1.8 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ducts, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field.
- B. Coordinate elevations of ducts and duct-bank entrances into handholes and boxes with final locations and profiles of ducts and duct banks as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations from those indicated as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct runs drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 CONDUIT**

- A. Rigid Steel Conduit: Galvanized. Comply with ANSI C80.1.
- B. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC, UL 651, with matching fittings by same manufacturer as the conduit, complying with NEMA TC 3 and UL 514B.

### **2.2 DUCT ACCESSORIES**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. ARNCO Corp.
  2. Cantex, Inc.
  3. CertainTeed Corp.; Pipe & Plastics Group.
  4. Condux International, Inc.
  5. Electri-Flex Company.
  6. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
  7. Spiraduct/AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
- B. Duct Accessories:
  1. Duct Separators: Factory-fabricated rigid PVC interlocking spacers, sized for type and sizes of ducts with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacings indicated while supporting ducts during concreting or backfilling.
  2. Warning Tape: Underground-line warning tape specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### **2.3 HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE**

- A. Description: Comply with SCTE 77.
  1. Color: Gray.
  2. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open bottom, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
  4. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
  5. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, as indicated for each service.
  6. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.

7. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
  8. Handholes 24 inches wide by 24 inches long and larger shall have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.
- B. Polymer Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with a polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Quazite
    - b. Armorcast Products Company.
    - c. Carson Industries LLC.
    - d. CDR Systems Corporation.
    - e. NewBasis.

## **2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Test and inspect precast concrete utility structures according to ASTM C 1037.
- B. Nonconcrete Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of manholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
1. Tests of materials shall be performed by a independent testing agency.
  2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or the manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
  3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION**

- A. Ducts for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Ducts for Electrical Branch Circuits: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in direct-buried duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Underground Ducts Crossing Driveways, Roadways, and Railroads: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, encased in concrete.

### **3.2 UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURE APPLICATION**

- A. Handholes and Boxes for 600 V and Less, Including Telephone, Communications, and Data Wiring:
1. Units in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Polymer concrete, SCTE 77, Tier 15 structural load rating.
  2. Units in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: Polymer concrete units, SCTE 77, Tier 8 structural load rating.
  3. Cover design load shall not exceed the design load of the handhole or box.

### 3.3 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Section 312000 "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.
- B. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation and reestablish original grades, unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.
- C. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching.
- D. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground ducts and utility structures.

### 3.4 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Slope: Pitch ducts a minimum slope of 1:300 down toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope ducts from a high point in runs between two manholes to drain in both directions.
- B. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of 48 inches, both horizontally and vertically, at other locations, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in ducts and fittings and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent ducts do not lie in same plane.
- D. Duct Entrances to Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use end bells, spaced approximately 10 inches o.c. for 5-inch ducts, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
  - 1. Begin change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing 10 feet from the end bell without reducing duct line slope and without forming a trap in the line.
  - 2. Direct-Buried Duct Banks: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each conduit in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to handhole.
  - 3. Grout end bells into structure walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.
- E. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of ducts that have cables pulled. Seal spare ducts at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15-psig hydrostatic pressure.
- F. Pulling Cord: Install 130-lbf- test nylon cord in ducts, including spares.
- G. Concrete-Encased Ducts: Support ducts on duct separators.
  - 1. Separator Installation: Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than 4 spacers per 20 feet of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent floating during concreting. Stagger separators approximately 6 inches between tiers. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
  - 2. Concreting Sequence: Pour each run of envelope between manholes or other terminations in one continuous operation.
    - a. Start at one end and finish at the other, allowing for expansion and contraction of ducts as their temperature changes during and after the pour. Use expansion fittings installed according to manufacturer's written recommendations, or use other specific measures to prevent expansion-contraction damage.

- b. If more than one pour is necessary, terminate each pour in a vertical plane and install 3/4-inch reinforcing rod dowels extending 18 inches into concrete on both sides of joint near corners of envelope.
  3. Pouring Concrete: Spade concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between conduits and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not allow a heavy mass of concrete to fall directly onto ducts. Use a plank to direct concrete down sides of bank assembly to trench bottom. Allow concrete to flow to center of bank and rise up in middle, uniformly filling all open spaces. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct-bank application.
  4. Reinforcement: Reinforce concrete-encased duct banks where they cross disturbed earth and where indicated. Arrange reinforcing rods and ties without forming conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
  5. Forms: Use walls of trench to form side walls of duct bank where soil is self-supporting and concrete envelope can be poured without soil inclusions; otherwise, use forms.
  6. Minimum Space between Ducts: 3 inches between ducts and exterior envelope wall, 2 inches between ducts for like services, and 4 inches between power and signal ducts.
  7. Depth: Install top of duct bank at least 24 inches below finished grade in areas not subject to deliberate traffic, and at least 30 inches below finished grade in deliberate traffic paths for vehicles, unless otherwise indicated.
  8. Stub-Ups: Use manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
    - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
    - b. Stub-Ups to Equipment: For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
  9. Warning Tape: Bury warning tape approximately 12 inches above all concrete-encased ducts and duct banks. Align tape parallel to and within 3 inches of the centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional warning tape for each 12-inch increment of duct-bank width over a nominal 18 inches. Space additional tapes 12 inches apart, horizontally.
- H. Direct-Buried Duct Banks:
  1. Support ducts on duct separators coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
  2. Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than 4 spacers per 20 feet of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent displacement during backfill and yet permit linear duct movement due to expansion and contraction as temperature changes. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches between tiers.
  3. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct bank. Prepare trench bottoms as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipes less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
  4. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
  5. After installing first tier of ducts, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving ducts at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand-place backfill to 4 inches over ducts and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around ducts to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction.



6. Install ducts with a minimum of 3 inches between ducts for like services and 6 inches between power and signal ducts.
7. Depth: Comply with NFPA 70
8. Set elevation of bottom of duct bank below the frost line.
9. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor, unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout the length of the elbow.
10. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
  - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
  - b. For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

### **3.5 INSTALLATION OF HANDHOLES AND BOXES**

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting ducts to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Use box extension if required to match depths of ducts, and seal joint between box and extension as recommended by the manufacturer.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas and trafficways, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below the frost line, below grade.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in the enclosure.
- F. Field-cut openings for ducts and conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.
- G. For enclosures installed in asphalt paving and subject to occasional, nondeliberate, heavy-vehicle loading, provide concrete or other structural protection as directed by manufacturer of enclosure.

### **3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground ducts and utility structures.
  2. Pull aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and test for out-of-round duct. Provide mandrel equal to 80 percent fill of duct. If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.
  3. After installation of the raceway system and before pulling the cables, the raceway system shall be air tested to 15 psi hydrostatic pressure.
- B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

**3.7 CLEANING**

- A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of ducts. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.

END OF SECTION 26 05 43

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

NCDOT

HAYWOOD REST AREA

14391.00 UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS 260543 - 8

## SECTION 260548

### SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. References:
  - 1. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code
  - 2. ASTM E 580 – Standard Practice for Installation of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels in Areas Subject to Earthquake Ground Motions
  - 3. FEMA 413 – Federal Emergency Management Agency Manual, Installing Seismic Restraints for Electrical Equipment
  - 4. VISCMA – The Vibration and Isolation Control Manufacturers Association has developed Testing and Rating Standards for Seismic Restraint Components that comply with Code-based requirements
  - 5. CISCA – Recommendations for Direct-hung Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings (zones 0-2)
  - 6. All Applicable Local and State Requirements

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Channel support systems.
  - 2. Restraint cables.
  - 3. Hanger rod stiffeners.
  - 4. Anchorage bushings and washers.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for commonly used electrical supports and installation requirements.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. The IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.

##### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
  - 1. Seismic Design Category as Defined in the IBC: C

##### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for electrical components with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.

## **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
  - 2. California Dynamics Corporation.
  - 3. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
  - 4. Hilti Inc.
  - 5. Mason Industries.
  - 6. TOLCO Incorporated; a brand of NIBCO INC.
  - 7. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
- B. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and application requirements shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- C. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.
- D. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized-steel cables with end connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivels, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.
- E. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections or reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod. Do not weld stiffeners to rods.
- F. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of anchors and studs.
- G. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings, and matched to type and size of attachment devices.

- H. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.
- I. Mechanical Anchor: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchors with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.
- J. Adhesive Anchor: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing polyvinyl or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

## **2.2 FACTORY FINISHES**

- A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.
  - 1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
  - 2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hot-dip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
  - 3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
  - 4. Color-code or otherwise mark seismic-control devices to indicate capacity range.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 APPLICATIONS**

- A. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Secure raceways and cables to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.
- D. Rigidly-mounted Equipment: Each item of rigid electrical equipment shall be entirely located and rigidly attached on one side only of a building expansion joint.
- E. Non-rigid or Flexibly-mounted Equipment: Non-rigidly mounted equipment shall be constructed and assembled to resist a horizontal lateral force of two times the operating weight of the equipment at the vertical center of gravity of the equipment.

### **3.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION**

- A. Equipment and Hanger Restraints:

1. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- B. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- C. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- D. Drilled-in Anchors:
  1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
  3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
  4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
  5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
  6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.
- E. Seismic Restraint of Conduit:
  1. All seismic restraint systems shall be installed in strict accordance with the manufacturer's seismic restraint guidelines manual and all certified submittal data.
  2. Transverse conduit restraints shall be at 40-foot maximum spacing for all pipe sizes, except where lesser spacing is required to limit anchorage loads.
  3. Longitudinal restraints shall be at 80-foot maximum spacing for all conduit sizes, except where lesser spacing is required to limit anchorage loads.
  4. Transverse restraint for one conduit section may also act as a longitudinal restraint for a conduit section of the same size connected perpendicular to it if the restraint is installed within 24-inches of the elbow or tee or combined stresses are within allowable limits at longer distances.
  5. Hold down clamps must be used to attach conduit to all trapeze members before applying restraints.
  6. Branch lines may not be used to restrain main lines.
  7. Provide reinforced clevis bolts when required.
  8. Conduit crossing building seismic or expansion joints, passing from building-to-building or supported from different portions of the building shall be installed to allow differential support displacements without damaging the conduit, equipment connections, or support connections. Conduit offsets, loops, anchors, and guides shall be installed as required to provide specified motion capability and limit motion of adjacent piping.
  9. Do not brace a system to two independent structures such as ceiling and wall.
  10. Provide appropriately sized openings in walls, floors, and ceilings for anticipated seismic movement. Provide fire seal systems in fire-rated walls where applicable.
- F. Seismic Restraint of Electrical Services

1. All seismic restraint systems shall be installed in strict accordance with the manufacturer's seismic restraint guidelines manual and all certified submittal data.
2. Installation of seismic restraints shall not cause any change in position of equipment or piping, resulting in stresses or misalignment.
3. Do not install any equipment or conduit that makes rigid connections with the building unless isolation is not specified.
4. Prior to installation, bring to the architect's/engineer's attention any discrepancies between the specifications and the field conditions, or changes required due to specific equipment selection.
5. Bracing may occur from flanges of structural beams, upper truss chords of bar joists, cast-in-place inserts, or wedge-type concrete anchors. Consult structural engineer of record.
6. Overstressing of the building structure shall not occur from overhead support of equipment. Bracing attached to structural members may present additional stresses. The contractor shall submit loads to the structural engineer of record for approval in this event.
7. Brace support rods when necessary to accept compressive loads. Welding of compressive braces to the vertical support rods is not acceptable.
8. Provide reinforced clevis bolts where required.
9. Seismic restraints shall be mechanically attached to the system. Looping restraints around the system is not acceptable.
10. Do not brace a system to two independent structures such as a ceiling and wall.
11. Provide appropriately sized openings in walls, floors, and ceilings for anticipated seismic movement. Provide fire seal systems in fire-rated walls.

G. Seismic Restraint of Lighting Fixtures In Buildings

1. Pendant Fixtures: Restrain in accordance with FEMA 413.
2. Ceiling Attached Fixtures:
  - a. Recessed Fixtures: Recessed individual or continuous-row mounted fixtures shall be supported by a seismic-resistant suspended ceiling support system built in accordance with ASTM E 580. Seismic protection for the fixtures shall conform to the requirements of FEMA 413. Fixture accessories, including louvers, diffusers, and lenses shall have lock or screw attachments.
  - b. Surface-Mounted Fixtures: Surface-mounted individual or continuous-row fixtures shall be attached to a seismic resistant ceiling support system built in accordance with ASTM E 580. Seismic protection for the fixtures shall conform to the requirements of FEMA 413.
  - c. Emergency Lighting Unit: Attachments for ceiling-mounted emergency lighting units and exit signs shall be designed and secured for the worst expected seismic disturbance at the site. Restrain in accordance with FEMA 413.
3. Assembly Mounted on Outlet Box: A supporting assembly, that is intended to be mounted on an outlet box, shall be designed to accommodate mounting features on 4-inch boxes, plaster rings, and fixture studs.
4. Wall-Mounted Fixtures:
  - a. Restrain in accordance with FEMA 413.

**3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION**

- A. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where they terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.



### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: As required, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
  - 2. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
  - 3. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
  - 4. If a device fails test, modify all installations of same type and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

### 3.7 ELECTRICAL SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE SCHEDULE

- A. Electrical Equipment to be Seismically restrained shall include:
  - 1. Component Importance Factor = 1.5 (Emergency, Life Safety, or Other Electrical System Components Critical to the Operation of the Structure)
    - a. Emergency Lighting Fixtures
    - b. Fire Alarm System Equipment
    - c. Conduit and raceway associated with the above items
  - 2. Component Importance Factor = 1.0 (All Other Electrical System Components)
    - a. No seismic restraint required
- B. Attachment of items weighing more than 100 lbs shall be specified or provided by the manufacturer of that item.
- C. Seismic restraints are not required for the following items:
  - 1. Component Importance Factor = 1.5:
    - a. Conduit with a trade size of 2-1/2-inch or less.
    - b. Trapeze assemblies supporting conduit and cable trays, where the total weight of the cable tray or conduit supported by trapeze assemblies is 10 lb/ft or less.
  - 2. Light fixtures, lighted signs, ceiling fans or other components that are not connected to ducts or piping and that are supported by chains or otherwise suspended from the structure by a method that allows the component to swing freely, provided that:
    - a. The design load for such an item shall be equal to 1.4 times the operating weight of the component acting downward with a simultaneous horizontal load equal to 1.4 times the operating weight. The horizontal load shall be applied in the direction that results in the most critical loading for design.
    - b. The component shall not impact other components, systems, or structures as it swings through its projected range of motion.
    - c. The connection to the structure shall allow a 360 degree range of motion in the horizontal plane.

END OF SECTION 26 05 48

SECTION 260553

IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Identification for conductors.
  - 2. Warning labels and signs.
  - 3. Instruction signs.
  - 4. Equipment identification labels.
  - 5. Miscellaneous identification products.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.
- B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.
- C. Identification Schedule: An index of nomenclature of electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 and IEEE C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

**1.5 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual; and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.
- D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONDUCTOR IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches wide.
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
- C. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.

### 2.2 FLOOR MARKING TAPE

- A. 2-inch- wide, 5-mil pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with black and white stripes and clear vinyl overlay.

### 2.3 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- B. Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory-printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs:
  - 1. Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
  - 2. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
  - 3. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches.
- D. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
  - 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
  - 2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."

### 2.4 WIRING DEVICE LABELS

- A. Embossed adhesive tape, with 1/4-inch black-filled letters on clear background.

### 2.5 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

- A. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. Minimum letter height shall be 1/2 inch.

### 2.6 CABLE TIES

- A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self extinguishing, one piece, self locking, Type 6/6 nylon.
  - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
  - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F, According to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
  - 4. Color: Black except where used for color-coding.

- B. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self extinguishing, one piece, self locking, Type 6/6 nylon.
  - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
  - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F, According to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
  - 4. Color: Black.
- C. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, self locking.
  - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
  - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F, According to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi.
  - 3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
  - 4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F.
  - 5. Color: Black.

## **2.7 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS**

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Select paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
- C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- D. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.
- E. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
- F. Cable Ties: For attaching tags. Use general-purpose type, except as listed below:
  - 1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
  - 2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.
- G. Painted Identification: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.

### **3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE**

- A. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use color-coding conductor tape to identify the phase.
  - 1. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeder, and branch-circuit conductors.
    - a. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG, if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
    - b. Colors for 240/120-V Circuits:
      - 1) Phase A: Black.

- 2) Phase B: Red.
    - 3) Neutral: White
    - 4) Ground: Green
  - c. When two or more neutrals are located in one conduit, individually identify each with the circuit number with which it is associated. Sharing of Neutral Conductors is not permitted.
  - d. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.
- B. Conduits for Future Use: All empty conduit runs and conduit with conductors for future use shall be identified for use and shall indicate where they terminate. Identification shall be by tags with string or wire attached for conduit or outlet.
- C. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
  1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
  2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
  3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual.
- D. Workspace Indication: Install floor marking tape to show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall be as required by NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- E. Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.
- F. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.
  1. Labeling Instructions:
    - a. Indoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
    - b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
    - c. Fasten labels with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.
  2. Equipment to Be Labeled:
    - a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
      - 1) Label panelboard with name/designation, voltage system, and source where fed from. Relabel existing panelboards in this manner.
    - b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
    - c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.

- d. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers: Label with equipment name/designation, voltage system, and source where fed from
- e. Motor starters. Label with equipment name/designation, voltage system, and source where fed from.
- f. Contactors. Label with name/designation.
- g. Wiring devices. Label with panel/circuit number.

END OF SECTION 26 05 53

SECTION 260923

LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Time switches.
  2. Indoor occupancy sensors.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 26 27 26 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, manual light switches, and color/finish of devices.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

**1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 TIME SWITCHES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
  2. Intermatic, Inc.
  3. Invensys Controls.
  4. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.
  5. NSi Industries LLC; TORK Products.
  6. Tyco Electronics; ALR Brand.
- B. Electronic Time Switches: Solid state, programmable, with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Contact Configuration: As indicated on drawings.
  3. Contact Rating: As indicated on drawings.
  4. Programs: As indicated on drawings.
  5. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program
  6. Astronomic Time: All channels.
  7. Automatic daylight savings time changeover.
  8. Battery Backup: Not less than seven days reserve, to maintain schedules and time clock.



## 2.2 INDOOR OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
  2. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Lighting Group, Inc.
  3. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
  4. Sensor Switch, Inc.
  5. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
  6. Watt Stopper.
- B. General Requirements for Sensors: Wall- or ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy sensors with a separate power pack.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 30 minutes.
  3. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor is powered from the power pack.
  4. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
  5. Mounting:
    - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
    - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
    - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
  6. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
  7. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
  8. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc; turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.
  9. Dual Relay Units: Shall have provisions for setting both relays to turn on when occupancy is detected. Units that allow only one relay to default to "on" are not acceptable.
- C. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
  2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in., and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
  3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.

## 2.3 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
  2. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.
  3. Lightolier Controls.
  4. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Lighting Group, Inc.
  5. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
  6. Sensor Switch, Inc.
  7. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
  8. Watt Stopper.
- B. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F.
  3. Switch Rating: Not less than 800-VA fluorescent at 120 V, 1200-VA fluorescent at 277 V, and 800-W incandescent.
  4. Standard Range: 180-degree field of view, field adjustable from 180 to 40 degrees; with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft.
  5. Sensing Technology: PIR only and Dual technology (PIR and ultrasonic).
  6. Switch Type: Single-relay or dual-relay, as indicated on drawing.
    - a. Dual-Relay Units: Shall have provisions for setting both relays to turn on when occupancy is detected. Units that allow only one relay to default to "on" are not acceptable.
  7. Voltage: Match the circuit voltage.
  8. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc. The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
  9. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
  10. Concealed "off" time-delay selector at 30 seconds, and 5, 10, and 20 minutes.
  11. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and helps eliminate false "off" switching.
  12. Color/finish shall match that of other wiring devices in the project.

## **2.4 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 SENSOR INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- B. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

#### 3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch.
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

#### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

#### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Operational Test: After installing and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

#### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting sensors to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
  - 1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.

#### 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices.

END OF SECTION 26 09 23

SECTION 262726

WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
  2. Twist-locking receptacles.
  3. Tamper-resistant receptacles.
  4. Weather-resistant receptacles.
  5. Snap switches and wall-box dimmers.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- D. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

**1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
1. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.
  2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

**1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

**1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

**2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers' Names: Shortened versions (shown in parentheses) of the following manufacturers' names are used in other Part 2 articles:
1. Cooper Wiring Devices; Division of Cooper Industries, Inc. (Cooper).
  2. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
  3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc. (Leviton).
  4. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

## **2.2 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:
1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
  2. Devices shall comply with the requirements in this Section.

## **2.3 STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES**

- A. Specification Grade Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; 5351 (single), CR5362 (duplex).
    - b. Hubbell; HBL5351 (single), HBL5352 (duplex).
    - c. Leviton; 5891 (single), 5352 (duplex).
    - d. Pass & Seymour; 5361 (single), 5362 (duplex).
- B. Tamper-Resistant Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498 Supplement sd, and FS W-C-596.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; TR8300.
    - b. Hubbell; HBL8300SGA.
    - c. Leviton; 8300-SGG.
    - d. Pass & Seymour; TR63H.
  2. Description: Labeled to comply with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article, "Pediatric Locations" Section.

## **2.4 GFCI RECEPTACLES**

- A. General Description:
1. Straight blade, feed-through type.
  2. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
  3. Include indicator light that shows when the GFCI has malfunctioned and no longer provides proper GFCI protection.
- B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; VGF20.
    - b. Hubbell; GFR5352L.
    - c. Pass & Seymour; 2095.
    - d. Leviton; 7590.
- C. Weather-Resistant GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498 Supplement se, and FS W-C-596.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; WRVGF20.

- b. Hubbell; GFTR20.
- c. Leviton: W7899

## **2.5 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES**

- A. Single Receptacles, NEMA type required for equipment. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, and UL 498.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper.
    - b. Hubbell.
    - c. Leviton
    - d. Pass & Seymour

## **2.6 CORD AND PLUG SETS**

- A. Description:
  - 1. Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
  - 2. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and ampacity of at least 130 percent of the equipment rating.
  - 3. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

## **2.7 TOGGLE SWITCHES**

- A. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.
- B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Catalog numbers in lists below are for 20-A devices; revise catalog numbers to require other configurations and ratings.
  - 2. Single Pole:
    - a. Cooper; AH1221.
    - b. Hubbell; HBL1221.
    - c. Leviton; 1221-2.
    - d. Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC1.
  - 3. Two Pole:
    - a. Cooper; AH1222.
    - b. Hubbell; HBL1222.
    - c. Leviton; 1222-2.
    - d. Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC2.
  - 4. Three Way:
    - a. Cooper; AH1223.
    - b. Hubbell; HBL1223.
    - c. Leviton; 1223-2.
    - d. Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC3.
  - 5. Four Way:
    - a. Cooper; AH1224.
    - b. Hubbell; HBL1224.
    - c. Leviton; 1224-2.
    - d. Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC4.

## **2.8 WALL PLATES**

- A. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.
  - 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
  - 2. Material for Finished Spaces: 0.035-inch-thick, satin-finished, Type 302 stainless steel.
  - 3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
- B. Damp and Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant while-in-use, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover. *Nonmetallic covers are not acceptable.*

## **2.9 FINISHES**

- A. Device Color: Light Almond.
- B. Wall Plate Color: Satin-finished 302 stainless steel.
- C. Final device color and wall plate finish to be determined by Architect during submittal review.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
  - 1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
  - 2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
  - 3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
  - 4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
- C. Conductors:
  - 1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
  - 2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
  - 3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
  - 4. Existing Conductors:
    - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
    - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
    - c. Pigtail existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.
- D. Device Installation:
  - 1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
  - 2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.

3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
  4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
  5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
  6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
  7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
  8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
  9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.
- E. Receptacle Orientation:
1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles down, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.
- F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.
- G. Dimmers:
1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
  2. Verify that dimmers used for fan speed control are listed for that application.
  3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.
- H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

### **3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES**

- A. Install non-feed-through-type GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

### **3.3 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Comply with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each receptacle and lighting control with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use self-adhesive machine-printed label on faceplate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections
- B. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
  2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
  3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
  4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
  5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
  6. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.



- C. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION 26 27 26

SECTION 262816

ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Fusible switches.
  2. Nonfusible switches.
  3. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCB's).
  4. Enclosures.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  2. Current and voltage ratings.
  3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
  4. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
  5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
  6. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

**1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Manufacturer's field service report.

**1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed.

2. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

## **1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
  2. Fuse Pullers: Two for each size and type.

## **1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

## **1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
  2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.
- B. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
  1. Notify Owner no fewer than ten working days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
  2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
  3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
  4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

## **1.10 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

# **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

## **2.1 FUSIBLE SWITCHES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  2. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

3. Siemens.
  4. General Electric.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 240 or 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:
1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
  4. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
  5. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

## **2.2 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  2. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
  3. Siemens.
  4. General Electric.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 240 or 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:
1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  3. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open.
  4. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
  5. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

## **2.3 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
  3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. General Requirements: Comply with UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- C. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

- D. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
- E. Features and Accessories:
  - 1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
  - 2. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.

## **2.4 ENCLOSURES**

- A. Enclosed Switches: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
  - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
  - 3. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install individual wall-mounted switches with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- C. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- D. Comply with NECA 1.

### **3.3 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed switch and circuit breaker, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

3. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

### **3.5 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 26 28 16

SECTION 263213

ENGINE GENERATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes packaged diesel-engine generator sets with the following features and accessories:
  - 1. Battery charger.
  - 2. Engine-generator set.
  - 3. Muffler.
  - 4. Exhaust piping external to set.
  - 5. Outdoor enclosure.
  - 6. Fuel tank.
  - 7. Remote annunciator.
  - 8. Starting battery.
- B. The generator described herein will be furnished by the Owner under state contract vendors for installation by the electrical contractor.
- C. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 26 Section "Transfer Switches" for transfer switches including sensors and relays to initiate automatic-starting and -stopping signals for engine-generator sets.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include the following:
  - 1. Data on features, components, accessories ratings, and performance.
  - 2. Thermal damage curve for generator.
  - 3. Time-current characteristic curves for generator protective device.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Test Reports:

1. Report of factory test on units to be shipped for this Project, showing evidence of compliance with specified requirements.
  2. Report of sound generation.
  3. Report of exhaust emissions showing compliance with applicable regulations.
  4. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For packaged engine generators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures," include the following:
1. List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at the Project for ready access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of supply.
- E. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
1. Maintenance Proximity: Not more than four hours' normal travel time from Installer's place of business to Project site.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer. Maintain, within 200 miles of Project site, a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged generator sets and auxiliary components through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of packaged generator sets and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 1 Section "Product Requirements."
- E. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX for welding exhaust system piping.
- F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- G. Comply with NFPA 37.
- H. Comply with NFPA 70.
- I. Comply with NFPA 99.
- J. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 2 emergency power supply system.
- K. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements.



- L. Noise Emission: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements for maximum noise level at adjacent property boundaries due to sound emitted by generator set including engine, engine exhaust, engine cooling-air intake and discharge, and other components of installation.

## 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 16.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include quarterly exercising to check for proper starting, load transfer, and running under load. Include routine preventive maintenance as recommended by manufacturer and adjusting as required for proper operation. Maintenance agreements shall include parts and supplies as used in manufacture and installation of original equipment.

## 1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fuses: One for every 10 of each type and rating, but not less than one of each.
  - 2. Indicator Lamps: Two for every six of each type used, but not less than two of each.
  - 3. Filters: One set each of lubricating oil, fuel, and combustion-air filters.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Caterpillar; Engine Div.
  - 2. Generac Power Systems, Inc.
  - 3. Kohler Co; Generator Division.

4. Onan Corp./Cummins Power Generation; Industrial Business Group.

## 2.2 ENGINE-GENERATOR SET

- A. Packaged engine-generator set shall be a coordinated assembly of compatible components.
- B. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated, with capacity as required to operate as a unit as evidenced by records of prototype testing.
- C. Output Connections: 130 kW, single phase 240/120VAC, three wire.
- D. Safety Standard: Comply with ASME B15.1.
- E. Nameplates: Each major system component shall be equipped with a nameplate to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component.
- F. Fabricate engine-generator-set mounting frame and attachment of components to resist generator-set movement during a seismic event when generator-set mounting frame is anchored to building structure.
- G. Mounting Frame: Adequate strength and rigidity to maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation. Mounting frame shall be free from sharp edges and corners and shall have lifting attachments arranged for lifting with slings without damaging components.
  - 1. Rigging Diagram: Inscribed on metal plate permanently attached to mounting frame to indicate location and lifting capacity of each lifting attachment and generator-set center of gravity.

## 2.3 GENERATOR-SET PERFORMANCE

- A. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 4 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
- B. Steady-State Voltage Modulation Frequency: Less than 1 Hz.
- C. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 20 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
- D. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.
- E. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
- F. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 5 percent variation for a 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within five seconds.

- G. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to line or line to neutral shall not exceed 5 percent total and 3 percent for single harmonics. The telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
- H. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a 3-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, the system shall supply a minimum of 250 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to generator system components.
- I. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10, system requirements.
- J. Excitation System: Performance shall be unaffected by voltage distortion caused by nonlinear load.

## 2.4 SERVICE CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Conditions: Engine-generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:
  - 1. Ambient Temperature: Minus 15 to plus 40 deg C.
  - 2. Relative Humidity: 0 to 95 percent.
  - 3. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet.

## 2.5 ENGINE

- A. Fuel: Fuel oil, Grade DF-2.
- B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.
- C. Maximum Piston Speed for Four-Cycle Engines: 2250 fpm.
- D. Lubrication System: The following items are mounted on engine or skid:
  - 1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller while passing full flow.
  - 2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
  - 3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.
- E. Engine Fuel System:
  - 1. Main Fuel Pump: Mounted on engine. Pump ensures adequate primary fuel flow under starting and load conditions.
  - 2. Relief-Bypass Valve: Automatically regulates pressure in fuel line and returns excess fuel to source.
- F. Coolant Jacket Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity.
- G. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.

## 2.6 ENGINE COOLING SYSTEM

- A. Description: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine-generator-set mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.
- B. Radiator: Rated for specified coolant.
- C. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
- D. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
- E. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, ultraviolet-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.
  - 1. Rating: 50-psig maximum working pressure with coolant at 180 deg F, and noncollapsible under vacuum.
  - 2. End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and equipment connections.

## 2.7 FUEL SUPPLY SYSTEM

- A. Comply with NFPA 30.
- B. Base-Mounted Fuel Oil Tank: Factory installed and piped, complying with UL 142 fuel oil tank. Features include the following:
  - 1. Tank level indicator.
  - 2. Capacity: Fuel for 24 hours continuous operation at 100 percent rated power output.
  - 3. Vandal-resistant fill cap.
  - 4. Containment Provisions: Provide double wall rupture tank with leak detection notification on remote annunciator.

## 2.8 ENGINE EXHAUST SYSTEM

- A. Muffler: Critical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer; sound level measured at a distance of 10 feet from exhaust discharge shall be 85 dBA or less.
- B. Condensate Drain for Muffler: Schedule 40, black steel pipe connected to muffler drain outlet through a petcock.
- C. Connection from Engine to Exhaust System: Flexible section of corrugated stainless-steel pipe.
- D. Connection from Exhaust Pipe to Muffler: Stainless-steel expansion joint with liner.
- E. Exhaust Piping External to Engine: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, welded, black steel, with welded joints and fittings.

## 2.9 COMBUSTION-AIR INTAKE

- A. Description: Heavy-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.

## 2.10 STARTING SYSTEM

- A. Description: 24-V electric, with negative ground and including the following items:
1. Components: Sized so they will not be damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle with ambient temperature at maximum specified in "Environmental Conditions" Paragraph in "Service Conditions" Article.
  2. Cranking Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine flywheel without binding.
  3. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified.
  4. Battery: Adequate capacity within ambient temperature range specified in "Environmental Conditions" Paragraph in "Service Conditions" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least three times without recharging.
  5. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
  6. Battery Compartment: Factory fabricated of metal with acid-resistant finish and thermal insulation. Thermostatically controlled heater shall be arranged to maintain battery above 10 deg C regardless of external ambient temperature within range specified in "Environmental Conditions" Paragraph in "Service Conditions" Article. Include accessories required to support and fasten batteries in place.
  7. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation and 35-A minimum continuous rating.
  8. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing and float-charging type. Unit shall comply with UL 1236 and include the following features:
    - a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.
    - b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 40 deg C to plus 60 deg C to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
    - c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
    - d. Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging rates.
    - e. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
    - f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 1, wall-mounted cabinet.

## 2.11 CONTROL AND MONITORING

- A. Functional Description: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of the generator set. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, the generator set starts. The off position of the same switch initiates generator-set shutdown. When generator set is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down the generator set and initiate alarms. Operation of a remote emergency-stop switch also shuts down the generator set.
- B. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the generator set. Mounting method shall isolate the control panel from generator-set vibration.
- C. Indicating and protective devices and controls shall include those required by NFPA 110 for a Level 1 system, and the following:
- D. Indicating and Protective Devices and Controls:
  - 1. AC voltmeter.
  - 2. AC ammeter.
  - 3. AC frequency meter.
  - 4. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
  - 5. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
  - 6. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
  - 7. Running-time meter.
  - 8. Ammeter-voltmeter, phase-selector switch(es).
  - 9. Generator-voltage adjusting rheostat.
  - 10. Start-stop switch.
  - 11. Overspeed shutdown device.
  - 12. Coolant high-temperature shutdown device.
  - 13. Coolant low-level shutdown device.
  - 14. Oil low-pressure shutdown device.
  - 15. Fuel tank derangement alarm.
  - 16. Fuel tank high-level shutdown of fuel supply alarm.
  - 17. Generator overload.
- E. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Connection to Data Link: A separate terminal block, factory wired to Form C dry contacts, for each alarm and status indication is reserved for connections for data-link transmission of indications to remote data terminals.
- G. Remote Alarm Annunciator: Comply with NFPA 99. Labeled LED shall identify each alarm event. Common audible signal shall sound for alarm conditions. Silencing switch in face of panel shall silence signal without altering visual indication. Connect so that after an alarm is silenced, clearing of initiating condition will reactivate alarm until silencing switch is reset. Cabinet and faceplate are surface- or flush-mounting type to suit mounting conditions indicated.

2.12 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

- A. Generator Circuit Breakers: Molded-case, electronic-trip type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.
  - 1. Tripping Characteristics: Adjustable long-time and short-time delay and instantaneous.
  - 2. Trip Settings: Matched to generator thermal damage curve as closely as possible.
  - 3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when generator set is shut down by other protective devices.
  - 4. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.

2.13 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 and specified performance requirements.
- B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.
- C. Electrical Insulation: Class H or Class F.
- D. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other voltages if required.
- E. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.
- F. Excitation shall use no slip or collector rings, or brushes, and shall be arranged to sustain generator output under short-circuit conditions as specified.
- G. Enclosure: Dripproof.
- H. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.
- I. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified.
  - 1. Adjusting rheostat on control and monitoring panel shall provide plus or minus 5 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.
- J. Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew point.
- K. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.
- L. Subtransient Reactance: 12 percent, maximum.

2.14 OUTDOOR GENERATOR-SET ENCLOSURE

- A. Description: Prefabricated or pre-engineered enclosure as detailed on drawings with the following features:

1. Construction: Insulated (2" minimum) aluminum housing with lockable multiple panels to provide adequate access to components requiring maintenance and a utility area, as detailed, to provide adequate space for switchboards, transfer switches, and auxiliary components.
  2. Structural Design and Anchorage: Wind resistant up to 100 mph.
  3. Dampers: Low leakage type, equipped with bird screen and filter arranged to permit air circulation when engine is not running while excluding exterior dust, birds, and rodents.
  4. Hinged Doors: With padlocking provisions.
  5. Ventilation: Louvers equipped with bird screen and filter arranged to permit air circulation while excluding exterior dust, birds, and rodents.
  6. Thermal Insulation: Manufacturer's standard materials and thickness selected in coordination with space heater to maintain winter interior temperature within operating limits required by engine-generator-set components.
  7. Muffler Location: Within enclosure.
- B. Engine Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Maintain temperature rise of system components within required limits when unit operates at 110 percent of rated load for 2 hours with ambient temperature at top of range specified in system service conditions.
1. Automatic Dampers: At engine cooling-air inlet and discharge. Dampers shall be closed to reduce enclosure heat loss in cold weather when unit is not operating.
- C. Convenience Outlet: Field wired. Arrange for external electrical connection.

## 2.15 FINISHES

- A. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Manufacturer's standard enamel over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and compatible standard primer.

## 2.16 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine-generator set using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.
1. Tests: Comply with NFPA 110, Level 1 energy converters in Paragraphs 3.2.1, 3.2.1.1, and 3.2.1.2.
  2. Generator Tests: Comply with IEEE 115.
  3. Components and Accessories: Items furnished with installed unit that are not identical to those on tested prototype shall have been factory tested to demonstrate compatibility and reliability.
- B. Project-Specific Equipment Tests: Before shipment, factory test engine-generator set and other system components and accessories manufactured specifically for this Project. Perform tests at rated load and power factor. Include the following tests:
1. Full load run.
  2. Maximum power.
  3. Voltage regulation.
  4. Transient and steady-state governing.
  5. Single-step load pickup.
  6. Safety shutdown.



- C. Report factory test results within 10 days of completion of test.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, equipment bases, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting packaged engine-generator performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in of piping systems and electrical connections. Verify actual locations of connections before packaged engine-generator installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Verify structural requirements with structural engineer.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with packaged engine-generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.
- B. Install packaged engine generators level on concrete base.
  - 1. Vibration Isolation: Mount packaged engine generators on restrained spring isolators.
- C. Install packaged engine generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.
- D. Install exhaust-system piping. Extend to point of termination outside structure. Size piping according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install condensate drain piping for engine exhaust system. Extend drain piping from low points of exhaust system and from muffler to condensate traps and to point of disposition.
  - 2. Support exhaust piping and muffler with pipe hangers spaced a maximum of 20 feet horizontally and at each floor vertically. Pipe hangers are specified in Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports."
  - 3. Restrain exhaust piping and mufflers with cable-type bracing assemblies. Cable-type bracing assemblies are specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints."
- E. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties. The following are specific connection requirements:
  - 1. Install fuel and exhaust-system piping adjacent to packaged engine generator to allow service and maintenance.
  - 2. Connect fuel piping to engines with a gate valve and union.
  - 3. Connect exhaust-system piping to engines.
- B. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- C. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Conductors and Cables."
- D. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Sections 7.15.2.1 and 7.22.1 (except for vibration baseline test). Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 2. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer.
  - 3. NFPA 110 Acceptance Tests: Perform tests required by NFPA 110 that are additional to those specified here including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Single-step full-load pickup test.
  - 4. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.
    - a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
    - b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
    - c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
    - d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.
  - 5. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.
  - 6. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine-generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
  - 7. Exhaust-System Back-Pressure Test: Use a manometer with a scale exceeding 40-inch wg. Connect to exhaust line close to engine exhaust manifold. Verify that back pressure at full-rated load is within manufacturer's written allowable limits for the engine.
  - 8. Exhaust Emissions Test: Comply with applicable government test criteria.

9. Voltage and Frequency Transient Stability Tests: Use recording oscilloscope to measure voltage and frequency transients for 50 and 100 percent step-load increases and decreases, and verify that performance is as specified.
  10. Harmonic-Content Tests: Measure harmonic content of output voltage under 25 percent and at 100 percent of rated linear load. Verify that harmonic content is within specified limits.
  11. Noise Level Tests: Measure A-weighted level of noise emanating from generator-set installation, including engine exhaust and cooling-air intake and discharge, at four locations on the property line, and compare measured levels with required values.
- C. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches and run them concurrently.
  - D. Test instruments shall have been calibrated within the last 12 months, traceable to standards of the National Institute for Standards and Technology, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make calibration records available for examination on request.
  - E. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - F. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - G. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - H. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
  - I. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations and retest until specified requirements are met.
  - J. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

### 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
- B. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections. Report results in writing.
- C. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators. Refer to Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures."
  1. Coordinate this training with that for transfer switches.

NCDOT  
14391.00

ENGINE GENERATORS

HAYWOOD REST AREA  
263213 - 14

END OF SECTION 26 32 13

## SECTION 263600

### TRANSFER SWITCHES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes transfer switches rated 600 V and less.
- B. All transfer switches provided under this contract shall be 240 VAC, 2 pole, service entrance rated with circuit breaker on the utility side per drawings.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, installed features and devices, and material lists for each switch specified.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Single-line diagram. Show connections between transfer switch, power sources, and load.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Maintain a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs within a response period of less than eight hours from time of notification.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, for emergency service under UL 1008, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Comply with NFPA 99.
- F. Comply with NFPA 110.
- G. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Contactor Transfer Switches:

- a. Caterpillar; Engine Div.
- b. Emerson; ASCO Power Technologies, LP.
- c. Generac Power Systems, Inc.
- d. GE Zenith Controls.
- e. Kohler Co.; Generator Division.
- f. Onan Corp./Cummins Power Generation; Industrial Business Group.
- g. Russelectric, Inc.
2. Transfer Switches Using Molded-Case Switches or Circuit Breakers: Not acceptable for this project.

## **2.2 GENERAL TRANSFER-SWITCH PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Withstand Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.
- C. Solid-State Controls: Repetitive accuracy of all settings is plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- D. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.41. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.
- E. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA Type 3R, complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, either by color code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable tape markers at terminations.
  1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
  2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
  3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
- G. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a non-fused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism, mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions.
- H. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
  1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are not acceptable.
  2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
  3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Conventional automatic transfer-switch units, rated 225 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.

## **2.3 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES**

- A. Comply with Level 2 equipment according to NFPA 110.
- B. Switching Arrangement: Double-throw type, incapable of pauses or intermediate position stops during normal functioning, unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Manual Switch Operation: Under load, with door closed and with either or both sources energized. Transfer time is same as for electrical operation. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.

## **2.4 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER-SWITCH FEATURES**

- A. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal Source: Senses low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage is adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage is adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
- B. Time delay for override of normal-source voltage sensing delays transfer and engine start signals. Adjustable from zero to six seconds, and factory set for one second.
- C. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevents premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage is adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency is adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
- D. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from 0 to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes. Provides automatic defeat of delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
- E. Test Switch: Simulates normal-source failure.
- F. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
- G. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.
1. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
  2. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."
- H. Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
- I. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so automatic transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
- J. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
- K. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
- L. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods are adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings are for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:
1. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
  2. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
  3. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is not available.

- M. Metering: Provide door mounted voltmeter and ammeter with phase selector switch.
- N. Circuit Breaker: Provide service entrance rated circuit on the utility input connections.

## **2.5 FINISHES**

- A. Enclosures: Manufacturer's standard enamel over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and primer.

## **2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Factory test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.

# **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

## **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Identify components according to Division 26 Section "Electrical Identification."

## **3.2 WIRING TO REMOTE COMPONENTS**

- A. Match type and number of cables and conductors to control and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.
- B. Coordinate signal requirements with elevator controller manufacturer to assure proper selective operation of elevators upon loss of utility power.

## **3.3 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding."
- B. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Conductors and Cables."
- C. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

## **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. After installing equipment and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.22.3. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 3. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.
    - a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.



- b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
    - c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
    - d. Perform manual transfer operation.
  - 4. After energizing circuits, demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.
    - a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and of emergency source with normal source available.
    - b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
    - c. Verify time-delay settings.
    - d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
    - e. Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microhms and values for 1 pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.
    - f. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.
    - g. Verify operation and generator sequencing using area protection relays.
- C. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.
- D. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
- E. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment as specified below. Refer to Division 1 Section "Demonstration and Training."
  - 1. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

END OF SECTION 26 36 00

SECTION 265100

INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Interior lighting fixtures.
  - 2. LED modules and drivers.
  - 3. Lighting fixture supports.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including occupancy sensors, time switches, contactors, and photocells.
  - 2. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for manual switches.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color-rendering index.
- C. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.
- D. Lumen: Measured output of luminaire.
- E. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture.
- F. LED: Light Emitting Diode

**1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of lighting fixture, arranged in order of fixture designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
  - 1. Physical description of lighting fixture including dimensions.
  - 2. LED Drivers
  - 3. Energy-efficiency data.
  - 4. Life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data for LED modules.
  - 5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing & Calculation Guides, of each lighting fixture type. The adjustment factors shall be for LED modules, LED drivers, and accessories identical to those indicated for the lighting fixture as applied in this Project.
    - a. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated fixtures, photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining fixtures shall be certified by manufacturer.
    - b. Manufacturer Certified Data: Photometric data shall be certified by a manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National

Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom lighting fixtures. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Installation instructions.

**1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified agencies providing photometric data for lighting fixtures.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of LED driver for dimmer-controlled fixtures, from manufacturer.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

**1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting equipment and fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

**1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. LED Modules: 10 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  - 2. Plastic Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  - 3. LED Drivers: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

**1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910, complying with the IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing & Calculation Guides.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

**1.9 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of lighting fixtures and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings.

### 2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR LIGHTING FIXTURES AND COMPONENTS

- A. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4 for ceiling compatibility for recessed fixtures.
- B. LED Fixtures: LM-79 tests and reports are performed in accordance with IESNA standards.
- C. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- D. Sheet Metal Components: Steel unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit repair without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during repair and when secured in operating position.
- F. Diffusers:
1. Acrylic Lighting Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic. High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
    - a. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. UV stabilized.
- G. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended LED modules and drivers. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

### 2.3 LED DRIVERS

- A. LED drivers shall meet the following requirements:
1. Drivers shall have a minimum efficiency of 85%.
  2. Starting Temperature: -40° F.
  3. Input Voltage: 120 to 480 (±10%) V.
  4. Power Supplies: Class I or II output.
  5. Surge Protection: The system must survive 250 repetitive strikes of “C Low” (C Low: 6kV/1.2 x 50 μs, 10kA/8 x 20 μs) waveforms at 1-minute intervals with less than 10% degradation in clamping voltage. “C Low” waveforms are as defined in IEEE/ASNI C62.41.2-2002, Scenario 1 Location Category C.
  6. Power Factor (PF): ≥ 0.90.
  7. Total Harmonic Distortion (THD): ≤ 20%.
  8. Comply with FCC Title 47 CFR Part 18 Non-consumer RFI/EMI Standards.
  9. Drivers shall be reduction of hazardous substances (ROHS)-compliant.
  10. Dimmable from 100% to 10% of maximum light output using 0-10V dimming controls.

### 2.4 LED SOURCES

- A. Operating temperature rating shall be between -40° F and 120° F.
- B. Correlated Color Temperature (CCT): as noted on Drawings.
- C. Color Rendering Index (CRI): greater than or equal to 80.

- D. The manufacturer shall have performed JEDEC (Joint Electron Devices Engineering Council) reliability tests on the LEDs as follows: High Temperature Operating Life (HTOL), Room Temperature Operating Life (RTOL), Low Temperature Operating Life (LTOL), Powered Temperature Cycle (PTMCL), Non-Operating Thermal Shock (TMSK), Mechanical Shock Variable Vibration Frequency, and Solder Heat Resistance (SHR).

## **2.5 LIGHTING FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS**

- A. Comply with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel- and angle-iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as fixture.
- C. Twin-Stem Hangers: Two, 1/2-inch steel tubes with single canopy designed to mount a single fixture. Finish same as fixture.
- D. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.
- E. Wires for Humid Spaces: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Composition 302 or 304, annealed stainless steel, 12 gage.
- F. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- G. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to fixture and line voltage and equipped with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.
- H. Aircraft Cable Support: Cable, anchorages, and intermediate supports recommended by luminaire manufacturer.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with mounting requirements specified in Section 260548 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Lighting fixtures:
1. Set level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- C. Lay-in Ceiling Lighting Fixtures Supports: Use grid as a support element.
1. Install ceiling support system rods or wires, independent of the ceiling suspension devices, for each fixture. Locate not more than 6 inches from lighting fixture corners.
  2. Support Clips: Fasten to lighting fixtures and to ceiling grid members at or near each fixture corner with clips that are UL listed for the application.
  3. Fixtures of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support fixtures independently with at least two 3/4-inch metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.
  4. Install at least two (2) independent support rods or wires from structure to a tab on lighting fixture. Wire or rod shall have a minimum breaking strength safety factor of 3 times the weight of the fixture.
- D. Suspended Lighting Fixture Support:
1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
  2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Fixtures: Suspend with twin-stem hangers.

3. Continuous Rows: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of fixture chassis, including one at each end.
  4. Do not use grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.
- E. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### **3.2 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Install labels with panel and circuit numbers on concealed junction and outlet boxes. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### **3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery and retransfer to normal.
- B. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

### **3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting aimable luminaires to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required after dark.
1. Adjust aimable luminaires in the presence of Architect.

END OF SECTION 26 5100

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

## SECTION 265219

### EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Emergency lighting units.
  - 2. Exit signs.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.
- D. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- E. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.
  - 1. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
  - 2. Include physical description of the unit and dimensions.
  - 3. Battery and charger for light units.
  - 4. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
  - 5. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES LM-45, for each luminaire type.
- B. Product Schedule:
  - 1. For emergency lighting units. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. For exit signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.



1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period for Emergency Power Unit Batteries: Five years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for the entire warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Fabricate and label emergency lighting units, exit signs, and batteries to comply with UL 924.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70 and NFPA 101.
- D. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.
  - 1. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.

2. Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening luminaire or entering ceiling space.
  - a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
  - b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
3. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
4. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
5. Remote Test: Switch in handheld remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
6. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

## 2.2 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. General Requirements for Emergency Lighting Units: Self-contained units.
- B. Emergency Lighting Unit:
  1. Emergency Lighting Unit: as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V ac.
  3. Wall or ceiling as indicated with universal junction box adaptor.
  4. UV stable thermoplastic housing, rated for damp locations.
  5. Two LED lamp heads.
  6. Internal emergency power unit.

## 2.3 EXIT SIGNS

- A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Signs:
  1. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V ac.
  2. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
  3. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Internal emergency power unit.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.

- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
  - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
  - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.
  - 3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power unit without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
  - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
  - 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- F. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:
  - 1. Secure to any required outlet box.
  - 2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of emergency power unit.
  - 3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service:
  - 1. Charge emergency power units and batteries minimum of one hour and depress switch to conduct short-duration test.
  - 2. Charge emergency power units and batteries minimum of 24 hours and conduct one-hour discharge test.

END OF SECTION 26 52 19

SECTION 265619

EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp technology.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 260923 Lighting Control Devices.

**1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.
1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
  2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
  3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaire.
  4. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type.
  5. Means of attaching luminaires to supports and indication that the attachment is suitable for components involved.
- B. Product Schedule: For luminaires. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products and complying with applicable IES testing standards.
- B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

**1.5 WARRANTY**

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures, including luminaire support components.
    - b. Faulty operation of luminaires and accessories.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  2. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- C. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 and listed for wet location.
- D. CRI of minimum 70. CCT of 3000 K.
- E. L70 lamp life of 100,000 hours.
- F. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 10 percent of maximum light output.
- G. Internal driver. 1000mA drive current.
- H. Nominal Operating Voltage: 277 V ac.
- I. In-line Fusing: On the primary for each luminaire. Separate in-line fuse for each luminaire.
- J. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for outdoor use.
- K. Source Limitations: For luminaires, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of luminaire from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

### 2.2 LUMINAIRE TYPES

- A. Area and Site:
  - 1. Canopy: Recessed Circular and Square, vandal resistant
  - 2. Wall: Surface mounted, vandal resistant

### 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- B. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit repair without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during repair and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses.
- D. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical conduit to verify actual locations of conduit connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Fasten luminaire to structural support.
- D. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceways and cables.
- E. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished grade unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.
- G. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation.

### **3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
  - 2. Verify operation of automatic controls, including emergency operation.

END OF SECTION 26 56 19

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

### SITE DEVELOPMENT CONSTRUCTION

MULCH FOR PLANTING.....	2
WATER FOR PLANTING.....	2
SEEDING AND MULCHING.....	2
TREE PROTECTION FENCE.....	6
HERBICIDES.....	8
SOD .....	9
BORROW EXCAVATION .....	13
TOPSOIL .....	14
LANDSCAPE FINISH GRADING .....	14
PLACEMENT OF BOULDERS .....	15
WOOD-WIRE FENCE .....	16
WIRE FENCE .....	16
CONCRETE STEPS .....	18
BUILDING ENTRANCE RAMP .....	18
4" CONCRETE SIDEWALK .....	19
PAVERS .....	20
PEDESTRIAN CURB .....	20
SITE DEMOLITION .....	21
REFACE EXISTING STONE WALL .....	22
SITTING-RETAINING WALL .....	22
WATER FEATURE .....	24
CURB CUT RAMP .....	30
LANDSCAPE PLANTING .....	30
SEASONAL LIMITATIONS.....	30
WARRANTY PERIOD.....	30
1" WATER LINE .....	31
1" WATER LINE SPIGOT .....	31
1" SHUTOFF VALVE AND BOX .....	31



**MULCH FOR PLANTING**

Mulch for planting shall consist of pine bark chips. All mulch and the work associated in placing the mulch during planting shall conform to article 1670-10 of the Standard Specifications.

**Mulch for Planting**

Mulch will be pine bark, varying in size between 1-4", from a single source unless otherwise approved by the Engineer. **Submit sample for approval prior to placement.**

Install mulch to a finished depth of 4 inches for new planting areas and 2" added to existing plant bed areas, rake and compact to create a uniform finish.

Payment will be made under:

**Mulch for planting .....CY**

**WATER FOR PLANTING**

**Water for Planting**

Water for Planting will be applied in accordance with the standard specifications. Water for Planting will be furnished as described herein. The contractor will be required to furnish water from an alternative off site source. All applicable sections of Section 1060, 'Landscape Development Materials' and Section 1670, 'Planting' of the Standard Specifications will apply.

Payment will be made under:

**Water for Planting ..... M/G**

**SEEDING AND MULCHING:**

The kinds of seed and fertilizer, and the rates of application of seed, fertilizer, and limestone, shall be as stated below. During periods of overlapping dates, the kind of seed to be used shall be determined. All rates are in pounds per acre.

BLUE GRASS AND FESCUE MIX SHALL REPLICATE WHAT IS USED IN THE SOD OR AS APPROVED BY THE ENGINEER.

Shoulder and Median Areas

**August 1 - June 1**

20# Kentucky Bluegrass

**May 1 - September 1**

20# Kentucky Bluegrass

75#	Hard Fescue	75#	Hard Fescue
25#	Rye Grain	10#	German or Browntop Millet
500#	Fertilizer	500#	Fertilizer
4000#	Limestone	4000#	Limestone

Areas Beyond the Mowing Pattern, Waste and Borrow Areas:

**August 1 - June 1**

100#	Tall Fescue
15#	Kentucky Bluegrass
30#	Hard Fescue
25#	Rye Grain
500#	Fertilizer
4000#	Limestone

**May 1 - September 1**

100#	Tall Fescue
15#	Kentucky Bluegrass
30#	Hard Fescue
10#	German or Browntop Millet
500#	Fertilizer
4000#	Limestone

Approved Tall Fescue Cultivars

06 Dust	Escalade	Justice	Scorpion
2 <sup>nd</sup> Millennium	Essential	Kalahari	Serengeti
3 <sup>rd</sup> Millennium	Evergreen 2	Kentucky 31*	Shelby
Apache III	Falcon IV	Kitty Hawk 2000	Sheridan
Avenger	Falcon NG	Legitimate	Signia
Barlexas	Falcon V	Lexington	Silver Hawk
Barlexas II	Faith	LSD	Sliverstar
Bar Fa	Fat Cat	Magellan	Shenandoah Elite
Barrera	Festnova	Matador	Sidewinder
Barrington	Fidelity	Millennium SRP	Skyline
Barrobusto	Finelawn Elite	Monet	Solara
Barvado	Finelawn Xpress	Mustang 4	Southern Choice II
Biltmore	Finesse II	Ninja 2	Speedway
Bingo	Firebird	Ol' Glory	Spyder LS
Bizem	Firecracker LS	Olympic Gold	Sunset Gold
Blackwatch	Firenza	Padre	Taccoa
Blade Runner II	Five Point	Patagonia	Tanzania
Bonsai	Focus	Pedigree	Trio
Braveheart	Forte	Picasso	Tahoe II
Bravo	Garrison	Piedmont	Talladega
Bullseye	Gazelle II	Plantation	Tarheel
Cannavaro	Gold Medallion	Proseeds 5301	Terrano
Catalyst	Grande 3	Prospect	Titan Ltd
Cayenne	Greenbrooks	Pure Gold	Titanium LS
Cessane Rz	Greenkeeper	Quest	Tracer

Chipper	Gremlin	Raptor II	Traverse SRP
Cochise IV	Greystone	Rebel Exeda	Tulsa Time
Constitution	Guardian 21	Rebel Sentry	Turbo
Corgi	Guardian 41	Rebel IV	Turbo RZ
Corona	Hemi	Regiment II	Tuxedo RZ
Coyote	Honky Tonk	Regenerate	Ultimate
Darlington	Hot Rod	Rendition	Venture
Davinci	Hunter	Rhambler 2 SRP	Umbrella
Desire	Inferno	Rembrandt	Van Gogh
Dominion	Innovator	Reunion	Watchdog
Dynamic	Integrity	Riverside	Wolfpack II
Dynasty	Jaguar 3	RNP	Xtremegreen
Endeavor	Jamboree	Rocket	

**\*Note: Kentucky 31 will no longer be an approved NCDOT Tall Fescue Cultivar after December 31, 2015.**

Approved Kentucky Bluegrass Cultivars:

4-Season	Blue Velvet	Gladstone	Quantum Leap
Alexa II	Blueberry	Granite	Rambo
America	Boomerang	Hampton	Rhapsody
Apollo	Brilliant	Harmonie	Rhythm
Arcadia	Cabernet	Impact	Rita
Aries	Champagne	Jefferson	Royce
Armada	Champlain	Juliet	Rubicon
Arrow	Chicago II	Jump Start	Rugby II
Arrowhead	Corsair	Keeneland	Shiraz
Aura	Courtyard	Langara	Showcase
Avid	Delight	Liberator	Skye
Award	Diva	Madison	Solar Eclipse
Awesome	Dynamo	Mercury	Sonoma
Bandera	Eagleton	Midnight	Sorbonne
Barduke	Emblem	Midnight II	Starburst
Barnique	Empire	Moon Shadow	Sudden Impact
Baroness	Envicta	Moonlight SLT	Total Eclipse
Barrister	Everest	Mystere	Touche
Barvette HGT	Everglade	Nu Destiny	Tsunami
Bedazzled	Excursion	NuChicago	Unique
Belissimo	Freedom II	NuGlade	Valor
Bewitched	Freedom III	Odyssey	Voyager II
Beyond	Front Page	Perfection	Washington

Blacksburg II	Futurity	Pinot	Zinfandel
Blackstone	Gaelic	Princeton 105	
Blue Note	Ginney II	Prosperity	

Approved Hard Fescue Cultivars:

Aurora II	Eureka II	Oxford	Scaldis II
Aurora Gold	Firefly	Reliant II	Spartan II
Berkshire	Granite	Reliant IV	Stonehenge
Bighorn GT	Heron	Rescue 911	
Chariot	Nordic	Rhino	

On cut and fill slopes 2:1 or steeper add 20# Sericea Lespedeza January 1 - December 31.

Fertilizer shall be 10-20-20 analysis. A different analysis of fertilizer may be used provided the 1-2-2 ratio is maintained and the rate of application adjusted to provide the same amount of plant food as a 10-20-20 analysis and as directed.

#### TEMPORARY SEEDING

Fertilizer shall be the same analysis as specified for *Seeding and Mulching* and applied at the rate of 400 pounds and seeded at the rate of 50 pounds per acre. German Millet, or Browntop Millet shall be used in summer months and rye grain during the remainder of the year. The Engineer will determine the exact dates for using each kind of seed.

#### FERTILIZER TOPDRESSING

Fertilizer used for topdressing shall be 16-8-8 grade and shall be applied at the rate of 500 pounds per acre. A different analysis of fertilizer may be used provided the 2-1-1 ratio is maintained and the rate of application adjusted to provide the same amount of plant food as 16-8-8 analysis and as directed.

#### SUPPLEMENTAL SEEDING

The kinds of seed and proportions shall be the same as specified for *Seeding and Mulching*, and the rate of application may vary from 25# to 75# per acre. The actual rate per acre will be determined prior to the time of topdressing and the Contractor will be notified in writing of the rate per acre, total quantity needed, and areas on which to apply the supplemental seed. Minimum tillage equipment, consisting of a sod seeder shall be used for incorporating seed into the soil as to prevent disturbance of existing vegetation. A clodbuster (ball and chain) may be used where degree of slope prevents the use of a sod seeder.

#### Payment

Payment and measurement for 'Seeding and Mulching' will be by the acre in accordance with Section 1660 of the Standard Specifications.

Payment will be made under:

**Seeding and Mulching ..... Acre**

### **TREE PROTECTION FENCE**

#### **General Requirements and Restrictions**

*The aesthetics and comfort of the rest area is greatly enhanced by the maturing trees on the site. The Department has dedicated much effort to preserve all trees possible during this project. This will require the utmost care during the construction process since the construction. The contractor will assist the department by educating its employees, subcontractors and any utility companies conducting work in the vicinity, of the efforts and the preservation measures required herein.*

Tree Preservation/Protection Fence consist of furnishing, installing, maintaining, and removing wood slat, polyethylene, or polypropylene fence as specified or as directed by the Engineer and in accordance with the special provisions included herein.

Install tree protection fence prior to any demolition. All construction unless approved by the Engineer will occur within the construction fence. *Do not trespass* with vehicles or machinery in the areas indicated for tree preservation. Do not park, refuel, repair or maintain vehicles or equipment in the tree preservation areas. Do not stockpile materials or store equipment in the tree preservation areas.

Do not release petroleum products, fuels, paints, or lubricants anywhere within this project in the vicinity of the tree preservation areas or in areas that drain into this vicinity. Do not apply or release herbicides, fertilizers or chemicals of any kind that may be toxic to plant life and do not 'clean out' concrete trucks in the vicinity of the tree preservation areas, or into areas that drain into this vicinity. Do not burn trash, debris or vegetation in the vicinity of tree preservation areas.

Demolition, ground disturbing activities and construction that occurs within the drip line of the tree(s) or within a radius three times the drip line of the tree(s) will be done with utmost care. Accomplish all grading in such a manner as to avoid standing water or saturated soils around root systems of trees that are to remain. Install erosion control devices in a timely manner to prevent sedimentation of the tree root zone in the tree preservation areas. In areas to be 'cut' by grading or where utility trenches or building footings occur, prevent shredding, tearing or exposing roots by excavating a trench not less than 6" wide and to the maximum depth of the cut up to 24" deep. Hand saw any roots 2" or greater in diameter that are encountered to make a clean smooth cut. If necessary, dig out enough soil to reach an undamaged portion of the root to make the smooth cut. To prevent drying out of roots, immediately cover any exposed root surfaces with 6" of approved mulch or soil until 'finish' construction operations dictate removal. Supplemental irrigation may be necessary during periods of drought or stress. Irrigate as directed and approved

by the Engineer.

Branches that protrude into the construction area that interfere with construction operations will be tied back if possible or pruned if not. Follow proper pruning techniques as established in American National Standards Institute ANSI Z133.1 and perform pruning by a professional arborist. Submit description of proposed work along with arborist credentials to the Engineer for approval prior to conducting work.

**Violation of any of these tree preservation measures will result in suspension of all work until the violation is resolved or repaired to the satisfaction of the Engineer.** Such suspension of work will not be considered justification for additional compensation in accordance with Section 104 of the Standard Specifications or extension of the contract time.

### **Materials**

Posts will be nominal 2" x 4" or 4" x 4", lengths as required, structural light framing, grade no. 2, southern yellow pine or steel posts will be a minimum of 1 3/8" wide measured parallel to the fence, with a weight of 1.25 lbs/ft of length. Wood posts will be treated with a preservative in accordance with Section 1082-3 of the Standard Specifications.

Fence fabric will be a barricade or safety barrier type highly visible orange polyethylene or polypropylene mesh that is approved by the Engineer. Fabric will be UV stabilized, flexible and inert to most chemicals and acid.

Signs will be fabricated of a durable, weatherproof lightweight material. Signs will have a white background with red lettering. They will be a minimum of 4.5 square feet and clearly display the following message in both English and Spanish:

### **TREE PROTECTION ZONE**

### **DO NOT ENTER**

Submit sample for approval prior to placing.

### **Installation**

Erect fence to conform to the general contour of the ground. Do not remove existing plant material in order to install fence unless directed by the Engineer.

Set post and maintain in a vertical position. Post may be hand set or set with a post driver. If hand set, thoroughly tamp all backfill material, if power driven, wood posts may be sharpened to a dull point. Remove and replace any post damaged by power driving prior to final acceptance. Cut the tops of all posts at a 30-degree angle. The posts may, at the option of the Contractor, be

cut at this angle either before or after the posts are erected. Contractor is responsible for locating all utilities prior to installation of fence posts.

Stretch fence fabric taut and attach to post with appropriate means according to post type utilized. In sections where signs will be located, reinforce top of fabric by weaving a 12 gauge galvanized wire in the fabric and firmly attach to the post at each end of section. Place signs every 100 linear feet with a minimum of one sign for each segment facing in a different direction. Secure sign to fence fabric at all four corners placing near the top of the fence fabric where clearly visible.

#### **Tree Protection Fence Maintenance**

At any time during the duration of the project if the tree protection fence is not in an upright secure position with no gaps and properly signed, work on the project will be suspended wholly until the fence is properly repaired and determined to be in satisfactory condition by the Engineer. Remove tree protection fence, fill post holes, weed/mow and dispose of debris off site as a last item of work on the project.

#### **Compensation**

Tree Protection Fence will be paid for as 'Tree Protection Fence' in linear feet as measured along the surface of the installed and accepted work.

Such payment will be full compensation for the work described above including furnishing, installing, and removing; fence post, fence bracing, fence fabric, staples, tie wires; all tools, equipment and any other incidentals necessary to complete the work. Mulch and/or watering required herein will be incidental to the completion of the work.

*Payment will be made under.*

**Tree Protection Fence ..... LF**

#### **HERBICIDES**

Post-emergence herbicidal treatment and Pre-emergent herbicidal treatment will consist of the following products and rates unless otherwise approved by the Engineer. Follow guidelines noted in the Standard Specification Section 1670.



### Herbicide Chart

Herbicide Brand Name	Common Name	Formulation	Oral LD/50 (MG/KG)	Amount of Formulation per Acre	Lbs. of Active Ingredient per Acre	Adjuvants	Remarks
<b><i>Stump Control</i></b>							
<i>Garlon</i>	Triclopyr	3 S	2,574	1 gal./1 gal. of water	3 #	1 - 2 qts. Surfactant /acre	Paint or spray, add bullseye dye.
<b><i>Pre-emergent</i></b>							
<i>Pennant</i> + <i>Endurance</i> + <i>Gallery</i>	Metolachlor + Prodiamin e + Isoxaben	Liquid (5G) + 65 WDG + 75 DF	3750 + >5,000 + 5,000	2 - 3 pts. (40#) + 2# + 1#	1.95 - 2.93# (2#) + 20 lbs. + 1#	NA	Spring application ; use tank agitation when mixing.
<b><i>Post-emergent</i></b>							
<i>Roundup</i>	Glyphosate	4 S	>5,000	2 - 4 qts.	2 - 4 #	2 - 4 qts. Surfactant / 100 gals.	NA

**Basis of Payment:** Pre-emergent herbicidal treatment and Post-emergent herbicidal treatment will be measured and paid for in square yards of plant bed measured along the surface of the ground.

**Pre Emergence Herbicidal Treatment..... SY**  
**Post Emergence Herbicidal Treatment..... SY**

### **SOD (Tall Fescue/Bluegrass Mixture)**

#### **General**

The sodding shall be prepared in accordance with all applicable requirements of Section 1664 of

the Standard Specifications and the following provisions:

The Contractor shall obtain a certificate or limited permit issued by The N.C. Department of Agriculture (1-800-206-9333) or (919-733-6932) stating that the sod has been found to be free of injurious plant pests.

### Materials

Only "approved sod" (trade designation) consisting of tall fescue/bluegrass shall be used. The sod, machine cut to the suppliers standard width and length, shall be 5/8 inch (16 mm) minimum thickness, excluding top growth and thatch, at the time of cutting. Before cutting, the sod shall be uniformly mowed at a height of 2 to 3 inches (52-78 mm). Standard sod sections shall be sufficiently strong to support their own weight and retain their size and shape when suspended vertically from a firm grasp on the upper 10% of the section.

<b>APPROVED TALL FESCUE CULTIVARS:</b>			
ADVENTURE	ADVENTURE II	AMIGO	ANTHEM
APACHE	APACHE II	ARID	BROOKSTONE
BONANZA	BONANZA	CHESAPEAKE	CHIEFTAIN
CORONADO	CROSSFIRE II	DEBUTANTE	DUSTER
FALCON	FALCON II	FINELAWN PETITE	FINELAWN
FINELAWN I	GENESIS	GRANDE	GUARDIAN
HOUNDOG	JAGUAR	JAGUAR III	KENTUCKY 31
KITTY HAWK	MONARCH	MONTAUK	MUSTANG
OLYMPIC	PACER	PIXIE	PYRAMID
REBEL	REBEL JR.	REBELL II	RENEGADE
SAFARI	SHENANDOAH	TITAL	TOMAHAWK
TRAILBLAZER	TRIBUTE	WRANGLER	
<b>APPROVED KENTUCKY BLUEGRASS CULTIVARS:</b>			
KENBLUE	GLADE	ADELPHI	BARON
BRISTOL	CHALLENGER	COLUMBIA	FYLKING
MERIT	PLUSH	RAM I	RUGBY
SYDSPORT	TOUCHDOWN	VANTAGE	

Sod shall be delivered on site within 24 hours of being cut and be covered by acceptable means during delivery. A certificate from the sod producer stating the date and time of sod cutting shall accompany the sod when it arrives at the project site.

### **Soil Preparation**

Remove litter and other debris. Satisfactorily dispose of weeds or other unacceptable growth on the areas to be sodded.

Prior to beginning preparation of the soil to receive sod, all eroded, uneven and rough areas shall be contour graded and/or filled with soil as directed by the Engineer. The soil shall be scarified or otherwise loosened to a depth of not less than 5 inches (130 mm) with a maximum width of 48 inches (1145 mm). Clods shall be broken and the top 2 to 3 inches (52 to 78 mm) of soil shall be worked into an acceptable soil bed by the use of soil pulverizers, drags, or harrows.

The Contractor shall be responsible for taking sufficient soil samples (at least one sample per planting area for testing by The Department of Agriculture, Soil Testing Division, to determine the soil pH. Samples shall be taken in the presence of the Engineer. Results shall be received by the Engineer directly from the North Carolina Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services.

Limestone: Based on these results the Contractor shall add limestone, if required, to bring the soil pH to 5.5 to 6.5 (opt. 6.0). The amount of limestone to be applied will be approved by the Engineer prior to application. Application of limestone will be considered incidental to the work of "Sodding" and no direct payment will be made for such.

Sulfur: Based on these results the Contractor shall add sulfur if the pH is greater than 7.0, to bring the soil pH to 5.5 to 6.5 (opt. 6.0). The amount of sulfur to be applied will be approved by the Engineer prior to application. Application of sulfur will be considered incidental to the work of "Sodding" and no direct payment will be made for such.

After soil preparation, lime or sulfur (if necessary), shall be uniformly distributed by mechanical means using a drop type spreader and thoroughly mixed with the top five inches (130 mm) of the soil by discing, harrowing, or other approved methods.

The area shall then be harrowed, dragged, raked, or prepared by other approved methods which will give a lawn type finish. All trash, debris and stones larger than 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) in diameter or other obstructions that could interfere with the placing of the sod shall also be removed. The finished surface shall be moistened with water prior to placing the sod as directed by the Engineer.

### Placement:

Sod handling and placement shall be a continuous process of cutting, transporting and installing including repairing seams and voids. Sod shall always be installed within 48 hours after being

cut. Sod shall be watered within 2 hours of installation.

Any sod or portions of sod rejected by the Engineer during the initial placement shall be removed from the project and replaced with acceptable sod immediately. The Contractor shall cease any and all other placement of sod on the project until rejected sod has been replaced.

After sod has been placed, and staked where necessary, according to Section 1663, it shall then be rolled or tamped carefully and firmly by means acceptable to the Engineer to ensure proper soil contact. If rolled, roller shall weigh 150#/ft (224kg/m) of roller width. Use of rubber tired equipment to roll shall not be allowed. Metal staples, 12 inches (305 mm) long unless otherwise approved, shall be made of 11 gauge (3.0 mm diameter) new steel wire so as not to bend when pinned or driven through the sod. Extreme care shall be taken to prevent the installed sod from being torn or displaced. After rolling or tamping the sod, it shall be watered uniformly and thoroughly with a minimum of 1 inch of water (5.6 gallons per square yard (25 liters per square meter) applied immediately after installation of sod. In no case shall the time interval between sod placement and initial watering exceed 2 hours. Water shall be placed to the required quantity through sequential passes to insure proper coverage and to prevent runoff. A minimum of ¼ inch (6.4 mm) should be placed on each pass.

### **Maintenance**

The Contractor shall be responsible for all watering and other maintenance required to maintain the livability and health of the sod from installation until completion of the 60 day observation period. Additional water shall be applied as needed and as directed by the Engineer to maintain the livability of the sod. Each additional watering event shall be a minimum of 0.5 inch of water (2.8 gallons per square yard (13 liters per square meter)) uniformly applied over the sodded area and may be placed in a series of passes to prevent runoff, with a minimum of ¼ inch (6.4 mm) on each pass.

Any sod or portions of sod rejected by the Engineer after placement but prior to beginning the observation period, shall be removed from the project and replaced with acceptable sod. Satisfactory replacement of sod shall begin within 10 days of notification. Failure to replace and repair damaged or dead sod as directed by the Engineer may result in sanctions under Article 108-7 or Article 108-8.

### **Observation Period**

The Contractor shall maintain responsibility for the sod for a 60 day observation period beginning upon the satisfactory completion and acceptance of all work required in the plans or as directed by the Engineer. The Contractor shall guarantee the sod under the payment and performance bond, refer to Article 109 in the standard specifications.

Upon satisfactory completion of work and acceptance by the Engineer, the 60 day observation period shall begin.

The Contractor shall be responsible for all watering and other maintenance required to maintain the livability of the sod from installation until final acceptance including monitoring the sod to ensure all watering and other maintenance is performed as required.

After the first 30 days of the 60 day observation period, the Contractor and Engineer shall meet to review the project and identify dead or damaged sod to be replaced. The Contractor, at no additional expense to the Department, shall satisfactorily replace any sod that is not in a living and healthy condition as determined by the Engineer. Replacement sod shall be furnished and installed in accordance with the same requirements as for initial sodding operation, except that the amounts of limestone, sulfur, and water may be readjusted as directed by the Engineer. Satisfactory replacement of sod shall begin within 10 days of notification. Failure to replace and repair damaged or dead sod as directed by the Engineer may result in sanctions under Article 108-7 or Article 108-8. Upon completion and acceptance of the sod repairs, the remaining 30 days of the observation period shall begin.

#### **Acceptance**

At the end of the 60 day observation period, the sod furnished and installed under this contract must be in a living and healthy condition, as determined by the Engineer.

Acceptance of sod will be at the end of the 60 day observation period.

Sodding shall be inspected by the Area Roadside Environmental Engineer to begin and end the 60 day observation period. The sod shall be weed free at time of final acceptance.

#### **Payment:**

Payment and measurement to be in accordance with Section 1663 of the Standard Specifications.

Payment will be made under:

**Sod ..... SY**

#### **BORROW EXCAVATION (FILL SOIL)**

Refer to site grading plans and NCDOT Standard Specification Section 230.

## **TOPSOIL** **LANDSCAPE FINISH GRADING**

### **General**

Landscape finish grading consists of placing topsoil material within the interior part of the site seeding, sod, and planting beds, and cutting and backfilling around buildings, sidewalks, etc., to provide proper drainage and elevations as indicated on the grading plans, cross-sections, and as directed by the Engineer. Landscape finish grading is the fine grading of the exposed soil in order to give a smooth coherent surface in and around the main areas of the building.

### **Material**

Topsoil will be as specified herein and will be utilized for all fill/backfill operations as directed by the Engineer.

Topsoil will be a sandy loam, silt loam or clay loam that contains a reasonable amount of humus material. Topsoil will be of good texture, loose and friable and will be representative of topsoil in the general vicinity. It will be reasonably free from sod, hard lumps, subsoil, large roots, rocks and gravel, noxious weed seeds and/or toxic substances or other material, which would be harmful to plant growth. **Topsoil when delivered to the job site will be approved by the Engineer prior to placement**, whether or not the source of topsoil has been previously approved.

**Primary earthwork for the general construction and grading of the site is not part of this pay item.** Fill material to bring building site to finished grade will be as specified in the building specifications under earthwork.

### **Installation**

Place topsoil spread evenly to a depth of 12 inches or as directed by the Engineer, which after settlement, constitutes finish grade. Do not place topsoil when the ground is frozen, is excessively wet, or is in a condition that the soil cannot be worked easily and dressed smoothly. Compact fill material under elevated sidewalks/concrete paving to a density equal to or greater than undisturbed soil in the area.

Landscape finish grading is the relative to the initial placement of topsoil and spreading in a manner to reflect finished grades. Topsoil shall then be compacted with the use of skid-steer or tractor. Topsoil is then hand-raked in place to smooth out bumps, refine contours, to remove loose rocks, sticks, debris and to qualify positive and consistent drainage. Final hand raking shall be completed no more than 24 hours prior to planting and mulching.

Where fill material is needed within wooded areas, precautionary measures will be taken to prevent damage to trees and the root system of trees. When placing or compacting fill material in or adjacent to wooded areas heavy machinery will not be allowed. Equipment for placing fill

material will be approved by the Engineer prior to any grading work.

### **Compensation**

‘Landscape Finish Grading’ will be paid for at the contract lump sum price for the work detailed in this section that has been successfully accomplished and accepted. ‘Topsoil’ will be paid for in the actual number of cubic yards of topsoil placed and accepted. Topsoil will be measured by truck measurement. Each truck will be measured and will have a legible identification mark indicating its capacity. Load each truck to at least its measured capacity at the time it arrives at the point of delivery. The recorded capacity will be adjusted by making a 25 percent deduction to allow for shrinkage, and the adjusted capacity will be the quantity to be paid for.

Such price and payment will be full compensation for furnishing, all labor, equipment and all incidentals necessary to complete the work satisfactorily.

*Payment will be made under:*

Topsoil ..... CY  
Landscape Finish Grading..... LS

### **PLACEMENT OF BOULDERS**

#### **General:**

This special provision consists of supplying and installing the boulders as shown on the plans and details and as described herein.

The general size and quantity of the boulders is noted in the plans, but this is a minimum estimate. The actual size and quantity of boulders may increase. The primary objective of the use and placement of the boulders is construct natural rock out cropping, ledge and waterfall.

This pay item is separate and independent of the stone and/or spillway boulders/rocks used for the waterfall.

#### **Materials**

The boulders provided will be of natural stone native to western North Carolina or Tennessee. Size, color and shape will be the selection of the Engineer at a source to be approved by the Engineer. Common sizes, as noted on the plans/details, may vary in shape. Backfill will be as specified for landscape grading through separate line items for fill (borrow) material and topsoil.

#### **Installation**

Placement of boulders will be at the direction of the Engineer and will require the cooperative effort of the contractor to maneuver into the desired position. The placement of boulders is critical for the construction of the waterfall and to reflect the aesthetic of a natural rock

outcropping (prevalent in the region). Coordination of work between the placement of fill material, topsoil, the boulders, and construction of the waterfall is necessary. Under the best circumstances the water feature subcontractor should be responsible for placement of all boulders, but if this is not possible then the primary contractor should allow the water feature contractor oversight/input for the placement of boulders in/around the waterfall. Several smaller boulders are to be placed in plant beds around the site. Extreme care shall be used in their moving and placement of the boulders so as not damage other site items. Boulders shall be placed on flat even surface and shall be set in place so as not to move, rock, tip, or roll. Where boulders are noted to be placed in plant beds, excavate and place boulder so that it sits embedded in the soil and not on top.

### **Compensation**

‘Placement of Boulder’ will be paid for after all work is complete, satisfactorily installed, and accepted. The work of furnishing and installing boulders, when completed and accepted, will be paid for at the contract unit as a Lump Sum for ‘Placement of Boulders’. Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this special provision; including but not limited to furnishing all labor, materials, equipment and any other incidentals necessary or required to complete the work.

*Payment will be made under:*

**Placement of Boulders ..... LS**

### **WOOD-WIRE FENCE** **WIRE FENCE**

#### **General**

The work covered by this item shall consist of furnishing and installing the wire mesh/cloth and wood boards, on wood posts; the posts are erected in a compacted aggregate base and all work is completed in a professional manner as shown on the plans and described herein.

The “Wire Fence” is shown in the details put its location is not defined on the plan sheets. Placement of the Wire Fence will be determined during the process of construction. The primary objective for its location is to enclose the backside of the water feature (from public access), but in a manner that blends well with the landscape features.

#### **Carpentry and Millwork**

See drawings and details for location and quantity of both rough and finish carpentry.

#### **Materials**

Grading of all lumber and trim shall conform to the association under whose rules it is graded. Moisture content shall not exceed 18 percent for framing lumber and 12 percent for millwork and



trim. All lumber in contact with concrete or masonry, and/or soil shall be treated with water borne pentachlorophenol, ACQ (Alkaline Copper Quaternary), or CCA (Chromated Copper Arsenate) in accordance with standards of the American Wood Preserver's Association. Minimum retention shall be 0.25 pcf for material 2 inches and smaller and 0.40 pcf for materials greater than 2 inches. All lumber shall be kiln dried after treated. All lumber and millwork shall be stored in a manner that will keep it dry and well-ventilated, well off the ground, and adequately covered.

Carpentry and millwork materials shall be as follows: All board lumber (for rails and caps) shall be full size Architect Knotty (AK) western red cedar. Posts shall be pressure treated No. 1 southern yellow pine. Stain/paint for posts shall match cedar board wood.

The wire clothe, a woven-crimped wire fence material, shall have 3" square openings, .250 lock-crimp, and with 2 treated with black powder coating. The wire clothe shall be attached to the wood fence by means of fasteners (supplied by the manufacturer or as recommended by the manufacturer). All material shall be graded for exterior use. Samples of the wire clothe and fasteners shall be supplied to NCDOT for approval, prior to installation.

All other bolts, screws, washers, and channel shall be galvanized and conform to all applicable requirements of Section 1076 of the Standard Specifications. Touch-up all breaks in galvanizing, such as holes, end cuts, etc. with zinc rich paint prior to assembling bench.

### **Installation**

Excavate and fill post holes as shown on the drawings. Construction and framing shall be cut and assembled square on bearings, closely fitted, accurately set to required lines and levels, and rigidly secured in place.

### **Stain**

Pre-installation, the posts shall be stained. A touch-up stain coat may be necessary once all installation work is complete. The posts are to be treated with 2 coats of oil based cedar stain (for approved use on specified wood). Wood, and local conditions, will be dry. Follow manufacturer direction on application, drying, and second coat treatment. All work shall be professional grade, free from drips, scars, blotches, or poor workmanship.

### **Method of Measurements and Basis of Payment**

Wood-Wire Fence and Wire Fence as described above and as shown on the plans shall be paid for at the contract unit price per linear foot of "Wood-Wire Fence" and per linear foot of "Wire Fence", measured from the (vertical) center line of post to post along the wood fence, complete in place and accepted. Such price shall be full compensation for all labor, materials, tools, equipment, and all other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

**Wood-Wire Fence..... LF**  
**Wire Fence ..... LF**

### **CONCRETE STEPS**

#### **General**

The work covered by this item shall consist of furnishing and constructing reinforced concrete steps in accordance with the dimensions as shown on the plans and on the details and as described herein.

Reinforced Concrete step construction shall conform to all applicable requirements of the Standard Specifications. Construct concrete in accordance with Section 825, except as otherwise noted herein. Furnish and place reinforcement, as shown on the plans and details, in accordance with the provisions of Section 425. Give formed surfaces of the concrete a rubbed finish. Give unformed surfaces a float finish.

Payment will be made under:

**Concrete Steps ..... CY**

### **BUILDING ENTRANCE RAMP**

**General:** The work covered by this section consists of constructing the building entrance ramp complete with concrete base, rails, cheek walls, and stone veneer as shown on the drawings, including all labor, materials, services and incidentals required to complete the work shown on the drawings.

#### **Materials**

Concrete will be Class B. Fascia stone, as defined in the plans, will be the same as used on the rest area building. Installation shall reflect manufacturers suggested installation on masonry, but method of placement must be approved by NCDOT Engineer prior to construction.

Handrail shall be constructed of Schedule 40 -1-1/2" Aluminum pipe, painted with 2 coats of black exterior grade paint. Submit sample or submittal data to Engineer for approval pipe that is to be bent or welded in fabrication shall meet the requirements of ASTM A53 for standard weight pipe. Standards for welding shall meet those requirements defined in the Standard Specification for Roadway Structures – Section 1072-18 and painting Standard Specification for Roadway Structures – Section 1072-20.

#### **Construction/Installation**

Prior to work, the contractor shall investigate the area for any subsurface utilities or objects. Appropriate action shall be taken to impact such items. Construct concrete in accordance with

Section 825, except as otherwise noted herein. Furnish and place reinforcement, as shown on the plans and details, in accordance with the provisions of Section 425. Give formed surfaces of the concrete a rubbed finish. Give unformed surfaces a float finish.

Erect handrails as shown on the details, straight and true to line and grade. They will be core mounted into pipe sleeve as recommended by manufacturer. All welds will be filed smooth to the touch.

Compact backfill to a degree comparable to the adjacent undisturbed material

**Compensation**

The quantities of Building Entrance Ramp, to be paid for will be paid for in full by 'Lump Sum' for all work having been completed and accepted.

Payment will be made under:

**Building Entrance Ramp . . . . . LS**

**4" CONCRETE SIDEWALKS**

**General**

The sidewalks indicated on the plans shall be 4" concrete. The sidewalks and concrete pads shall be as specified in Section 848 and as shown on the plans.

Where it is noted on the plans where 4" concrete sidewalk is to meet and/or match existing concrete sidewalk and curb. Install sidewalk according plans, details and specifications. The existing sidewalk shall have a clean **saw cut** edge provided, at the match locations and/or where concrete paving is removed.

Scoring patterns and joints shall be as shown on plans or as directed by the Engineer in field, and as specified in Section 825-10. Control joints indicated on plans shall be as specified for Grooved Contraction Joints.

**Method of Measurement and Basis of Payment**

The quantities of sidewalk to be paid for will be the actual number of square yards measured along the surface which have been completed and accepted. This quantity of concrete includes all noted 4" sidewalk and the concrete pads noted for the placement of waste/recycle containers. The quantity of sidewalk measured as indicated above, will be paid for at the contract unit price per square yard for "4" Concrete Sidewalk". There will be no additional compensation for control and expansion joints.

Payment will be made under:

**4" Concrete Sidewalk ..... SY**

**PAVERS**

**General**

The work covered by this section shall consist of furnishing and installing the decorative concrete Pavers in accordance with dimensions and finishes as shown on the plans, the details, and as described herein.

**Materials and Construction**

Paver shall be "Belgard Lafitt Rustic Slab", "Pavestone Panorama", or "Unilock Transition"; 2" or 2 3/8" Thick, with varying width and lengths placed in a 2-3 block modular pattern. Specified Colors : Gray and/or Sand/Beige. Concrete edging (see 4" Concrete Sidewalk or Pedestrian Curb) shall be installed as noted on the plans and details. Edging shall be placed in line and plumb with proposed grades and sidewalks. Contractor shall be an experienced contractor with installing landscape edging. Contractor shall supply references and paver samples, for approval, to engineer prior to construction.

**Method of Measurement and Basis of Payment**

The work of furnishing and installing Pavers as shown on the plans or as approved by the Engineer, when completed and accepted, will be paid for at the unit price per Square Feet for "Pavers". Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this special provision; including but not limited to furnishing transport, all labor, materials, equipment, excavation and grading, and any other incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

**Pavers ..... SF**

**PEDESTRIAN CURB (CLASS B CONCRETE)**

**General**

The work covered by this item shall consist of furnishing and constructing pedestrian curb concrete border in coordination with the installation of the decorative concrete pavers and/or sidewalk and accordance with the dimensions as shown in the drawings and as described herein.

The pedestrian curb construction shall conform to all applicable requirements of Section 846 (Concrete Curb) of the Standard Specifications.

**Method of Measurement**

The quantity of 'Pedestrian Curb' to be paid for shall be the actual number of linear feet the pedestrian curb, measured parallel with the ground surface, complete in place and accepted.

**Basis of Payment**

The quantity measures as provided above, shall be paid for at the contract unit price per linear feet of " Pedestrian Curb " complete in place and accepted, which price and payment shall be full compensation for furnishing and installing, and for all labor, equipment, tools and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

**Pedestrian Curb ..... LF**

**SITE DEMOLITION**

**General**

Site demolition consists of the removal and disposal of all concrete pavement, structures, site amenities and vegetative material designated to be removed as indicated on the plans and as directed by the Engineer. For clarification, separate site demolition and landscape demolition plans are provided. This special provision, and pay item, shall cover removal of all designated site and landscape demolition items. Landscape vegetative material includes trees and shrubs with stumps, and plant beds as designated on the plans and as directed by the Engineer on site. Division staff will remove selected site amenities and plants prior to the construction. The rail fence, benches, receptacles, and site equipment noted on plans or as directed by the engineer, are to be removed by contractor, salvaged and stockpiled (on site) at a convenient location designated by the NCDOT Engineer.

All methods and operations used for removal of pavement, structures, site amenities and vegetative material will meet prior approval of the Engineer. Where sections of concrete are removed from areas designated to stay intact the contractor shall **saw cut** the pavement providing a clean edge.

Vegetation removal consists of below ground removal of root masses as well as above ground growth. Perform all work so as to cause minimum soil erosion and comply with the requirements of Section 10. Conduct vegetation removal operations in a manner to prevent limb, bark or root injuries to trees, shrubs, or other types of vegetation that are to remain. Should damage occur to adjacent trees or shrubs to remain take all steps necessary as directed by the Engineer to repair or minimize the effects of the damage to the tree or shrub. Remove any tree or

shrub that is to remain that is damaged to the extent that its value as a desirable landscape tree is compromised in the opinion of the engineer. There will be no further compensation for removal of a tree or shrub damaged by the contractor. Furthermore, the contractor will reimburse the owner for the aesthetic value of the tree or shrub, as determined by a certified arborist using the current International Society of Arboriculture plant appraisal standards.

All materials removed that are not noted for recycling or reinstallation on the project will become the property of the Contractor and will be properly disposed of by the Contractor off site.

Prevent damage to adjacent property and structures during the removal and demolition operations. The contractor is responsible for repairing any and all damaged areas to its original condition and/or to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

### **Compensation**

Payment for the work of removing and disposing of all paving, structures, site amenities and vegetation as described above, indicated on plans and directed by the Engineer, will be paid for at the contract unit price for 'Site Demolition'.

Such price and payment will be full compensation for all work covered by this provision; including but not limited to furnishing all labor, tools and equipment and any other incidentals necessary or required to complete the work.

*Payment will be made under:*

**Site Demolition ..... LS**

## **REFACE EXISTING STONE WALL** **SITTING-RETAINING WALL**

### **General**

The work covered by this section shall consist of:

- A) Face stone removal and application of a new stone veneer and cap to existing walls, and
- B) Construction of stone veneer sitting-retaining wall as shown on the plans and details and as described herein.

The height and length of the walls may vary slightly from the plans and details. The NCDOT Engineer shall approve any changes. Verify exact dimensions before beginning construction.

### **Materials**

Concrete shall be Class "B" and meet the requirements of Section 1000 of the Standard Specifications. Reinforcing steel shall meet the requirements of Section 1070. Concrete block

shall be 8"x 16" CPU specifically manufactured for reinforced masonry wall construction. The stone veneer will be the same as specified in the architectural plans for the building exterior. The Stone capping shall be a 2" thick precast concrete. The capping shall be 16" wide and cut in 6-8' sections (for straight wall applications) and 2' length (for curved wall sections). Stone Veneer samples shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval prior to any placement. Use Type S mortar or as indicated on the architectural plans.

### **Installation**

Removal of exterior stone on existing walls shall be completed in manner so as not to damage the interior structure of the wall. Hand or pneumatic chisels shall be used to remove all stone and mortar. The removed stone shall be gathered and stockpiled in a location on the rest area site (as determined by the Division Roadside Engineer). Other debris left over from the stone removal shall be properly discarded off site by the contractor. Inspection of the wall, once the stone is removed, shall be completed by the NCDOT Engineer and contractor. Areas of the wall that are confirmed as structurally deficient will be reinforced or replaced as necessary. New areas of wall, to connect to existing sections of wall, shall replicate the base, height and construction of the two sections to provide a smooth, imperceptible transition. The final length of wall shall be aesthetically and structurally similar to the new sitting-retaining wall.

For the construction of the sitting-retaining wall, excavate and pour reinforced concrete footing, build reinforced block wall, and lay stone veneer and coping as shown on the drawings. Place reinforcing steel as described in Section 425. Use one metal tie per every two square foot of surface area, or as indicated on the plans, to bond the stone veneer to the block wall. Allow the masonry to cure a minimum of 7 days prior to placing backfill.

The stone mason should be the same stone mason contractor who completes the stone work on the building or an experienced stone mason with a minimum of 7 years of practice shall be required to construct the stone walls. A sample wall with approximately 20 square feet of veneer surface area and a minimum of 5 linear feet of capping shall be required prior to progressing with remaining walls. The sample wall shall be a separate wall or incorporated into proposed walls as shown on plans. The sample wall shall be approved prior to proceeding with the installation.

### **Method of Measurement**

The quantity of Reface Existing Stone Wall will be the actual number of square feet of wall area refaced, constructed, and accepted. The quantity of Sitting-Retaining Stone Wall will be the actual number of linear feet of wall constructed and accepted.

### **Basis of Payment**

Payment as described above will be full compensation for all work covered by this section including but not limited to removal of stone, reinforcement of walls, footing excavation, furnishing and installing reinforcing steel, concrete, block, stone veneer, foundation drain, backfill, and other incidental material; and all labor and equipment necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

**Reface Existing Stone Wall . . . . . SF**  
**Sitting-Retaining Wall . . . . . LF**

## **WATER FEATURE**

### **GENERAL**

The work required under this section consists of construction of the waterfall and pond water feature that is noted in the plans, details and as specified herein. The water feature contractor shall work closely in coordination with associated site contractors for the construction of rock outcropping, boulder placements, and surrounding site items.

The scope of work included in this section includes the furnishing of all materials, equipment and services necessary for the completion of the described waterfall system.

The furnishing and installation of materials shall include but not be limited to the following items:

- a. Water supply plumbing, pipes accessories and equipment.
- b. Basin overflow drain lines and plumbed equalizer line (between the waterfall basin and the in ground cistern), equipment, and all associated materials.
- c. Skimmers, filter tank, filter baskets, connections, and associated piping.
- d. All boulders, river stone and associated masonry work.
- e. Submersible Pumping Equipment.
- f. Liners, bulkhead fittings, waterproofing materials and equipment.
- g. All supplemental river rock.
- h. System Controls, timers, and utility access box(es).
- i. Waterfall weir, cap stone, fittings, nozzles and associated equipment.
- j. Utility Service connection and coordination to noted for power, fill water, and sewer.
- k. Stream side plants, planting medium, plant basket and associated material.
- l. Special Tools.

### **COORDINATION**

The installing Contractor(s) shall coordinate and schedule the waterfall contract work with all other associated project work.



#### QUALITY ASSURANCE:

##### Approved Waterfall/ Water Feature Contractor:

1. The contractor responsible for the construction and completion of the water feature shall have extensive experience with the installation, construction and maintenance of waterfalls, water features and/or ponds. They shall have completed a minimum of 10 project installation similar in nature and scope as defined in this project. They shall offer proof of workmanship, accreditation, and photographic samples of their work.
2. Plans, details and pictures of the contractor's previous work will assist in the process and discussion of how the proposed the waterfall feature will be constructed.

##### Approved Equipment Supplier:

1. The design shown on the drawings and the specifications listed herein are based on the design data, services, and materials readily available through national suppliers of pond, waterfall, fountain, and plumbing materials
2. The contractor shall use only use reputable equipment suppliers approved by the Engineer.

##### Water Feature Materials and Equipment:

A pre-construction meeting shall be arranged with the general contractor for the coordination of the contractor responsible for the water feature construction. This allows for a detailed explanation of the suggested installation techniques and the sequence of the installation.

##### PUMP:

1. Pump capacity: min. 8000 GPH; plumbed with a manual ball valve (in feeder line at spillway; placed in valve box) to restrict flow if necessary.
2. Acceptable manufacturers: Atlantic (Tidalwave) Cal, Tsurumi, Two year manufacturer warranty (minimum).
3. Low water cutoff switch.
4. Plumbed to allow for removal without entering tank.
5. Connected to power supply by power cable within valve box.
6. Contractor supplies plug in exterior grade timer (pump plugged in to timer within valve box).

##### ROCK, STONE, AND BOULDERS:

1. It is the responsibility of the water feature contractor to supply all river rock, stone and boulders for the completion of the waterfall and adjoining areas.
2. Multiple sizes and grades of river stone and boulders shall be integrated within the design in

order to give the stream, waterfall and the immediate surrounding area a realistic and natural mountain stream character.

3. The boulders supplied shall range in size from large (approx 5 ton), medium (3-4 ton) and small (1-2 ton).
4. The river stone supplied shall range in size from large (4"-8"), medium (2"-4") and small (1/2"-2").
5. Each step in the waterfall stream shall have integrated flat rocks leveled (and sealed with waterfall foam) to assist in the cascade falls of the stream.
6. If specified, stream areas will be made up of embankments, riffles, and ponding area(s), comprised of varying sizes of river stone and boulders, to add character to the waterfall's natural effect.
7. The pond area will be filled with river stone as defined on the plans and as approved by the Landscape Architect.

#### PLANTS:

1. It is the responsibility of the contractor to supply the plants that will be integrated within the stream and basin area.
2. The plants shall be comprised of native regional perennials (qt cont), forbs (qt cont), deciduous and evergreen shrubs (#1 cont) that grow within the pond conditions.
3. The plants shall be placed within pond mesh baskets (filled with approved soil and topped with river stone) and set flush within the basin areas.

Final start-up and adjustment meeting shall be provided for the proper adjustments to be made to the waterfall system to meet the performance levels established. It is also the time to familiarize the maintenance staff of the correct procedures to operate the waterfall system equipment. Before final inspection of the water feature all the following items need to be complete:

- a. Electrical connections made and tested.
- b. Hydraulic piping and fittings complete and tested for leaks, repaired if necessary, and flushed clean.
- c. The water basin cleaned and filled to the correct operating depth.

Job site visits by NCDOT project engineers and designers can be made during certain construction phases of the project.

#### INDUSTRY STANDARDS AND APPLICABLE CODES:

- A. The materials shall be installed in accordance with all applicable provisions of the most recent edition of the following:  
ANSI  
ASTM

ASSE  
ASME  
AWWA  
CS  
NEMA  
NSF  
UL  
NEC  
OSHA  
NFPA  
American National Standards Institute  
American Society for Testing and Materials  
American Society of Sanitary Engineering  
American Society of Mechanical Engineers  
American Water Works Association  
Commercial Standards  
National Electrical Manufacturers Association  
National Sanitation Foundation  
Underwriters Laboratory  
National Electric Code  
Occupational Safety and Health Act  
National Fire Protection Agency

Other state or local code(s) which are applicable.

B. The above referenced guidelines shall be considered minimum standards for the materials or the installation practices applicable for the water feature/waterfall system.

#### SHOP DRAWINGS AND SUBMITTALS:

The plumbing and water supply systems noted on the plans shall be considered schematic in design. Final design specifications shall be defined and supplied by the contractor, in keeping with the contract work, noted minimum specifications, and in coordination with all other applicable site work.

A. The contractor shall submit drawings in accordance with the conditions of the Contract Specification section describing the size(s), location(s), and installation details of the interconnecting piping, waterfall management equipment and electrical systems.

B. The Landscape Architect may add other drawings during the period of construction as required for clarification.

C. This specification shall be considered an integral part of the accompanying drawings.

Anything omitted from one and embodied in the other is considered essential to the contract and

must be furnished by the Contractor.

D. All pertinent data on any substitute system(s), including engineering performance calculations on the pumping system(s), drainage, equipment, and electrical system diagrams and schematics shall be provided to Engineer for review and evaluation.

E. Submittals for the pump, liner, underlayment, bulkheads, sealants, skimmer, filter tank, and waterfall weir shall be provided to the Engineer/Landscape Architect for review and approval.

F. Material submittals for the boulders, flat waterfall rocks and river stone shall be from a single supplier. The landscape architect can approve the material on site, or if feasible, visit the supplier for approval at the source.

G. The contractor shall provide a list of suitable plant material recommended for the noted waterfall planting areas. The plant material, once approved from the list, will be inspected on site prior to installation.

H. Submittals shall be rejected if they are difficult to read due to poor image, drafting quality, insufficient scale, or missing data.

Submittals shall include the following:

- shop drawings and product information for all equipment and materials furnished.
- complete Material list.
- equipment space layout showing all electrical and mechanical equipment in addition to all piping and conduit.
- installation details for each piece of equipment being provided.

## **SUBSTITUTIONS**

A. Submittals for equal items shall include the following information where applicable:

1. Operation Design Description.
2. Component materials and finishes.
3. Pump curve(s).
4. Certification of conformance with specified codes and standards.

B. Proposed substitutions for equipment or material must be submitted within (30) working days prior to construction for consideration as approved equals. Proposals for substitutions shall be made only by the prime bidders in writing to Engineer and sub-contractors shall not make any proposals to the Landscape Architect for substitution.

1. All equipment supplied to the Contractor shall be supplied by reputable pond or plumbing equipment suppliers unless otherwise approved.

C. Submittals of equal systems or components may be rejected by the Engineer or Landscape Architect if it found not to meet the minimal criteria set forth in the plans, contract or

specifications.

### **GENERAL INSTALLATION**

- A. Protect all pipes, conduits, equipment and other parts of the work against injury by exposure to the weather while stored, during construction, or after installation.
- B. Install and connect all equipment in accordance with manufacturer's instruction and recommendations unless otherwise noted. If specified installation is contrary to the manufacturer's instruction, cease installation of affected components or systems and notify the Engineer.
- C. Accurately place all large stones and boulders to rigidly support additional weight without displacement, movement or rolling.

### **PIPE INSTALLATION:**

- A. General installation:
  - 1. Make all pipe runs as direct as possible using a minimum number of fittings.
  - 2. Flexible PVC pipe, sized and approved for the specified flow and pressure, shall be used for the feeder pipe to the waterfall weir. It shall be buried at an approved depth and/or protected from puncture or damage.
  - 3. Cut all pipe and tubing ends square. Remove rough edges and burrs to create a smooth unobstructed flow.
  - 4. Protect all openings in piping during construction to prevent entrance of foreign matter.
  - 5. All connections shall be made with manufacturer approved adhesives, joint compounds or fittings.

### **GUARANTEE:**

- A. The waterfall Contractor(s) shall issue a guarantee that any equipment found defective within one (1) year of the final acceptance shall be replaced at no cost to the Department.
- B. The waterfall pump shall have a min. 2 year warranty transferable to the owner.
- C. The guarantee does not extend to damage incurred through operation and maintenance by the Owner. The Owner will assume full responsibility for the proper operation and maintenance of the waterfall upon final acceptance. Mechanical waterfall systems shall be furnished by the Contractor unless otherwise specified.
- D. The contractor shall guarantee all plant material to be living and in sufficient health within one (1) year of the final acceptance or shall be replaced at no cost to the Department.

### **Basis of Payment:**

Basis of payment for this item of work will be the lump sum price for the installation of the "Water Feature" The above prices and payments will be full compensation for all work covered by this section.

Payment will be made under:

**Water Feature.....LS**

**CURB CUT RAMP**

Refer to plan drawing, details, and NCDOT Standard Specification Section 848.

**LANDSCAPE PLANTING**

Furnish, deliver, plant bed preparation and the planting of trees, shrubs, ground covers, bedding plants and seedlings at locations shown on the plans or as directed, in accordance to NCDOT Standard Specification 1670.

**Basis of Payment:** Landscape planting will be paid for at the contract “lump sum” unit price.

**Landscape Planting.....LS**

**SEASONAL LIMITATIONS**

The initial planting and replacement of plants shall be done from October 15 thru March 31. See Standard Specifications Sections 1060 - Landscape Development Materials and 1670 - Planting.

**WARRANTY PERIOD FOR PLANTING**

**Warranty Period for Planting**

A warranty period will begin after satisfactory installation and acceptance of all of the planting and *will apply to all woody and herbaceous plant materials: trees, shrubs, vines, perennials and ground covers*. All plants must be in an upright healthy condition, planted at the proper depth, mulched areas will be weed free and tidy and any staking or guying that is utilized must be in proper condition prior to beginning the establishment period. During the warranty period the contractor will be responsible for replacement of the plantings in accordance with Section 1670-15.

All plants that do not continue to conform to the specifications and quality as approved when they were installed will be unacceptable. The contractor will remove all plants that are determined to be unacceptable from the site within five days of request by the Engineer. Replacements will be installed within the Seasonal Limitations.

The Warranty Period for Planting will last a minimum of twelve months and extend into the

seasonal limitations for planting in order to allow replacement plantings to be installed. See contract times for exact time period and dates.

**1" WATER LINE**

**1" WATER LINE SPIGOT**

**1" SHUTOFF VALVE AND BOX**

The work covered by these provisions consists of constructing waterlines within the rest area as required by the plans and provisions herein or directed by the Engineer. The Contractor will furnish all materials, labor, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete the proposed utility work.

***General Construction Requirements***

**Specifications**

The proposed utility construction will meet the applicable requirements of the N. C. Department of Transportation's "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures" (latest edition) January 2018 and the following provisions:

**Plumbing Ordinances**

All plumbing work in connection with the water distribution system installation will be done in accordance with local and State ordinances, and will be subject to inspection by the particular County Health Authorities or by authorities of the Sanitary Engineering Section, Division of Health Services, Department of Human Resources and/or authorities of the Water quality Section's, Division of Environmental Management, Department of Natural Resources and Community Development.

**Trenches and Backfill for Utility Pipe Line Construction**

The utility excavations will be made and the pipes will be laid in accordance with Section 300 of the Standard Specifications and as specified herein.

**Clearing and Grading**

The Contractor will limit his clearing to only that absolutely necessary to construct the water system (lines for distribution, etc.).

**General**

The Contractor will furnish and install all material for the water distribution system within the rest area as shown on the Site Development drawings and as specified herein, consisting of water

lines, fittings, gate valves, stop and drain valves and valve boxes. Also included will be water line tests, sterilization and flushing of the entire water system and all other items not specifically mentioned but necessary to complete the work.

Type of pipe material to use in the water line distribution system will be PVC Schedule 80. All pipe tees and bends will be ductile iron (incidental to water line installation).

### **Polyvinyl Chloride Water Pipe**

PVC water pipe will be schedule 80 with a minimum of 200 psi pressure rating, and sized as shown on the plans. The pipe, when used for conveying drinking water, will meet the requirements of the National Sanitation Foundation Seal of approval for potable water.

### **Gate Valves and Spigot**

Gate valves in the water system where shown on the plans will be bronze, non-rising stem type, with body conforming to ASTM B62; stem will be of best silicon brass and the threads conforming to ANSI B2.1. Spigot shall be 1" MNPT brass multi turn hose bibb.

### **Valve Boxes**

Valve boxes will be polyester/fiberglass, constructed with ultraviolet inhibitors. Valve box assembly will be constructed in two sections: bottom, and cap. Bottom section of valve box assembly will be adjustable for height and variances. Install valve box with cap flush with the proposed finished grade. Place three inches of crushed stone (No. 67 aggregate under valve and bottom section. Valve box size will accommodate valves and piping as shown on the plans and approved by the Engineer. Submit shop drawing for approval by Engineer.

### **Construction**

Piping will consist of 1 inch pipe, which will be installed as shown on the plans. Pipe fittings needed to complete the work and not individually noted herein will be considered part of the work of 1 inch pipe.

The limits of clearing for installing water lines will be held to a maximum of 6 feet, except in critical areas where the Engineer may establish greater limits. Trees and shrubs, which are damaged, will be repaired and/or removed in accordance with applicable provisions of Section 894-4 of the Standard Specifications.

All PVC pipe must be installed according to manufacturer's recommendations. Pipe will be cut square, burrs removed from cut end, cleaned and dried. Apply cement to pipe and fitting with rapid and thorough coverage, assemble parts quickly, using 1/8 to 1/4 turning motion. Hold in place for two minutes to offset tendency to move out of fittings.

Pipe will be laid in a snaking manner to allow for expansion and contraction, and in such a way to avoid bumps, boulders, and holes that might result in stress on the pipe.

If, at any time before completion of the contract, any broken pipe or any defects are found in the lines or in any of their fittings or appurtenances, they will be replaced or corrected. All pipe,



fittings and appurtenances will be carefully examined for defects before placing and any found defective will not be used. **(Note: Where the pipes cross under paved surfaces, the water lines will be placed in SCH 40 PVC sleeve; the cost of the sleeve will be incidental to the installation of the water line).**

The pipe trenches will be conditioned by removing the existing foundation material by undercutting one foot or to a depth as directed by the Engineer, and backfilling with either suitable local material or foundation condition material consisting of clean sand as approved by the Engineer as being suitable for the purpose intended. The selection of the type of backfill to be used for foundation conditioning will be made by the Engineer. **(Note: Foundation material is 6" around pipe incidental to water line installation).**

Pipe will not be laid upon a foundation into which frost has penetrated, or at any time, that in the opinion of the Engineer, there is danger of the formation of ice or frost at the bottom of the excavation. The Engineer may at his discretion allow construction of the pipeline to continue under freezing conditions provided the Contractor promptly backfills the trench as directed.

PVC pipe will have its location marked by using a detectable marking tape, installed 12 to 18 inches below finished grade. Such tape will be as approved by the Engineer.

The proposed pipe will be laid in trenches not less than 24 inches in depth below the finished grade. After the installation of pipe has been tested, inspected, and approved by the Engineer, it will be promptly backfilled and compacted to a density equal to that of the surrounding undisturbed soil.

The locations for water lines and valves with valve boxes, as shown on the plans, are substantially correct; however, the Engineer will establish the exact location.

### **Water Line Test**

Prior to backfilling the Contractor will test all waterlines in the water system for eight (8) hours under a water pressure of 150 PSIG. Leaks will be repaired by tightening the joint or by remaking the joint if the tightening fails to stop the leak.

### **Sterilizing and Flushing Piping System**

All water piping will be sterilized with chlorine concentration. All lines will be filled with water and chlorine concentration so that an overall chlorine residual to the water of at least 100-ppm will result. During the filling all trapped air through drinking fountains, yard hydrants, valves, etc., will be released. After the lines have been filled with water and chlorine, the pipe system will be valved off and the chlorinated water allowed to remain in the system for a 24-hour period. At the end of this period, the chlorine residual count should be at least 10 ppm. The lines will then be thoroughly flushed to insure the removal of all sediment, pipe seals, etc. This process will be subject to inspection and/or supervision by the local Health Authorities.

**Compensation**

The work of furnishing and installing 1 inch water lines with sand bedding as described above when completed, tested, and accepted will be paid for at the contract unit price per linear foot measured in place. The work of furnishing and installing Gate valves and boxes will be paid for at the contract unit price per each for 'Gate Valve and Box' in the sizes shown below complete in place and accepted. The work of repairing existing water pipe, any size up to 3", complete, tested, and accepted will be paid for at the contract unit price per linear foot for 'PVC, Water Pipe, SCH 80 Repair'.

*Payment will be made under:*

**1" Water Line ..... LF**  
**1" Water Line Spigot and Box ..... EA**  
**1" Shutoff Valve and Box ..... EA**

County : Haywood

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
ROADWAY ITEMS						
0001	0106000000-E	230	BORROW EXCAVATION	60 CY		
0002	2591000000-E	848	4" CONCRETE SIDEWALK	550 SY		
0003	2605000000-N	848	CONCRETE CURB RAMPS	1 EA		
0004	6012000000-E	1610	SEDIMENT CONTROL STONE	1 TON		
0005	6042000000-E	1632	1/4" HARDWARE CLOTH	150 LF		
0006	6084000000-E	1660	SEEDING & MULCHING	1 ACR		
0007	6102000000-E	1664	SODDING	125 SY		
0008	6650000000-E	1670	MULCH FOR PLANTING	132 CY		
0009	6655000000-E	1670	WATER FOR PLANTING	20 M/G		
0010	6665000000-E	1670	POSTEMERGENT HERBICIDAL TREAT- MENT FOR PLANT BEDS	80 SY		
0011	6670000000-E	1670	PREEMERGENT HERBICIDAL TREAT- MENT FOR PLANT BEDS	80 SY		
0012	6890000000-E	SP	CONCRETE STEPS	3 CY		
0013	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (1" SHUTOFF VALVE AND BOX)	2 EA		
0014	6970000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (1" WATER LINE SPIGOT AND BOX)	1 EA		
0015	6975000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (BUILDING ENTRANCE RAMP)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0016	6975000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (ELECTRICAL INSTALL REST AREA BUILDING)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0017	6975000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (GENERAL RENOVATION REST AREA BUILDING)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0018	6975000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (LANDSCAPE FINISH GRADING)	Lump Sum	L.S.	

County : Haywood

Line #	Item Number	Sec #	Description	Quantity	Unit Cost	Amount
0019	6975000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (LANDSCAPE PLANTING)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0020	6975000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (MECHANICAL INSTALL REST AREA BUILDING)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0021	6975000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (PLACEMENT OF BOULDERS)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0022	6975000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (PLUMBING INSTALL REST AREA BU ILDING)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0023	6975000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (SITE DEMOLITION)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0024	6975000000-N	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (WATER FEATURE)	Lump Sum	L.S.	
0025	6980000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (1" WATER LINE)	170 LF		
0026	6980000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (PEDESTRIAN CURB)	240 LF		
0027	6980000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (SITTING -RETAINING WALL)	100 LF		
0028	6980000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (TREE PROTECTION FENCE)	1,200 LF		
0029	6980000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (WIRE FENCE)	80 LF		
0030	6980000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (WOOD-WIRE FENCE)	168 LF		
0031	6982000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (PAVERS)	2,255 SF		
0032	6982000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (REFACE EXISTING STONE WALL)	250 SF		
0033	6985000000-E	SP	GENERIC REST AREA ITEM (TOPSOIL)	162 CY		

**LISTING OF DBE SUBCONTRACTORS**

Sheet \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_

Firm Name and Address	Item No.	Item Description	* Agreed upon Unit Price	** Dollar Volume of Item
<b>Name</b>  Address				
<b>Name</b>  Address				
<b>Name</b>  Address				
<b>Name</b>  Address				
<b>Name</b>  Address				
<b>Name</b>  Address				
<b>Name</b>  Address				

\* The Dollar Volume shown in this column shall be the Actual Price Agreed Upon by the Prime Contractor and the DBE subcontractor, and these prices will be used to determine the percentage of the DBE participation in the contract.

\*\* Dollar Volume of DBE Subcontractor Percentage of Total Contract Bid Price:

*If firm is a Material Supplier Only, show Dollar Volume as 60% of Agreed Upon Amount from Letter of Intent.*

*If firm is a Manufacturer, show Dollar Volume as 100% of Agreed Upon Amount from Letter of Intent.*

**LISTING OF DBE SUBCONTRACTORS**

Sheet \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_

Firm Name and Address	Item No.	Item Description	* Agreed upon Unit Price	** Dollar Volume of Item
<b>Name</b>  Address				
<b>Name</b>  Address				
<b>Name</b>  Address				
<b>Name</b>  Address				
<b>Name</b>  Address				

\*\* Dollar Volume of DBE Subcontractor \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Percentage of Total Contract Bid Price \_\_\_\_\_%

\* The Dollar Volume shown in this column shall be the Actual Price Agreed Upon by the Prime Contractor and the DBE subcontractor, and these prices will be used to determine the percentage of the DBE participation in the contract.

\*\* Dollar Volume of DBE Subcontractor Percentage of Total Contract Bid Price:

If firm is a Material Supplier Only, show Dollar Volume as 60% of Agreed Upon Amount from Letter of Intent.

If firm is a Manufacturer, show Dollar Volume as 100% of Agreed Upon Amount from Letter of Intent.

**STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA  
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION  
RALEIGH, NC**

**BID BOND**

Contract Number: DN00659 County: Haywood

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, That we, the PRINCIPAL CONTRACTOR (hereafter, PRINCIPAL) and SURETY above named, are held and firmly bound unto the Department of Transportation in the full and just sum of five (5) percent of the total amount bid by the Principal for the project stated above, for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, and successors, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

NOW, THEREFORE, the condition of this obligation is: the Principal shall not withdraw its bid within sixty (60) days after the opening of the bids, or within such other time period as may be provided in the proposal, and if the Board of Transportation shall award a contract to the Principal, the Principal shall, within fourteen (14) calendar days after written notice of award is received by him, provide bonds with good and sufficient surety, as required for the faithful performance of the contract and for the protection of all persons supplying labor, material, and equipment for the prosecution of the work. In the event the Principal requests permission to withdraw his bid due to mistake in accordance with the provisions of Article 103-3 of the *Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures*, the conditions and obligations of this Bid Bond shall remain in full force and effect until the Department of Transportation makes a final determination to either allow the bid to be withdrawn or to proceed with award of the contract. In the event a determination is made to award the contract, the Principal shall have fourteen (14) calendar days to comply with the requirements set forth above. In the event the Principal withdraws its bid after bids are opened except as provided in Article 103-3, or after award of the contract has been made fails to execute such additional documents as may be required and to provide the required bonds within the time period specified above, then the amount of the bid bond shall be immediately paid to the Department of Transportation as liquidated damages.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, the Principal and Surety have caused these presents to be duly signed and sealed.

This the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20 \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Surety

By \_\_\_\_\_  
General Agent or Attorney-in-Fact Signature

*Seal of Surety*

\_\_\_\_\_  
Print or type Signer's Name

BID BOND

CORPORATION

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Full name of Corporation

Address as prequalified

By Signature of **President, Vice President, Assistant Vice President**  
*Select appropriate title*

Print or type Signer's name

*Affix Corporate Seal*

Attest Signature of **Secretary, Assistant Secretary**  
*Select appropriate title*

Print or type Signer's name



BID BOND

LIMITED LIABILITY COMPANY

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Name of Contractor

Full name of Firm

Address as prequalified

Signature of Member/  
Manager/Authorized Agent

Individually

Print or type Signer's name

BID BOND

INDIVIDUAL DOING BUSINESS UNDER A FIRM NAME

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Name of Contractor \_\_\_\_\_  
Individual Name

Trading and doing business as \_\_\_\_\_  
Full name of Firm

\_\_\_\_\_  
Address as prequalified

Signature of Contractor \_\_\_\_\_  
Individually

\_\_\_\_\_  
Print or type Signer's name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Witness

\_\_\_\_\_  
Print or type Signer's name

BID BOND

INDIVIDUAL DOING BUSINESS IN HIS OWN NAME

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Name of Contractor \_\_\_\_\_  
Print or type Individual Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Address as prequalified

Signature of Contractor \_\_\_\_\_  
Individually

\_\_\_\_\_  
Print or type Signer's name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Witness

\_\_\_\_\_  
Print or type Signer's name

BID BOND

PARTNERSHIP

SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR (Principal)

Full name of Partnership

Address as prequalified

By Signature of Partner

Print or type Signer's name

Signature of Witness

Print or type Signer's name

**BID BOND**  
**JOINT VENTURE (2 or 3)**  
SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTORS (Principal)

Instructions to Bidders: **2 Joint Ventures**, Fill in lines (1), (2) and (3) and execute. **3 Joint Venturers** Fill in lines (1), (2), (3), (4) and execute. Line (1), print or type the name of Joint Venture. On line (2), print or type the name of one of the joint venturers and execute below in the appropriate manner required by Article 102-8 of the *Specifications*. On Line (3), print or type the name of second joint venturer and execute below in the appropriate manner required by said article of the Specifications. On Line (4), print or type the name of the third joint venturer, if applicable and execute below in the appropriate manner required by said article of the Specifications. This form of execution must be strictly followed.

_____ Signature of Witness or Attest	By	_____ Signature of Contractor
_____ Print or type Signer's name		_____ Print or type Signer's name
	and	
_____ Signature of Witness or Attest	By	_____ Signature of Contractor
_____ Print or type Signer's name		_____ Print or type Signer's name
	and	
_____ Signature of Witness or Attest	By	_____ Signature of Contractor
_____ Print or type Signer's name		_____ Print or type Signer's name

**ADDENDUM(S)**

**ADDENDUM #1**

I, \_\_\_\_\_  
(SIGNATURE)

representing \_\_\_\_\_

Acknowledge receipt of Addendum #1.

**ADDENDUM #2**

I, \_\_\_\_\_  
(SIGNATURE)

representing \_\_\_\_\_

Acknowledge receipt of Addendum #2.

**ADDENDUM #3**

I, \_\_\_\_\_  
(SIGNATURE)

representing \_\_\_\_\_

Acknowledge receipt of Addendum #3.

**EXECUTION OF BID****NON-COLLUSION, DEBARMENT AND GIFT BAN CERTIFICATION****CORPORATION**

The prequalified bidder being duly sworn, solemnly swears (or affirms) that neither he, nor any official, agent or employee has entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action which is in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with any bid or contract, that the prequalified bidder has not been convicted of violating *N.C.G.S. §133-24* within the last three years, and that the prequalified bidder intends to do the work with his own bona fide employees or subcontractors and will not bid for the benefit of another contractor.

By submitting this non-collusion, debarment and gift ban certification, the Contractor is attesting his status under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States in accordance with the Debarment Certification attached, provided that the Debarment Certification also includes any required statements concerning exceptions that are applicable.

*N.C.G.S. §133-32* and Executive Order 24 prohibit the offer to, or acceptance by, any State Employee of any gift from anyone with a contract with the State, or from any person seeking to do business with the State. By execution of any response in this procurement, you attest, for your entire organization and its employees or agents, that you are not aware that any such gift has been offered, accepted, or promised by any employees of your organization.

**SIGNATURE OF PREQUALIFIED BIDDER**

---

Full name of Corporation

---

Address as Prequalified

Attest \_\_\_\_\_ By \_\_\_\_\_

Secretary/Assistant Secretary  
(Select appropriate title)

President/Vice President/Assistant Vice President  
(Select appropriate title)

---

Print or type Signer's name

---

Print or type Signer's name

**CORPORATE SEAL**

**NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT, DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION AND GIFT BAN CERTIFICATION**  
**PARTNERSHIP**

The prequalified bidder, being duly sworn, solemnly swears (or affirms) that neither he, nor any official, agent or employee has entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action which is in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with any bid or contract, that the prequalified bidder has not been convicted of violating *N.C.G.S. § 133-24* within the last three years, and that the prequalified bidder intends to do the work with its own bona fide employees or subcontractors and will not bid for the benefit of another contractor.

By submitting this non-collusion, debarment and gift ban certification, the Contractor is attesting his status under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States in accordance with the Debarment Certification attached, provided that the Debarment Certification also includes any required statements concerning exceptions that are applicable.

*N.C.G.S. § 133-32* and Executive Order 24 prohibit the offer to, or acceptance by, any State Employee of any gift from anyone with a contract with the State, or from any person seeking to do business with the State. By execution of any response in this procurement, you attest, for your entire organization and its employees or agents, that you are not aware that any such gift has been offered, accepted, or promised by any employees of your organization.

**SIGNATURE OF PREQUALIFIED BIDDER**

---

Full Name of  
Partnership

---

Address as  
Prequalified

---

Signature of Witness

---

Signature of Partner

---

Print or Type Signer's Name

---

Print or Type Signer's Name



**NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT, DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION AND GIFT BAN  
CERTIFICATION****LIMITED LIABILITY COMPANY**

The prequalified bidder, being duly sworn, solemnly swears (or affirms) that neither he, nor any official, agent or employee has entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action which is in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with any bid or contract, that the prequalified bidder has not been convicted of violating *N.C.G.S. § 133-24* within the last three years, and that the prequalified bidder intends to do the work with its own bona fide employees or subcontractors and will not bid for the benefit of another contractor.

By submitting this non-collusion, debarment and gift ban certification, the Contractor is attesting his status under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States in accordance with the Debarment Certification attached, provided that the Debarment Certification also includes any required statements concerning exceptions that are applicable.

*N.C.G.S. § 133-32* and Executive Order 24 prohibit the offer to, or acceptance by, any State Employee of any gift from anyone with a contract with the State, or from any person seeking to do business with the State. By execution of any response in this procurement, you attest, for your entire organization and its employees or agents, that you are not aware that any such gift has been offered, accepted, or promised by any employees of your organization.

**SIGNATURE OF PREQUALIFIED BIDDER**

---

Full Name of Firm

---

Address as Prequalified

---

Signature of Witness

---

Signature of Member/Manager/Authorized Agent  
(*Select appropriate Title*)

---

Print or Type Signer's Name

---

Print or Type Signer's Name

**NON-COLLUSION, DEBARMENT AND GIFT BAN CERTIFICATION****JOINT VENTURE (2) or (3)**

The prequalified bidder, being duly sworn, solemnly swears (or affirms) that neither he, nor any official, agent or employee has entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action which is in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with any bid or contract, that the prequalified bidder has not been convicted of violating *N.C.G.S. § 133-24* within the last three years, and that the prequalified bidder intends to do the work with its own bona fide employees or subcontractors and will not bid for the benefit of another contractor.

By submitting this non-collusion, debarment and gift ban certification, the Contractor is attesting his status under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States in accordance with the Debarment Certification attached, provided that the Debarment Certification also includes any required statements concerning exceptions that are applicable.

*N.C.G.S. § 133-32* and Executive Order 24 prohibit the offer to, or acceptance by, any State Employee of any gift from anyone with a contract with the State, or from any person seeking to do business with the State. By execution of any response in this procurement, you attest, for your entire organization and its employees or agents, that you are not aware that any such gift has been offered, accepted, or promised by any employees of your organization.

**SIGNATURE OF PREQUALIFIED BIDDER**

Instructions: **2 Joint Venturers** Fill in lines (1), (2) and (3) and execute. **3 Joint Venturers** Fill in lines (1), (2), (3) and (4) and execute. On Line (1), fill in the name of the Joint Venture Company. On Line (2), fill in the name of one of the joint venturers and execute below in the appropriate manner. On Line (3), print or type the name of the other joint venturer and execute below in the appropriate manner. On Line (4), fill in the name of the third joint venturer, if applicable and execute below in the appropriate manner.

(1)	Name of Joint Venture
(2)	Name of Contractor
	Address as Prequalified
	BY
Signature of Witness or Attest	Signature of Contractor
Print or Type Signer's Name	Print or Type Signer's Name
<i>If Corporation, affix Corporate Seal</i>	AND
(3)	Name of Contractor
	Address as Prequalified
	BY
Signature of Witness or Attest	Signature of Contractor
Print or Type Signer's Name	Print or Type Signer's Name
<i>If Corporation, affix Corporate Seal</i>	AND
(4)	Name of Contractor
	Address as Prequalified
	BY
Signature of Witness or Attest	Signature of Contractor
Print or Type Signer's Name	Print or Type Signer's Name
<i>If Corporation, affix Corporate Seal</i>	

**NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT, DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION AND GIFT BAN  
CERTIFICATION****INDIVIDUAL DOING BUSINESS UNDER A FIRM NAME**

The prequalified bidder, being duly sworn, solemnly swears (or affirms) that neither he, nor any official, agent or employee has entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action which is in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with any bid or contract, that the prequalified bidder has not been convicted of violating *N.C.G.S. § 133-24* within the last three years, and that the prequalified bidder intends to do the work with its own bona fide employees or subcontractors and will not bid for the benefit of another contractor.

By submitting this non-collusion, debarment and gift ban certification, the Contractor is attesting his status under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States in accordance with the Debarment Certification attached, provided that the Debarment Certification also includes any required statements concerning exceptions that are applicable.

*N.C.G.S. § 133-32* and Executive Order 24 prohibit the offer to, or acceptance by, any State Employee of any gift from anyone with a contract with the State, or from any person seeking to do business with the State. By execution of any response in this procurement, you attest, for your entire organization and its employees or agents, that you are not aware that any such gift has been offered, accepted, or promised by any employees of your organization.

**SIGNATURE OF PREQUALIFIED BIDDER**

Name of Prequalified Bidder

\_\_\_\_\_  
Individual Name

Trading and Doing Business As

\_\_\_\_\_  
Full name of Firm\_\_\_\_\_  
Address as Prequalified\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Witness\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Prequalified Bidder, Individual\_\_\_\_\_  
Print or Type Signer's Name\_\_\_\_\_  
Print or Type Signer's Name

**NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT, DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION AND GIFT BAN  
CERTIFICATION****INDIVIDUAL DOING BUSINESS IN HIS OWN NAME**

The prequalified bidder, being duly sworn, solemnly swears (or affirms) that neither he, nor any official, agent or employee has entered into any agreement, participated in any collusion, or otherwise taken any action which is in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with any bid or contract, that the prequalified bidder has not been convicted of violating *N.C.G.S. § 133-24* within the last three years, and that the prequalified bidder intends to do the work with its own bona fide employees or subcontractors and will not bid for the benefit of another contractor.

By submitting this non-collusion, debarment and gift ban certification, the Contractor is attesting his status under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States in accordance with the Debarment Certification attached, provided that the Debarment Certification also includes any required statements concerning exceptions that are applicable.

*N.C.G.S. § 133-32* and Executive Order 24 prohibit the offer to, or acceptance by, any State Employee of any gift from anyone with a contract with the State, or from any person seeking to do business with the State. By execution of any response in this procurement, you attest, for your entire organization and its employees or agents, that you are not aware that any such gift has been offered, accepted, or promised by any employees of your organization.

**SIGNATURE OF PREQUALIFIED BIDDER**

Name of Prequalified Bidder

\_\_\_\_\_  
Print or Type Name\_\_\_\_\_  
Address as Prequalified\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Prequalified Bidder, Individually\_\_\_\_\_  
Print or type Signer's Name\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Witness\_\_\_\_\_  
Print or type Signer's name

**DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION OF PREQUALIFIED BIDDER**

## Conditions for certification:

1. The prequalified bidder shall provide immediate written notice to the Department if at any time the bidder learns that his certification was erroneous when he submitted his debarment certification or explanation that is file with the Department, or has become erroneous because of changed circumstances.
2. The terms *covered transaction, debarred, suspended, ineligible, lower tier covered transaction, participant, person, primary covered transaction, principal, proposal, and voluntarily excluded*, as used in this provision, have the meanings set out in the Definitions and Coverage sections of the rules implementing Executive Order 12549. A copy of the Federal Rules requiring this certification and detailing the definitions and coverages may be obtained from the Contract Officer of the Department.
3. The prequalified bidder agrees by submitting this form, that he will not knowingly enter into any lower tier covered transaction with a person who is debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in NCDOT contracts, unless authorized by the Department.
4. For Federal Aid projects, the prequalified bidder further agrees that by submitting this form he will include the Federal-Aid Provision titled *Required Contract Provisions Federal-Aid Construction Contract (Form FHWA PR 1273)* provided by the Department, without subsequent modification, in all lower tier covered transactions.
5. The prequalified bidder may rely upon a certification of a participant in a lower tier covered transaction that he is not debarred, suspended, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from the covered transaction, unless he knows that the certification is erroneous. The bidder may decide the method and frequency by which he will determine the eligibility of his subcontractors.
6. Nothing contained in the foregoing shall be construed to require establishment of a system of records in order to render in good faith the certification required by this provision. The knowledge and information of a participant is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.
7. Except as authorized in paragraph 6 herein, the Department may terminate any contract if the bidder knowingly enters into a lower tier covered transaction with a person who is suspended, debarred, ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this transaction, in addition to other remedies available by the Federal Government.

**DEBARMENT CERTIFICATION**

The prequalified bidder certifies to the best of his knowledge and belief, that he and his principals:

- a. Are not presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from covered transactions by any Federal department or agency;
- b. Have not within a three-year period preceding this proposal been convicted of or had a civil judgment rendered against them for commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with obtaining, attempting to obtain, or performing a public (Federal, State or local) transaction or contract under a public transaction; violation of Federal or State antitrust statutes or commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records; making false statements; or receiving stolen property;
- c. Are not presently indicted for or otherwise criminally or civilly charged by a governmental entity (Federal, State or local) with commission of any of the offenses enumerated in paragraph b. of this certification; and
- d. Have not within a three-year period preceding this proposal had one or more public transactions (Federal, State or local) terminated for cause or default.
- e. Will submit a revised Debarment Certification immediately if his status changes and will show in his bid proposal an explanation for the change in status.

If the prequalified bidder cannot certify that he is not debarred, he shall provide an explanation with this submittal. An explanation will not necessarily result in denial of participation in a contract.

Failure to submit a non-collusion affidavit and debarment certification will result in the prequalified bidder's bid being considered non-responsive.

☐

Check here if an explanation is attached to this certification.

**Execution of Contract**

**Contract No: DN00659**

**County: Haywood**

ACCEPTED BY THE DEPARTMENT

---

**Proposals Engineer**

---

Date

EXECUTION OF CONTRACT AND BONDS  
APPROVED AS TO FORM:

---

**Division Engineer**

---

Date

Signature Sheet (Bid) - ACCEPTANCE SHEET